

SANRAL

SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL ROADS AGENCY SOC LTD



Reg.No.1998/009584/30

BUILDING SOUTH AFRICA
THROUGH BETTER ROADS

**THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL
ROADS AGENCY SOC LIMITED**

CONTRACT SANRAL S.004-005-2020/1

**ISANDLWANA ROADS UPGRADE – PACKAGE 1
[UPGRADE OF PROVINCIAL ROAD P372]**

PROJECT DOCUMENT

DATE: February 2024

TENDER DOCUMENT
VOLUME 3
BOOK 3 OF 3

PRICING DATA, SCOPE OF WORKS, PROJECT INFORMATION, ANNEXURES

**CHIEF EXECUTIVE OFFICER
SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL ROADS AGENCY SOC LIMITED
48 TAMBOTIE AVENUE
VAL DE GRACE
PRETORIA, 0184**

NAME OF TENDERER:

Set sequential number



CONTRACT SANRAL S.004-005-2020/1

FOR

ISANDLWANA ROADS UPGRADE – PACKAGE 1 [UPGRADE OF PROVINCIAL ROAD P372]

PROJECT DOCUMENT

DATE: February 2024

TENDER DOCUMENT

VOLUME 3

BOOK 3 OF 3

PRICING DATA, SCOPE OF WORKS, PROJECT INFORMATION, ANNEXURES

THIS DOCUMENT COMPILED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE REGIONAL
MANAGER

THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL ROADS AGENCY SOC LIMITED

The Regional Manager (Eastern Region)

The South African National Roads Agency SOC Ltd

58 Van Eck Place

Mkondeni

Pietermaritzburg

3201

LIST OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The following documents form part of this contract:

- Volume 1: The Conditions of Contract for Construction for Building and Engineering Works Designed by the Employer (1999), published by the Federation Internationale des Ingenieurs-Conseils (FIDIC) which the tenderer shall purchase himself. (See note 1 below).
- Volume 2: The COTO Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for South African Road Authorities (Draft Standard October 2020 edition), issued by the Committee of Transport Officials which the tenderer shall obtain himself. (See Note 2 below).
- Volume 3: The Project Document, containing the tender notice, Conditions of Tender, Tender Data, Returnable Schedules, general and particular conditions of contract, project specifications, Pricing Schedule, Form of offer and Project Information is issued by the Employer (see note 3 below). The Employer's Form of Acceptance and any correspondence from the selected tenderer, performance security-demand guarantee, and all addenda issued during the period of tender will also form part of this volume once a successful tenderer has been appointed.

The conditions of tender are the standard conditions of tender as indicated in Book 1.

- Volume 4: The Road Works Drawings.
- Volume 5: Materials Investigation and Utilisation.
- Volume 6: Environmental Management Plan Report.

Notes to tenderer:

1. VOLUME 1:

The Conditions of Contract for Construction for Building and Engineering Works Designed by the Employer (1999), published by the Federation Internationale des Ingenieurs-Conseils (FIDIC), is obtainable from:
CESA,
P. O. Box 68482,
Bryanston, 2021.
Tel: (011) 463 2022
Fax: (011) 463 7383
e-mail: general@cesa.co.za.

2. VOLUME 2:

The COTO Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for South African Road Authorities (Draft Standard October 2020 edition) is obtainable from SANRAL and can be downloaded free of charge from the SANRAL's website www.nra.co.za.

3. VOLUME 3

This Volume is issued at tender stage in electronic format *downloaded from the SANRAL's website* <https://www.nra.co.za/service-provider-zone/tenders/>

The link contains the following files:

- The full Project Document in .pdf format (excluding the standard conditions of tender)
- The returnable forms in word format
- The pricing data in Excel format

The Standard Conditions of Tender may be downloaded from the CIDB website as indicated in Book 1.

At contract stage Volume 3 will be a bound signed paper copy containing the following documents:

- Returnable schedules relevant to the project
- Agreements and Contract Data
- Pricing Data
- Scope of Work
- Project Information

4. SUBMISSION OF TENDER

Of the contract documents, only the following elements of Volume 3 needs to be submitted in printed and bound hard copy and electronically on flash drive marked "Postulated (followed by the Tenderer name)" in a sealed envelope, in the following order:

- Form of Offer (signed and scanned as .pdf and hard copy);
- All returnable schedules and attachments and certificates (signed and scanned as .pdf and hard copy);
- Completed pricing schedule (scanned copy in .pdf and copy in Excel and hard copy).

Information provided by a tenderer over and above the above elements of Volume 3 shall be treated as information only and will only be bound into the document if the tenderer notes on Form A4: Schedule of Variations or deviations that the information has a bearing on the tender price.

5. ALTERNATIVE OFFERS

For alternative offers the tenderer shall submit the following additional documentation, in printed and bound hard copy and electronically in a separate flash drive marked "Alternative (followed by the Tenderer name)" in a sealed envelope in the following order:

- Form of Offer (signed and scanned as .pdf and hard copy and state "Alternative Form of Offer");
- All returnable schedules and attachments and certificates applicable to the alternative offer (signed and scanned as .pdf and hard copy);
- Alternative Pricing Schedule (scanned copy in .pdf and copy in Excel and hard copy);
- Other relevant information.

TABLE OF CONTENTS		PAGE
PART C2:	PRICING DATA.....	C3-1
PART C3:	SCOPE OF WORKS	C3-11
PART C4:	PROJECT INFORMATION	C3-245
PART C5:	ANNEXURES	C3-23

PART C2: PRICING DATA

PART C2: PRICING DATA

TABLE OF CONTENTS		PAGE
C2.1	PRICING INSTRUCTIONS.....	C3-3
C2.2	PRICING SCHEDULE (INCORPORATING SBD3).....	C3-5
C2.3	SUMMARY OF PRICING SCHEDULE	C3-10

C2.1 PRICING INSTRUCTIONS

C2.1.1 Measurement and payment shall be in accordance with the relevant provisions of Chapter 1, Section C1.1 of the COTO Standard Specification for Road and Bridge Works for South African Road Authorities (Draft Standard October 2020 edition) or as amended in the Scope of Works.

C2.1.2 The units of measurement described in the Pricing Schedule are metric units. Abbreviations used in the Pricing Schedule are as follows:

%	=	percent
h	=	hour
ha	=	hectare
kg	=	kilogram
kl	=	kilolitre
km	=	kilometre
km-pass	=	kilometre-pass
kPa	=	kilopascal
kW	=	kilowatt
l	=	litre
m	=	metre
mm	=	millimetre
m ²	=	square metre
m ² -pass	=	square metre-pass
m ³	=	cubic metre
m ³ -km	=	cubic metre-kilometre
MN	=	meganewton
MN.m	=	meganewton-metre
MPa	=	megapascal
No.	=	number
Prov sum	=	Provisional sum
PC Sum	=	Prime Cost sum
R/only	=	Rate only
sum	=	lump sum
t	=	ton (1000kg)
W/day	=	Work day

C2.1.3 For the purpose of the Pricing Schedule, the following words shall have the meanings assigned to them:

Unit:	The unit of measurement for each item of work as defined in the COTO Standard Specification for Road and Bridge Works for South African Road Authorities (Draft Standard October 2020 edition).
Quantity:	The number of units of work for each item.
Rate:	The payment per unit of work for which the Service Provider tenders to do the work.
Amount:	The product of the quantity and the rate tendered for an item.

C2.1.4 Unless otherwise stated, items are measured net in accordance with the drawings, and no allowance is made for waste.

C2.1.5 It will be assumed that prices included in the Pricing Schedule are based on Acts, Ordinances, Regulations, By-laws, International Standards and National Standards that were published 28 days before the closing date for tenders. (Refer to www.sabs.co.za for information standards)

- C2.1.6 The prices and rates in the Pricing Schedule are fully inclusive prices for the work described under the items. Such prices and rates cover all costs and expenses that may be required in and for the execution of the work described in accordance with the provisions of the Scope of Work, and shall cover the cost of all general risks, liabilities and obligations set forth or implied in the Contract Data, as well as overhead charges and profit. These prices will be used as a basis for assessment of payment for additional work that may have to be carried out. The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer within 28 days after the Commencement Date a full breakdown of all rates. The rates are to be clearly referenced to the relevant payitem numbers, with each rate broken down into its labour, materials, plant, fuel, overhead charges and profit components.
- C2.1.7 Where the Scope of Work requires detailed drawings and designs or other information to be provided, all costs associated therewith are deemed to have been provided for and included in the unit rates and sum amount tendered such items.
- C2.1.8 A single lump sum will apply should a number of items be grouped together for pricing purposes.
- C2.1.9 The quantities set out in the Pricing Schedule are approximate and do not necessarily represent the actual amount of work to be done. The quantities of work accepted and certified for payment will be used for determining payments due and not the quantities given in the Pricing Schedule.
- C2.1.10 Reasonable compensation will be received where no payitem appears in the Pricing Schedule in respect of work required in terms of the Contract and which is not covered in any other payitem.
- C2.1.11 The short descriptions of the items of payment given in the Pricing Schedule are only for the purposes of identifying the items. More details regarding the extent of the work entailed under each item appear in the Scope of Work.
- C2.1.12 The item numbers appearing in the Pricing Schedule refer to the corresponding item numbers in the COTO Standard Specification for Road and Bridge Works for South African Road Authorities (Draft Standard October 2020 edition). Where a standard COTO payitem is amended or a new payitem added, the item number is preceded by the letter "P" in the Pricing Schedule.
- C2.1.13 The pricing schedules are provided electronically. A printout of the entire completed pricing schedule must be signed and scanned and saved in .pdf format, and an electronic copy of the priced pricing schedule must be saved in Excel format and the printed copy bound. In the event of any discrepancy between the signed .pdf copy, and the electronically submitted copy in Excel format and the printed hard copy, the tender rates in the printed hard copy will govern. The item numbers and description of the printed hard copy document will govern. For all addenda issued relating to the pricing schedule, the item numbers, description and quantities of the issued document will govern.

C2.2 PRICING SCHEDULE (INCORPORATING SBD3)

SCHEDULE C
(Schedule C in Excel File)
ROADWORKS

SCHEDULE D
STAKEHOLDER AND COMMUNITY LIAISON, AND
TARGETED LABOUR AND TARGETED ENTERPRISES
SELECTION AND UTILISATION

SCHEDULE F
REFURBISHMENT OF ISANDLWANA HERITAGE SITE

CALCULATION OF TENDER SUM

C2.3 SUMMARY OF PRICING SCHEDULE

SCHEDULE C: ROADWORKS R

SCHEDULE D:

STAKEHOLDER AND COMMUNITY LIAISON, AND TARGETED LABOUR AND TARGETED ENTERPRISES SELECTION AND UTILISATION

R

SCHEDULE F: REFURBISHMENT OF HERITAGE

SITE

R

SUBTOTAL A R

be calculated automatically as 0.25% of the total tender amount:

CONTRACT SKILLS DEVELOPMENT GOAL:

0.25% of Subtotal A..... R

SUBTOTAL B R

VALUE ADDED TAX:

15% of Subtotal B R

TOTAL CARRIED TO C.1.1.1: FORM OF OFFER R

SIGNED BY TENDERER:

PART C3: SCOPE OF WORKS

PART C3: SCOPE OF WORKS

TABLE OF CONTENTS	PAGE
SECTION A1: STANDARD AMENDMENTS ISSUED BY COTO	C3-13
SECTION A2: PROJECT SPECIFICATION AMENDMENTS TO THE COTO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS	C3-14
SECTION B: SPECIFICATION DATA.....	C3-71
SECTION C: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN	C3-114
SECTION D: STAKEHOLDER AND COMMUNITY LIAISON, AND TARGETED LABOUR AND TARGETED ENTERPRISES UTILISATION AND DEVELOPMENT	C3-133
SECTION E: REQUIREMENTS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT AND REGULATIONS	C3-216
SECTION F: PROJECT SPECIFICATION AMENDMENTS TO THE STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR	C3-ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.

SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL ROADS AGENCY SOC LIMITED

CONTRACT SANRAL S.004-005-2020/1
FOR ISANDLWANA ROADS UPGRADE – PACKAGE 1 (UPGRADE OF PROVINCIAL ROAD P372)

SECTION A1: STANDARD AMENDMENTS ISSUED BY COTO

Notes to tenderer:

- 1. The Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for South African Road Authorities (Draft Standard October 2020 edition) prepared by the Committee of Transport Officials, (COTO), as amended, shall apply to this contract. The amendments are those issued by COTO and reproduced in Section A1, together with additional amendments as set out in Section A2 and Project specific Specification Data as set out in Section B.**

As at **January 2024** no amendments have been issued by COTO.

SECTION A2: PROJECT SPECIFICATION AMENDMENTS TO THE COTO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

Notes to tenderer:

1. This Section A2 contains amendments to the Standard Specification, including additional clauses, amendment to clauses or deletion of clauses and specifications, required for this particular contract. Where the Standard Specifications allow a choice to be specified in the Contract Documentation or Project Specifications, between alternative materials or methods of construction, and for additional requirements to be specified to suit a particular contract, these selections are not made in this Section A2. Details of such alternatives or additional requirements applicable to this contract are contained in Section B: Specification Data. Section B also contains project specific sections for Sections C, D and E.
2. The number of each clause and each payment item in this part of the project specifications follows the numbering format of the standard specifications.

TABLE OF CONTENTS	PAGE
COTO CHAPTER 1: GENERAL.....	C3-16
COTO CHAPTER 2: SERVICES	C3-22
COTO CHAPTER 3: DRAINAGE	C3-23
COTO CHAPTER 4: EARTHWORKS AND PAVEMENT LAYERS: MATERIALS	C3-24
COTO CHAPTER 5: EARTHWORKS AND PAVEMENT LAYERS: CONSTRUCTION	C3-25
COTO CHAPTER 6: CONCRETE LAYERS	C3-60
COTO CHAPTER 7: MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR OF CONCRETE LAYERS	C3-61
COTO CHAPTER 8: PRETREATMENT AND REPAIR OF EXISTING LAYERS	C3-62
COTO CHAPTER 9: ASPHALT LAYERS.....	C3-63
COTO CHAPTER 10: SURFACE TREATMENTS	C3-65
COTO CHAPTER 11: ANCILLARY ROAD WORKS	C3-67
COTO CHAPTER 12: GEOTECHNICAL APPLICATIONS	C3-69
COTO CHAPTER 13: STRUCTURES.....	C3-69
COTO CHAPTER 14: REPAIR AND REHABILITATION OF STRUCTURES	C3-70
COTO CHAPTER 20: QUALITY ASSURANCE	C3-70

COTO CHAPTER 1:GENERAL

SECTION 1.1: GENERAL PREAMBLE

PART A: SPECIFICATIONS

A1.1.2 DEFINITIONS

Replace the Definition for “Site / Site of the Works” with the following:

“Site / Site of the Works - shall mean the entire road reserve (both new and existing), inclusive of road junctions and property accesses, required for construction of the Works as defined by the limits of construction given in the Contract Documentation. It shall also include areas within statutory building lines where work has to be carried out and any additional lengths of road required for the placement of advanced warning road signs and/or traffic accommodation measures beyond the limits of construction as shown on the drawings. The Site shall also include areas outside of the road reserve required for Construction camps, Engineer’s site facilities, Borrow pit areas or quarry areas, haulage and access roads, temporary deviations, storage areas, spoil areas and stockpile areas. The exact extent of the limits of the construction will be verified once the Site is handed over to the Contractor.”

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

C1.1.3 PAYMENT

C1.1.3.5 Payment for materials on the Site

In the last sentence of the 1st paragraph, delete the following:

“, or, in the case of crushed stone which has not been purchased but has been produced on the site, at 80% of a fair evaluation of such crushed material”.

Add the following new subclauses:

"C1.1.3.9 Reduced payments for substandard work

Where provision for reduced payments for sub-standard work is made in the Contract Documentation, acceptance of reduce payment for substandard work may be accepted by the Engineer subject to prior approval by the Employer.

C1.1.3.10 Procurement of sub-services and omitted rates (Second tier procurement)

Second tier procurement include the procurement of any work where either the particulars of the work is not scheduled and priced, or where the process of procurement of the sub-service provider is specified elsewhere in the contract specification. It include the procurement of work where rates have been omitted or where allowance for the work is made under a Provisional sum or Prime sum item or where allowance for the work is made under a Provisional sum or Prime sum item but the particulars of the work is not scheduled, or where work is instructed under clause 13[Variations and Adjustments] or where work is to be performed by Targeted Enterprises.

The following procurement methods is to be followed as appropriate:

- a) **Where the particulars of the work is not scheduled but existing rates for similar work exist in the contract and the work can therefore be executed by the contractor or his sub-contractor at the existing contract rates.**

No separate procurement process is required. The work is to be quantified and scheduled utilising existing rates and approved through the Works Authorisation process.

- b) **Where the payment calculation is based on a formula specified in the contract document, or where the payment rate is pre-determined or fixed by the client.**

C3-16

No separate procurement process is required. The work is to be quantified and approved through the Works Authorisation process.

- c) **Where the supplier is not selected by the contractor and actual cost is reimbursable and/or no procurement process is possible.**

No separate procurement process is required. The work is invoiced by supplier on completion and approved through the Works Authorisation process at the end of the contract.

- d) **Where there are omitted items as part of the existing scheduled scope of work and no existing rates for similar work exist in the contract, or where there are no existing rates for the materials to be supplied and suitable rates for material to be determined.**

A proposal for a new rate shall be submitted by the contractor and evaluated by the engineer, by comparing with either adjusted relevant rates in the contract, or by comparing with similar rates on similar contracts, or by comparing three informal quotes to substantiate the rate. The new agreed rate is approved through the Works Authorisation process.

- e) **Where the particulars of the work is not scheduled and the estimated cost of the work (including VAT and excluding Contract Price Adjustment) is equal or less than R1,000,000.00 and there are no existing rates for similar work and the contractor's proposal submitted in terms of FIDIC Variation 13.1 is not accepted and the work is to be performed by a sub-contractor.**

A minimum of three quotations shall be obtained from Targeted Enterprises (as defined in Section D1000). The following is the minimum requirements for this process:

- Prequalification for BEE level 1 or 2 and EME or QSE (Approval to deviate must be granted by the Employer, based on market research)
- Quotation to include form of quotation, CSD registration, CIDB (where applicable),

A Works Authorisation shall be approved prior to execution of the work.

- f) **Where the particulars of the work is not scheduled and the estimated cost of the work is more than R1,000,000.00 (including VAT and excluding Contract Price Adjustment) and there are no existing rates for similar work and the contractor's proposal submitted in terms of FIDIC Variation 13.1 is not accepted and the work is to be performed by a sub-contractor.**

The work is to be procured through a tender process. The following is the minimum requirements for this process:

- Prequalification for BEE level 1 or 2 and EME or QSE (Approval to deviate must be granted by the Employer, based on market research)
- Tenders to close at the relevant site offices at a specific date and time
- Tender documents to include form of Offer, CSD registration, Tax compliance, CIDB (where applicable), SBD1, SBD 4, SBD 6.2, BEE certificate, Form A2.2
- Tenders to be evaluated on price and preference
- Evaluation by contractor for review by engineer

A Works Authorisation shall be approved prior to execution of the work.

- g) **Where the particulars of the work is identified by the contractor to be performed by subcontractors who are Targeted Enterprises to form part of the specified Contract Participation Goals for Targeted Enterprises.**

The work is to be procured as per the process specified in clause D1007.

- h) **Where the work is unforeseen, urgent and the relevant procurement method as indicated above will result in a delay to the contract and payment for a claim for extension of time and/or cost, or where the above procurement methods are not applicable or cannot fully be complied with.**

The Employer will determine the most appropriate procurement process to be followed and approved through the Works Authorisation process.”

SECTION 1.2: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND PROVISIONS

PART A: SPECIFICATIONS

A1.2.3 GENERAL

A1.2.3.15 Routine maintenance

Add the following new paragraphs:

“The Contractor’s responsibility for routine maintenance on this contract is indicated in the Contract Documentation.”

The backfilling for patching shall be done as indicated in the Contract Documentation.

The riding quality of gravel deviations shall comply with the requirements indicated in the Contract Documentation.”

Add the following new subclause after A1.2.3.23:

"A1.2.3.24 Reference Manuals, other specifications and test methods

In various chapters of this Standard Specification, reference is made to Manuals, other specifications and test methods. If not otherwise indicated in the Contract Documentation, the latest published Manual, other specification and test methods at time of close of tender will apply. Any changes to be implemented on a project as a result of revisions to manuals, other specifications and test methods, will be handled in terms of the Conditions of Contract.

Certain TRH and TMH documents are published as Sabita Manuals/TRH or Sabita Manuals/TMH publications. Where reference is made to the TRH or TMH document, it shall be read as referring to the latest version of the Sabita Manual/TRH publication or Sabita Manual/TMH publication, respectively.”

A1.2.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

A1.2.7.1 Programme of work

a) General

Add the following new paragraphs:

“The contractor shall note that the examination of a road with a view to rehabilitation is normally undertaken a considerable period of time before the commencement of the contract, and that conditions may subsequently change. The engineer will make further examinations during the period of contract, and, depending on the results of such examinations, the quantities of any items of work may be drastically increased or decreased.

The contractor shall base his initial programme for road rehabilitation on the scope of the work as described in the project specifications on the quantities contained in the Pricing Schedule (Part C2).”

A1.2.3.18 STAKEHOLDER LIAISON

Add the following new paragraphs:

“The contractor shall utilize services of a Social Facilitator to give effect to the need for transparency and inclusion in the process of delivering contract, such Service Provider shall liaise with the project Stakeholders and affected Communities for the duration of the contract’s life cycle. This shall be achieved through structured engagement with the PLC which was established for this purpose.”

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

(ii) Items that will not be measured separately

Replace the wording of item 8 with the following:

“8. The design of all temporary work and the construction of all temporary work, unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documentation.”

Item **Unit**

C1.2.7 Road safety audits

In the wording of item C1.2.7.2, replace “C1.2.6.1” with “C1.2.7.1”.

In the wording of item C1.2.7.4, replace “C1.2.6.3” with “C1.2.7.3”.

In the 4th paragraph of the item description, replace “C1.2.7.2” with “C1.2.7.3”.

Add the following new pay items:

“Item **Unit**

PC1.2.10 Dispute Adjudication Board (DAB)

C1.2.10.1 Employer’s contribution to DAB (50%)prime cost (PC) sum

The unit of measurement for item C1.2.10.1 is the prime cost sum. Payment of the prime cost sum shall be in terms of Fidic Clause 13.5 for 50% of the amounts invoiced from the appointed DAB. No sum for overhead charges and profit in terms of Fidic Clause 13.5(ii) is payable for this item.”

“Item **Unit**

PC1.2.11 Social Facilitation

C1.2.11.1 Provision of Social Facilitationprime cost (PC) sum

C1.2.11.2 Handling cost, profit and other charges in respect of item C.1.2.11.1 percentage (%)

“The Prime Cost sum under item C1.2.11.1 shall cover the cost for the Social Facilitation subservice provider to provide the Social Facilitation services.

The percentage under item C1.2.11.2 shall include all costs associated with the planning, scheduling, compilation of quotation or tender documentation, issuing of up to 10 (ten) quotation or tender documents in electronic and/or paper format and evaluation for the procurement and management of the sub-service, including administrative cost and handling fees.”

SECTION 1.3: CONTRACTOR'S SITE ESTABLISHMENT AND GENERAL OBLIGATIONS

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item **Unit**

C1.3.1 The Contractor's general obligations

Delete subitem C1.3.1.3 and replace with the following:

- "C1.3.1.3 Time related obligations:
- a) Mobilisation period month
 - b) Execution of the works month

Add the following pay subitems:

- "C1.3.1.4 Suspension Cost
- a) De-establishment Number
 - b) Re-establishment Number
 - c) Suspension period month
 - d) Engineer's cost prime cost sum (PC) sum
 - e) Contract sign boards square metre (m²)

Under the heading "Item C1.3.1.3", delete the 2nd paragraph and replace with the following:

"The contract rate shall include full compensation for that part of the Contractor's general obligations which are mainly a function of construction time. The contract rate shall be deemed to include, leasing costs, hire costs or cost of ownership per month for Contractor's Equipment. The contract rate will be paid monthly, pro rata for parts of a month, from the Commencement Date in terms of the Contract Documentation until the end of the Mobilisation Period for item C1.3.1.3(a). For item C1.3.1.3(b) the contract rate will be paid monthly, pro rata for parts of a month, from the end of Mobilisation Period until the end of the original Contract Period specified for completion of the Works."

Add the following new paragraphs:

"Item C1.3.1.4

The rates tendered under subitem C1.3.1.4 shall represent full compensation for all Costs for Suspension of Work and all Costs during Suspension of Works period, and no other Costs (including other monthly costs) shall be payable.

Payment of subitems C1.3.1.4(a) and C1.3.1.4(b) shall be made for the number of de-establishments and re-establishments of all Personnel and Goods (Contractor's Equipment, Materials, Plant and Temporary Works) as instructed by the Engineer. Payment of subitems C1.3.1.4(a) and C1.3.1.4(b) shall not apply during the Mobilisation Period.

Payment of subitem C1.3.1.4(c) shall be made monthly, pro rata for parts of a month, from the date on which the Contractor has suspended progress of all of the Works in terms of Conditions of Contract clause 8.8 and commenced with de-establishment of the site, until permission or instruction to proceed in terms of Conditions of Contract clause 8.12 is given. Payment of subitem C1.3.1.4(c) shall not apply during the Mobilisation Period.

The Prime Sum in subitem C1.3.1.4(d) is provided to cover the cost of the Engineer during the period of suspension of the works. The amounts certified by the Employer shall be made to the Engineer, within 30 days of it being certified by the Employer."

SECTION 1.5: ACCOMMODATION OF TRAFFIC

PART A: SPECIFICATIONS

A1.5.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

A1.5.7.10 Construction of temporary deviations

a) General

Delete the last paragraph and replace with the following: “The proposed location, layout, temporary drainage, earthworks, pavement layers, surfacing and ancillary works details of all temporary deviations, including the signage and road marking required, shall be agreed with the Engineer before construction of any temporary deviation commences.”.

b) Drainage works for temporary deviations

In the 2nd paragraph in the 1st sentence delete “specified” and replace with: “approved”.

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	Unit
-------------	-------------

C1.5.4 Construction of temporary deviations	
--	--

In the last sentence of the item description, after the words “...include full compensation for the”, add the following: “design and the”.

SECTION 1.6: CLEARING AND GRUBBING

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

(iii) Items to be measured and paid for using items specified elsewhere in the specifications

In Table C1.6-1 for the Preparation of topsoil stockpile sites activity, delete reference to “Chapter 11” and replace with “Chapter 4”.

COTO CHAPTER 2:SERVICES

There are no amendments to this Chapter

COTO CHAPTER 3:DRAINAGE

SECTION 3.2: CULVERTS

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	Description	Unit
C3.2.2	Backfilling	
C3.2.2.3	Extra over sub-items C3.2.2.1 and C3.2.2.2 for soil cement backfilling	
	<i>In sub-item (a), delete "of 3% cement".</i>	
	<i>In sub-item (b), delete "of 3% cement".</i>	

Add the following new item:

Item	Description	Unit
C3.2.28.1	Removing and disposal of existing culverts	
C3.2.28.1	Removing and disposal of existing culverts (Steel 600mm - 5750mm)	meter (m)

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, material, screening of the structure for safety and environmental protective measures, equipment, and plant as well for all work and incidentals required to complete the work as specified and required to demolish the concrete member and to load, transport and dispose the concrete segments and rubble at the nearest approved disposal site including overhaul and any fees applicable at the site. Refer to A14.3.7.3 (b).

COTO CHAPTER 4: EARTHWORKS AND PAVEMENT LAYERS: MATERIALS

SECTION 4.1: BORROW MATERIALS

PART A: SPECIFICATIONS

A4.1.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

A4.1.7.2 Borrow pit and quarry operations

b) Classes of excavation

(iv) Hard excavation

In the 2nd bullet after: "Ripping with a bulldozer" add the following:

"Ripping shall be carried out on typically moderately weathered soft rock (soft rock as defined in Section 12.1 Table A12.1.7-1) that can be efficiently ripped by a bulldozer with a weight of at least 35 tons and minimum nett power of 220 kW."

SECTION 4.2: CUT MATERIALS

PART A: SPECIFICATIONS

A4.2.3 GENERAL

A4.2.3.2 Contractor prepared plans for cuttings

In 1st paragraph at the end of the last sentence, add the following as part of the last sentence:

“, unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documentation.”

SECTION 4.4: COMMERCIAL MATERIALS

PART A: SPECIFICATIONS

A4.4.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

A4.4.7.1 Selection (design) of the stabilising agent content

c) Cementitious stabilising agent for chemical stabilisation

Step 2: Determine the Initial Consumption of Stabiliser (ICS) of the material.

Add the following after the 1st paragraph:

"The ICS shall be determined for more than one stabilizer agent and the stabilizer agent to be utilised in Step 3 shall be selected by the Engineer based on the ICS results."

COTO CHAPTER 5: EARTHWORKS AND PAVEMENT LAYERS: CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 5.3: ROAD PAVEMENT LAYERS

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A5.3.8 WORKMANSHIP

A5.3.8.4 Construction tolerances for pavement layers

Add the following as a new sub-clause:

“f) Surface texture

The maximum volumetric texture depth (measured as described in SANS 3001-BT11) of the base, shall be as specified in Table A5.3.8-7, for the different seal types to be placed on the base.

Table A5.3.8-7: Maximum texture of base

Surfacing type	Max texture depth of the base
Single seal with 10 mm aggregate	0,8
Single seal with 10 mm aggregate (with cover spray)	1,0
Single seal with 14 mm aggregate	0,8
Single seal with 14 mm aggregate (with cover spray)	1,5
Single seal with 14 mm aggregate (with Bitumen rubber)	1,2
Double seal with 10 mm aggregate and sand	1,0
Double seal with 14 mm aggregate and sand	1,5
Cape Seal with 10 mm aggregate and one layer of slurry	1,5
Cape Seal with 14 mm aggregate and one layer of slurry	2,0
Cape Seal with 20 mm aggregate and two layers of slurry	2,5
Double seal with 14 mm aggregate and a layer of 7 mm aggregate	1,5
Double seal with 14 mm aggregate and a layer of 5 mm aggregate	1,5
Double seal with 20 mm aggregate and a layer of 10 mm aggregate	2,0
Double seal with 20 mm aggregate and a layer of 7 mm aggregate	2,0
Double seal with 20 mm aggregate and two layers of 7 mm aggregate	1,5
Other surfacing type (as indicated in the Contract Documentation)	As specified in the Contract Documentation”

A5.3.8.5 Surface regularity

Add the following to the 1st paragraph:

“The surface regularity shall be assessed on the final prepared layer after all excess fines have been swept off the surface.”

c) By using a profiler

In the paragraph following Table A3.5.8--6, delete the following: " for payment items *** _____ ", and replace with the following: "for payment items as specified in the Contract Documentation".

Add the following New Section 5.6:

A5.6 RE-CONSTRUCTION OF PAVEMENT USING LAYERS COLD IN-SITU STABILISATION WITH A NEW (3RD-MILLENNIUM) MODIFIED EMULSION (NME) STABILISING AGENT

CONTENTS

PART A: SPECIFICATIONS

A5.6.1 SCOPE

A5.6.2 DEFINITIONS

A5.6.3 GENERAL

A5.6.4 DESIGN BY CONTRACTOR / PERFORMANCE BASED SYSTEMS

A5.6.5 MATERIALS

A5.6.6 CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT

A5.6.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

A5.6.8 WORKMANSHIP

PART B: LABOUR ENHANCEMENT

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES

PART A: SPECIFICATIONS

A5.6.1 SCOPE

This section covers work required for the construction of new roads (including upgrading of existing unpaved roads) or the rehabilitation of the upper pavement layers (base and sub-base) using the cold in-situ recycling process with (a) labour-intensive construction methods with a mixture of conventional equipment (b) conventional equipment, i.e., water-cart, grader(s) and compaction equipment (c) recycler and (d) central mixing plant. The construction of new pavement layers, using a material-compatible NME stabilising agent (or alternative stabilising additive) in an emulsified state (to be applied together with the construction water), is aimed at the use of naturally available materials (often in-situ) from the area of the road that can cost-effectively be utilised in the upper pavement layers.

A5.6.1.1 Rehabilitation

The rehabilitation of existing roads is aimed at the optimum use of damaged or weathered in-situ materials in a cold in-situ recycling process, which may include a pre-stabilisation process of the breaking-up of existing pavement layers and mixing of the materials, with or without the addition of new materials to achieve a uniformly mixed material with no materials exceeding 40 mm diameter or a third of the total thickness of the layer that is being recycled. After a homogeneous mix has been achieved, the material is stabilised in place with the material-compatible NME stabilising agent or alternative stabilising additive/product to produce a homogenous mixture, which is spread, cut to level and compacted to the required specification. This section also covers the use of an applicable prime, as a temporary surface for early trafficking. It is important to note that the prime must also be material-compatible (with the NME stabilising agent to ensure adequate adhesion).

A5.6.2 DEFINITIONS

The relevant definitions in the standard specification are applicable. Additional definitions for this Section are included here.

Conventional equipment – this is equipment that is normally used for the construction of the Works. This equipment excludes equipment specifically designed and used for in-place reconstruction works and/or for the recycling of materials.

Rehabilitation - this is the restoration of an existing deteriorated or failed road pavement either to the original constructed condition or to a better condition. The restoration of the road pavement can take place by patching, by layer reconstruction, by adding layers or a combination of the aforementioned as specified in the Contract Documentation.

NME – New (3rd-millennium) Modified Emulsion (NME) stabilised materials. New or similar where an emulsion is defined as any additive in the form of a solution, including any additive added to the construction water including (but not limited to): Bitumen emulsions with/without a modified emulsifying

C3-26

agent (e.g. an aggregate adhesive, water repellent agents (e.g. organ of functional silanes and/or with the addition of polymers (micro and or nano polymers) and or Material compatible polymers (micro and/or nano polymers), or Any “ rock/aggregate/soil stabilising agent

Slushing - the process of wetting the surface of a compacted layer accompanied by rolling with a smooth-drum roller and/or a pneumatic tyre roller to generate saturated fine material, a slush, on the upper surface of the compacted layer.

Uniform pavement section - an uniform pavement section has pavement layers with similar layer materials, similar layer properties and similar layer thicknesses throughout the section. Uniform pavement sections shall be clearly identified in the Contract Documentation.

Stabilising Agent - NME as defined in the preamble to the Project Specifications

In-situ - this means in the actual final location without moving the material elsewhere.

A5.6.3 GENERAL

A5.6.3.1 Traffic accommodation

The traffic accommodation arrangements required during construction of roadworks in urban and rural areas are specified in Chapter 1 of the specifications.

A5.6.3.2 Material selection

The material specifications in this Section are:

- Reclaimed material from existing pavements shall be utilised as specified in the Contract Documentation. All reclaimed material from existing pavements, shall be broken down and oversize material removed, to comply with the maximum size and grading requirements for the particular use of the reclaimed material as specified in the Contract Documentation
- New (3rd-millennium) Modified Emulsion (NME) shall be material sourced by the Contractor whereby the Contractor will take full responsibility and liability for using a stabilising agent not meeting the END-PRODUCT specification.
- Material classifications must be inline with Table A5.6.10 meeting the material classification criteria specified in **Tables A5.6.5.3/1** and **A5.6.10/1**

A5.6.3.3 Construction limitations

The Contractor shall arrange his in-situ processing and stabilisation of pavement layer operations in such a manner as to minimise the disruption of public traffic. Every effort shall be made to ensure that the safety of the travelling public on existing roads is prioritised throughout the site of the works at all times. In-situ processing and stabilisation operations shall be carefully planned and executed following the following limitations:

- (a) Individual work areas shall be clearly demarcated with traffic signs, delineators and traffic control facilities as specified.
- (b) The individual work areas shall be planned in such a manner that all processing and stabilisation of pavement layers and the compaction thereof as specified in Clause A5.6.7.13 be completed within the same day or period specified.
- (c) No priming shall be done unless the processed and stabilised pavement layers have been tested, inspected and accepted by the Engineer. In cases where access needs to be given to the public, priming will be done on the instruction of the Engineer. With the enrichment of the processed and stabilised layers, light traffic (urban) can be allowed to use an un-primed layer with confidence, depending on the characteristics of the materials and the NME stabilising agent used, without any serious damage being inflicted on the stabilised layers. In such cases, the same procedures should be followed before priming and/or surfacing as discussed with light traffic being allowed to use a primed surfacing.
- (d) Within individual working areas, the Contractor shall make adequate provision for drainage of milled, excavated and/or asphalt overlay areas where water can pond or be contained against an irregular roadway surface. No separate payment will be made for the provision and use of

standby pumps and de-watering equipment for cutting drainage slots and/or channels to effectively drain the roadway surface as instructed by the Engineer in the interests of safety for the travelling public. The Contractor shall make allowance for this drainage in this tendered rates.

- (e) Delineators shall be placed along each longitudinal step exceeding 30 mm between adjacent lanes of the roadway.

The maximum allowable step within a lane opened to traffic shall be restricted to 40 mm. If due to plant breakdown or other unforeseen circumstances, a longitudinal or transverse step higher than 20 mm occurs within a lane, the strip shall be feathered off using quick-drying NME slurry or compacted asphalt over a distance of 500 mm to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

(f) If rain falls during the application process, the work must be stopped, the area must be sealed using a single roller pass and application of the NME shall only recommence once the moisture content of the area has reduced to the level it was before it started raining or to an acceptable level with the necessary adjustments in the construction water and the NME stabilising agent as a percentage of the construction water.

A5.6.3.4 Weather Limitations

No in-situ processing and stabilisation of materials shall commence if the threat of rain is present. The in-situ moisture condition should allow for the dilution of the NME in the construction water as described. Materials earmarked for stabilisation should be allowed to reach a moisture condition that allows for the mixing of the stabilising agent at the required moisture content. The ripping of the materials and exposure thereof to sunny conditions could assist with the natural drying of materials before the processing and stabilisation are to proceed.

A5.6.3.5 Protection and Maintenance

The Contractor shall protect the completed base layer from all damage until the surfacing is complete, or if opened to traffic, ensure that the surfacing complies with the required condition to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Any damage occurring to the completed base or any defects that may develop due to faulty workmanship shall be made good by the Contractor at his own expense and to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Repairs shall be made in a manner approved by the Engineer to ensure an even and uniform surface.

During the working and construction of the base layer, precautionary measures shall be taken to prevent kerbs and channelling and concrete works from being damaged or shifted. Care shall be taken to protect all pre-cast units from chipping and breakage. Concrete kerbing and channelling, as well as other structures adjacent to the road, shall be protected against staining, by the NME product and the subsequent surfacing of the road. Any work stained by the NME and/or surfacing shall be broken down and replaced unless all such NME or surfacing material is completely removed so as not to show any stains. Painting over stained work will not be allowed.

Where the cold in-situ processing and stabilisation are to be carried out at existing structures, care shall be exercised to avoid damage to concrete elements, expansion joints, manholes, catch-pits, etc. **Damage caused to any element forming part of the permanent works shall be repaired at the Contractor's cost.**

Damaged caused by the Contractor through careless operations shall be repaired at his own costs. New construction shall be done following the drawings and the Specifications. The Contractor will be held responsible for the timely adjustment of all covers and frames in advance of surrounding construction, whether they are indicated on the drawings or by the Engineer or not. **No claims for delays arising from the failure of the Contractor to affect the necessary adjustments in good time will be allowed.**

The type of surfacing and selection of the binder or modified binder should allow for evaporation of moisture to continue (similar to any other type of pavement layer (e.g. granular, cement stabilised, etc.) that will continue to dry out due to evaporation over a period of at least two seasons). It should be noted that some modified binders inhibit the ability of the evaporation of moisture to occur, leading to the trapping of and concentration of moisture underneath the surfacing and formation of water below the surfacing which could result in early problems in terms of stripping of the surfacing and/or, in the case of chip-seals, punching of the stone (chips) into the base, resulting in severe bleeding of the surfacing and early failure.

A5.6.3.6 Construction Tolerances and Finish Requirements

Care shall be exercised to avoid damage to any concrete elements, expansion joints, joint nosings, manholes, kerbing, catch pits and any other roadside furniture during reconstruction of the layers. Damage caused to any element forming part of the permanent works shall be repaired at no cost to the Employer.

A5.6.3.7 Programme of reconstruction work

All reconstruction work shall only take place in accordance with the accepted reconstruction programme which the Contractor shall compile and submit to the Engineer prior to commencing the reconstruction of each uniform road pavement section. The programme shall be updated and the updated programme shall be submitted to the Engineer at the end of each week.

Prior to the start of each single-operation of work, the Contractor shall prepare a M&U plan detailing proposals for the work. This plan shall at least include the following:

- The overall layout of the length and width of road intended to be reconstructed during the single-operation. The width shall be divided into the number of parallel cuts required to achieve the specified width of treatment.
- The location of and overlap width (minimum overlap of 200 mm) at each longitudinal joint between adjacent cuts.
- The location of the inner and outer wheel paths of each construction lane affected by the reconstruction.
- The sequence and length of each cut to be reconstructed before starting on the adjacent or following cut.
- An estimate of the time required for the reconstruction along each cut and for finishing off the work.

A5.6.3.8 Contractor plans for the reconstruction of existing roadworks

The Contractor shall prepare and submit an M&U plan for the RR of existing roadworks to ensure that it is worked in a sustainable and sensitive manner, to ensure that the environmental impact is minimised, that material use and haulage are optimised and that the work is carried out in a cost-effective manner.

The M&U plan shall at least take cognizance of the following and provide detail of the following as appropriate:

- The pavement layer reconstruction/rehabilitation programme.
- A method statement and programme for the construction of each of the pavement layers including the reclaiming of existing road materials, the breaking down and processing in-place of an existing pavement layer and the completion of each layer.
- Details of the programme for the movement of materials to ensure that the material is not handled unnecessarily.
- The survey methods to be used to set out and control the levels and width of the pavement layers for each processed layer.
- A method statement for the construction of a trial section using a recycler.
- A method statement of how oversize material will be dealt with.
- Measures to comply with the general and specific conditions of the road environmental management plan.
- Measures to comply with the latest applicable Construction Regulations.
- Measures to comply with safety regulations and obligations in terms of the latest Occupational Health and Safety Act.
- The full quality and process control testing detail for the applicable materials tests along with the frequency and quantity of such testing for each constructed section of each layer to ensure full compliance of the constructed layer in terms of compaction density, material quality and stabilisation testing (visual and laboratory), and
- Procedure for the regular monitoring, auditing and reporting.

The RR of an existing pavement layer shall only commence once the Contractor's M&U plan for that layer has been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer.

A5.6.4 DESIGN BY THE CONTRACTOR / PERFORMANCE BASED SYSTEMS

The Contractor will take full responsibility and liability for using a stabilising agent not meeting the END-PRODUCT specification.

During the design phase, the Design Engineer should ensure that products are available that will meet the specifications with the given naturally available materials.

A5.6.5 MATERIALS

The use of a material-compatible NME stabilising agent (or alternative stabilising additive/product) aims to optimally use naturally available material (new or in-situ) in the upper pavement layers of a road meeting the minimum design requirements as specified in Tables A5.6.5.3/1 and A5.6.10/1 (NME4) (applicable during construction for quality control and use during the detailed material design in the laboratory as detailed).

The aim is to cost-effectively utilise naturally available materials as an alternative to newly crushed-stone materials in both the upgrading of existing unpaved roads, design and construction of new roads as well as the rehabilitation of existing pavements, through the improvement of appropriate available materials normally considered to be “non-standard”, “marginal”, “low-cost”, or even “sub-standard” in terms of the standard material indicator tests. A material-compatible NME stabilising agent will be able to neutralise the effect and possible negative impact of secondary minerals formed during weathering as a result of chemical decomposition and nullify any possible risk associated with the use of the potentially water sensitive natural materials by meeting the material classification criteria specified in Tables A5.6.5.3/1 and A5.6.10/1. The DCP criteria given are only applicable for quality control during construction on approval of the engineer.

Materials from existing pavement layers shall be classified as follows for excavation and processing purposes:

A5.6.5.1 Existing bituminous materials

Bituminous material shall be an asphalt surfacing or a bituminous seal from an existing layer. Where the asphalt surfacing and bituminous seal are recycled together with the underlying layers, the mixture will not be classified as bituminous material.

A5.6.5.2 Granular Materials

The base and sub-base pavement layers in the existing pavement shall be classified as granular materials. Granular material shall include crushed stone, gravel soil and natural gravel and can consist of cemented or non-cemented material. Crushed stone obtained from existing pavements and processed as gravel material will be paid for as gravel material and not as crushed stone.

The mixture of bituminous material (RA) and base and sub-base material shall be classified as granular material.

A5.6.5.3 Extra material

Extra material as specified consists of:

- (a) Naturally available materials (and (if cost-effective) crushed stone materials)

The pavement layers will be designed based on the requirements of the design traffic loadings and the material specifications required for the various pavement layers as designed, complying with Table A5.6.5.3/1.

- (b) Crusher dust

No crusher dust is to be used with a material-compatible NME stabilising agent unless specified for that specific NME stabilising agent.

- (c) Gravel.

The gravel material shall be of a minimum quality as per Table **A5.6.5.3/1**. (Higher quality materials will normally require less of the modifier, depending on the inherent mineralogy.) Payment for the addition of extra material shall be made under Pay Item C5.6.12

TABLE A5.6.5.3/1: Standard specifications for New (3rd-millennium) Modified Emulsion (NME) stabilised materials

Note: NME4 is applicable to this contract

Test or Indicator	Material ¹	Material classification			
		NME1	NME2	NME3	NME4
Minimum serial requirements before stabilisation and/or treatment (Natural materials)					
Material spec. (minimum) Unstabilised material: Soaked CBR ² (%) (Mod AASHTO)	NG / (CS)	> 45 ² (95%) ACV < 30%	> 25 ² (95%)	> 10 ² (93%)	> 7 ² (93%)
Grading Modulus (GM)	NG	> 1.5	> 1.0	-	-
	GS	NA	> 1.0	-	-
Sieve analysis: % < 0.075 mm (P _{0.075})	ALL	< 25 %	<25 %	< 35 %	< 50 %
XRD scans: - Total sample - 0.075 mm fraction (P _{0.075})	ALL	√	√	√	√
	ALL	√	√	√	√
% Material passing 2 µm (P _{0.002}) (e.g. Clay & Mica & Talc) as a % of Material (with Talc <10%) (XRD-scans of the material passing the 0.075 mm sieve are used to determine the % clay, mica and talc in the material – In this case P _{0.002} = P _{0.075} x (P _{clay, etc.} in P _{0.075}))	NME stabilisation with micro-meter (µm) emulsion particle sizes				
	ALL	< 15 %	< 15 %	< 15 %	< 15 %
	NME stabilisation with emulsion containing micro-scale as well as nano-scale particles (adjusted according to material grading)				
	ALL	NA	< 35 %	< 35 %	< 35 %
NME stabilisation with emulsion containing nano-scale and pico-scale particles (grading adjustments) together with technologies addressing workability of materials on site					
ALL	NA	NA	> 35 %	> 35 %	
Material specifications after stabilisation and/or treatment					
In-situ density to be required after stabilisation and compaction (mod AASHTO) (%) (minimum)	Base	> 100 %	> 100 %	> 98 %	> 97 %
	Sub-base	NA	> 98 %	> 97 %	> 95 %
DCP(DN mm/blow)(Quality control in field testing - base only) (stabilised and compacted = wet; 7 days cured = dry)		NA	NA	< 2.6 _(wet) < 2.0 _(dry)	< 3.5 _(wet) < 2.3 _(dry)
Mod AASHTO density (%) (for laboratory testing)		> 100 %	> 100 %	> 100 %	> 100 %
*UCS _{wet} (kPa) (150 mm Φ Sample)	Design³	> 2 500	> 1 500	> 1 000	> 750
	Construction⁴	> 2 200	> 1 200⁵	> 700⁵	> 450⁵
Retained Compressive Strength (RCS): (UCS _{wet} /UCS _{dry}) (%)		> 85	> 75	> 70	> 65
RCS in relation to minimum UCS _{wet(criteria)} = RCS _{effective} = ((RCS x (UCS _{wet} /UCS _{wet(criteria)}))) (%)		>100	> 90	>85	> 80
*ITS _{wet} (kPa) (150 mm Φ Sample)	Design³	> 240	> 200	> 160	> 120
	Construction⁴	> 220	> 180⁵	> 140⁵	> 100⁵
Retained Tensile strength (RTS): ITS _{wet} /ITS _{dry} (%)		> 85	> 75	> 70	> 65
RTS in relation to minimum ITS _{wet(criteria)} = RTS _{effective} = ((RTS x (ITS _{wet} /ITS _{wet(criteria)}))) (%)		>100	> 90	> 85	> 80

¹CS – crushed stone; NG – natural gravel; GS – gravel soil, and SSSC – sand, silty sand, silt, clay.\

²CBR only used as reference to traditionally used test procedures as a broad first indicator

*Definitions: UCS = Unconfined Compressive Strength; ITS = Indirect Tensile Strength);

UCS_{dry}; ITS_{dry} = testing after rapid curing; UCS_{wet}; ITS_{wet} = testing after rapid curing and 4 hours in water (as per test procedure specified for the testing of cementitious stabilising agents (SANS 3001-GR32:2010, 2010));

Design³ = Minimum criteria to be met in the laboratory during the design phase

Construction⁴ = Minimum criteria to be met during construction as part of quality control

⁵Criteria based on reference TG2 (Asphalt Academy, 2009)

A5.6.5.4 Material stabilisation/improvement products/additives

(a) Stabilising Agent: NME as defined in the preamble to the Project Specifications.

During the Detailed Design Phase of the project, the Design Engineer must identify the potential use of an NME for the improvement of materials not adhering to the design characteristics and the volume of material for such stabilisation calculated for inclusion in the Bill of Quantities (BOQ). Contractors and their suppliers must show proof of concept and provide guarantees to the following:

The material-compatible NME stabilising agent must be environmentally stable and produce/release NO adverse negative substances during the process of hydrolysis (i.e., when mixed with the construction water) and condensation (i.e., when attachment to the material/soil occurs). A Safety Sheet to this effect must be produced by the supplier. The specified cold-mix material-compatible NME must be stable in containers (i.e., flow-bins or tankers) on site (with or without minimum maintenance (e.g. weekly circulation of the stabilising agent - the cost of which will be included in the cost of the stabilising agent)) for a minimum period of at least 4 months. At all times during site storage, the NME stabilising agent will be able to be used with the tested material to meet the applicable design criteria as contained in Tables **A5.6.5.3/1** and/or **A5.6.10**. **The supplier/contractor shall take full responsibility (and cost implications) for using an NME stabilising agent resulting in inferior test results and/or stability.**

The applicable selected NME stabilising agent must at all times meet the specified criteria for the specific pavement as contained in Tables **A5.6.5.3/1** and/or **A5.6.10**. It should be **noted that different specifications are applicable for the design in the laboratory and quality control during construction** to allow for laboratory versus site variations and conditions. The prescribed test procedures are detailed in Clause A5.6.9.2

The NME stabilising agent must have a guaranteed minimum on-site storage stability exceeding **4 (four)** months and a workable Viscosity during all seasons of the year without pre-heating, allowing for the in-situ cold recycling of the available materials, taking into account storage at higher ambient temperatures during the summer months and possible cold temperatures during winter months. The contractor **will take full responsibility for maintaining the stabilising agent on-site to ensure that it will remain stable during storage with no visible separation and without an increase in viscosity during storage. The NME must meet the following minimum specifications proven by the supplier/contractor:**

- A guaranteed shelf life on-site (e.g., in flow bins if applicable) **exceeding (at least) 4 (four) months or as specified by the engineer.** (The shelf life can normally be increased to at least 6 to 12 months through the circulation of a quality NME mix once a week using a normal circulation pump.)
- Laboratory test results using the prescribed rapid curing test procedure on available materials from site testing the UCS (dry and wet) and ITS (dry and wet) and meeting the required Retained Compression Strengths (RCS) (UCS_{wet}/UCS_{dry} in percentage) and Retained Tensile Strengths (RTS) (ITS_{wet}/ITS_{dry} in percentage), as well as the required Effective, Retained Compressive Strength ($RCS_{effective} = RCS \times (UCS_{wet}/UCS_{wet(criteria)})$) and Effective Retained Tensile Strengths ($RTS_{effective} = RTS \times (ITS_{wet}/ITS_{wet(criteria)})$). The average values of at least 3 tests shall be used to obtain the laboratory results. The laboratory results should meet the criteria for the design phase as contained in Table **A5.6.5.3/1** and/or **A5.6.10** (the higher design criteria take into account variations between laboratory and on-site conditions).
- Additional test samples shall be prepared and cured at 22-25°C for 28 days and retested. The test results should either show similar or higher results as tested after the initial rapid curing process as prescribed in Table **A5.6.5.3/1** and/or **A5.6.10** to ensure that no negative mineral and or stabilising agent interaction or degeneration of polymers (where applicable) occur.
The prepared material-compatible NME on site must be ready for immediate dispersion within the construction water (using a standard circulation pump) and ready for stabilisation. It is

C3-33

important to note that all containers and water tankers must be thoroughly cleaned before the NME is added. Unclean (contaminated) equipment could result in activating any residual bituminous mix left in the container or water tanker when the NME is added, resulting in an unusable sticky substance, such as balls or strings of bitumen. **Any losses occurred during construction due to the use of contaminated equipment will be at the cost of the contractor.**

- (b) Additives for granular material stabilisation/treatment alternatives other than those defined in Item (a). The material stabilisation/treatment additive must have a guaranteed on-site stability exceeding 4 (four) months taking into account storage at high ambient temperatures during summer months and possible cold temperatures during winter months. **The supplier/contractor will take full responsibility for maintaining the stabilising additive/product on site to ensure that during storage, before application, the additive /product will remain stable with no visible separation of particles and without any change in measurable properties during storage (e.g., an increase in viscosity). The stabilised mix must meet the following minimum specifications proven to be the supplier/contractor:**

- A guaranteed shelf-life on-site (e.g., in flow bins if applicable) exceeding 4 (four) months. (The shelf-life can normally be increased to at least 6 to 12 months by maintaining the additive/product regularly as required by the supplier.)
- Laboratory test results using the prescribed rapid curing test procedure on available materials from site testing the UCS (dry and wet) and ITS (dry and wet) and meeting the required Retained Compression Strengths (RCS) (UCS_{wet}/UCS_{dry} in percentage) and Retained Tensile Strengths (RTS) (ITS_{wet}/ITS_{dry} in percentage), as well as the required Effective, Retained Compressive Strength ($RCS_{effective} = RCS \times (UCS_{wet}/UCS_{wet(criteria)})$) and Effective Retained Tensile Strengths ($RTS_{effective} = RTS \times (ITS_{wet}/ITS_{wet(criteria)})$). The average values of at least 3 tests shall be used to obtain the laboratory results. The laboratory results should meet the criteria for the design phase as contained in Table C1002/1 and/or Table C1014/1 (the higher design criteria takes into account variations between laboratory and on-site conditions)
- Additional test samples shall be prepared and cured at 22-25°C for 28 days and retested. The test results should either show similar or higher results as tested after the initial rapid curing process as contained in Table **A5.6.5.3/1** and/or **A5.6.10** to ensure that no negative mineral and or stabilising additive/product interaction or degeneration of the additive/product (where applicable) occurs as an indication of durability.

The prepared stabilising additive/product on-site must be ready for immediate dispersion within the construction water (using a standard circulation pump) ready for stabilisation or the supplier must clearly specify the process of application during the construction process to ensure that a uniform mix with uniform qualities is achieved. **The differences in methods of application will be to the cost of the contractor.**

It is important to note that all containers and water tankers must be thoroughly cleaned before any stabilising additive/product is added. Unclean (contaminated) equipment could result in the activating of any residual mix left in the container or water tanker when the stabilising additive/product is added, resulting in an unusable substance. **Any losses occurred during construction due to the use of contaminated equipment will be at the cost of the contractor.**

c) Water.

Water used for diluting the stabilising additive/product shall be potable water (clean and free from any salts and contamination) that will cause the stabilising additive/product to be adversely affected by these chemical impurities. The stabilising additive/product will be tested for compatibility with the compaction water. Water must be potable and the pH shall not exceed 7 (or as required for the use of the specific stabilising additive/product). Should local sources be considered, prior laboratory testing to ensure acceptability will be required. The quality of the water must adhere to the requirements given in Table A5.6.5.4. **Any additional requirement for the construction water as required by the supplier of the stabilising additive/product will be the cost of the contractor.**

Table A5.6.5.4: Water classification for Construction Testing

		Water Quality Classification Code						
		H0	H1	H2	H3	H4	H5	
Property	Unit	Pure water (AR)	Clean water (Rain)	Treated water (Municipal)	Silty (muddy) water with low salt content	Highly mineralised chloride sulphate water (brackish)	Waste brack, sewage, marsh, sea, etc. water	Method
PH*	-	7.0	5.7 – 7.9	4.5 – 6.5	4.5 – 8.5	9.0	-	SABS M113 SM 11 - 1990
Dissolved solids*	ppm	0	1000	1500	3000	-	-	SABS 213 SM213 - 1990
Total hardness*	-	None	None	Temporary	Temporary	Permanent	-	SABS 215 SM 215 - 1971
Suspended matter	ppm	0	2000	2000	5000	-	-	SABS 1049 SM 1049 -1990
Electrical conductivity	mS/m	0	200	200	500	-	-	SABS 1057 SM 1057 – 1982
Sulphates (SO ₄)	ppm	0	200	300	500	1000	-	SABS 212 SM 212 - 1971
Chlorides (Cl)	ppm	0	500	1000	3000	5000	-	SABS 202 SM 202 - 1983
Alkali Carbonates (CO ₃) & Bicarbonates (HCO ₃)	ppm	0	500	1000	1000	2000	-	SABS 241 -999
Sugar	-	Negative	Negative	Negative	Negative	Negative	-	SABS 833
Quality of water required	Untreated layer works		a	a	a	a	Investigate effect on the quality	
	Chemically treated layer works		a	a	Investigate the effect on the quality of the stabilised material	Investigate the effect on the quality of the stabilised material		
	Concrete mass		a	a	a	Investigate the effect on the quality		
	Concrete prestressed		a	a	References: 1. Concrete Technology – Dr S Fulton (1989) 2. Materials Manual (PAWC)			
	Slurry & emulsion		a	a				
	Soil/gravel tests		a	a				
	Chemical or control tests		a	a				

(v) Chemical modification of material

No additional chemical modification of the stabilised material will be allowed if not contained in the original specification. **In all cases, the requirements as given in Table A5.6.5.3/1 and/or A5.6.10 must be met.**

(vi) Stabilisation of sub-base

In the case of the rehabilitation of an existing road or the construction of a new road, the sub-base shall conform to the requirements of the layer as per design. In all cases, the possible consequences and compatibility of the layer characteristics, in terms of the expected behaviour of the pavement structure as a whole, needs to be assessed by the Engineer.

A5.6.5.4 Composition of Recycled Mixes

During the rehabilitation of existing pavement layers, the recycled material shall consist of the existing surfacing (where present), granular material from existing pavement layers, additional material where required and an applicable stabilising agent/product. The actual composition of the mix shall be determined by the Engineer to comply with the testing requirements as specified in Table A5.6.5.3/1 and/or Table A5.6.10 as obtained using the test methods as detailed under Item A5.6.9.2.

Adjustments to the actual mix constituents are not normally required as it is already accounted for in the differences in specifications for the design versus in-field conditions during construction (some slight adjustments may be authorised by the Engineer, based on the results of the trial section taking into account additional factors such as equipment used, e.g. limitation equipment vs recycler vs central mixing plant and climatic conditions) – in all cases such adjustments must be authorised by the Engineer. The Engineer reserves the right to adjust the composition of the mix at any time should he deem it necessary. The Contractor and Supplier shall provide the Engineer with the proposed final mix proportions based on the required test results and the Engineer must approve the results before any materials are ordered. The risk of alternative designs using any alternative additive/product not specified remains with the Contractor as per normal contract specifications.

The average values for in-situ moisture contents shall be tested by the Contractor and confirmed by the Engineer prior to any work commencing on any specific day for adjustments in the amount of construction water together with the stabilising agent to be made if necessary.

A5.6.6 CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT

The specified NME stabilising agent could be highly reactive, and it is imperative that all storage tanks, water tanks, etc., be thoroughly cleaned, with no residue from previous mixes present in these tanks. The contractor shall allow the engineer to inspect the equipment before use, to ensure that the equipment is suitable for use with the specified NME stabilising agent or any other alternative as recommended by the contractor and his supplier. In all cases the supplier shall ensure that the stabilising agent application is clearly specified and the contractor shall take full responsibility to meet the specifications of the supplier that must be freely available to the engineer for quality control purposes.

A5.6.6.1 Conventional Plant

A heavy-duty motor-grader is an essential item of plant for NME stabilisation, irrespective of the combination of any of the other plant items used. This grader is required to pre-shape the material prior to being treated, for processing the material and thereafter, to cut the layer to final levels. Processing by grader includes mixing the material prior to treatment and mixing in the additive and the diluted NME or alternative additive/product.

In the case of in-situ recycling, a milling machine will be required to break up a thick asphalt layer and/or high-strength cemented material to produce a material suitable for the stabilisation or treatment. When in-situ material is to be supplemented with imported material, a milling machine can also be used effectively to blend the two materials after the correct quantity of additional material has been levelled out on top of the in-situ material and pre-shaped with a grader.

Alternatively, layers that have developed high in-situ strength can be broken down using a “woodpecker-type” attachment fitted to an excavator. The resulting chunks of pavement material can then be transported to a single-stage crusher to be crushed and transported back to the road for further processing.

A5.6.6.2 Recycling Equipment

The plant shall be so equipped that it will be able to recycle pavement layers to depths up to at least 300 mm in one operation. The plant shall be equipped so that the stabilising agent mixed in with the construction water as per calculations, can be added uniformly in a calibrated and controlled manner directly to the material being recycled or processed. Width reduction must be possible on the application nozzles when overlap recycling is done. The recycling depth shall be controlled electronically.

Pre-milling of the layer(s) to be stabilised with the surfacing (when specified) will be done to ensure that a uniformly mixed layer is present before stabilisation with the recycler is to be done. In the case of the upgrading of an existing unpaved road, ripping the material to the specified depth should be done. Oversized material can be removed by labour-intensive hand picking before the layer is stabilised, although the recycler often breaks down this material if not too hard.

The direction and speed of the recycling machine and the speed of rotation of the scarifying drum shall be adjusted to obtain the required grading and sufficient mixing of all the components of the recycled material. The machine shall be capable of making a neat vertical cut at the outer edges when recycling the layer.

The recycler should, as a minimum, be equipped with:

- Self-cleaning nozzles, and
- Be equipped with a micro-computer, able to adjust the application of the water and stabilising agent according to the speed of the recycler – the proper working of this equipment is essential to ensure that the stabiliser is applied to specification. The Contractor shall ensure that equipment operators receive the necessary training to operate the equipment to enable the required specifications to be met.

The recycler will be pre-tested using clean water to ensure that all systems, as per specification, are in proper working order, that operators are fully trained and that the stabilising agent will be added as adjusted by the speed of the recycler.

A5.6.6.3 Water Tanker

Self-propelled water tankers, with a 15 000 L capacity, are essential plant items for the successful construction of a stabilised layer. In addition to supplying the stabilising agent/additive/product for mixing, water tankers are required to ensure proper finishing of the treated layer of material after the initial mixing and processing stage has been completed (AT NO STAGE SHOULD WATER WITHOUT THE STABILISING AGENT BE ADDED TO THE LAYER).

Sufficient construction water mixed with the stabilising agent must be added to the mix to account for a loss of moisture during processing, taking into account the equipment to be used and climatic conditions to ensure that compaction starts with the layer preferably at approximately OMC. (Results from detailed testing under actual as well as research conditions indicate that the OMC of the material is reduced by approximately 10 % when using a water-repellent modifier and that the moisture/density relationship may not be as critical compared with that of stabilisation without the NME stabilising agents not containing a water-repellent modification. Experience has shown that the best results are usually obtained when final compaction is achieved at a moisture level of 0.5 per cent to 1.0 per cent below OMC (taking into account the total fluid content and not only the water content of the stabilising agent). Sufficient water tankers must be provided to ensure that the processing of the material is a continuous procedure with no stopping to wait for a water tanker.

Where applicable, water tankers involved with the treatment and distribution of a stabilising agent should be earmarked only for the transportation of the stabilising agent in various stages of dilution as dictated by the in-situ moisture content of the material to be stabilised. In the case of NME stabilisation, it is recommended that a small percentage of the NME mixture be retained in the tanker in the cases of the use of conventional equipment to treat a “dry” surface before or during compaction when the moisture loss is deemed to be excessive for one or another reason that may occur in practice due to numerous unforeseen (e.g., weather) conditions. A surface is visually considered to be too dry when fine cracks appear directly behind the rollers. Supervision personnel must be on site during stabilisation operations to visually note any changes that may occur during the stabilisation process.

Due to material variations, some sections along a road may also contain excessive moisture. In these cases, a small “wave” will form in front of the compaction equipment. When this phenomenon is observed, the section should be ripped and allowed to expel some moisture (evaporation) before being recompacted. This operation should not exceed a period to the end of compaction of 6 hours. In all cases, reworked layers need to meet the material specifications as contained in Table A5.6.5.3/1 and/or Table A5.6.10/1 **for NME 4**. The contractor will take full responsibility for any reworking of the layer not meeting the required specifications.

All water tankers used for NME treatment must be equipped with a circulating pump system to circulate the diluted NME after standing for an extended period and for circulating during the dilution process – in all cases contractors will take full responsibility for the end product specifications to be met with maintenance being carried out as required. Water tankers must not be fitted with a conventional spray bar but with valves (such as a clam-lock valve) which will not easily clog. The application of the diluted NME is a cold process and a modified stabilising agent containing a water-repellent agent considerably reduces the possibility of blockages of the nozzles. However, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that no blockages occur during the stabilisation process, resulting in the uneven distribution of the stabilising agent. In cases where such blockages do occur, the Engineer will require the layer to be remixed using conventional equipment or that the layer be reworked in total. Tankers must be properly flushed should they need to stand empty for extended periods (e.g., overnight).

A5.6.6.4 Rollers

The equipment to be used for the conventional breaking-up and excavation of existing pavement layers will be determined by the size and depth of the pavement section to be processed or excavated, taking into consideration the fact that work may have to be carried out in restricted areas.

One heavy-duty grid roller and an adequately powered pneumatic tyre tractor that will pull the grid roller when fully loaded, or an equivalent self-propelled sheep foot roller, may be required in the case of very coarse material during the initial stages of compaction. The use of a sheep-foot roller should not be used for the final rolling as it affects the surface roughness and visual condition of the layer.

The compaction of a stabilised base layer is normally adequately achieved with a vibratory smooth drum roller in combination with a pneumatic wheel roller to achieve a surfacing finish, meeting the required specifications of the layer in terms of density as well as a finish suitable for a surfacing consisting of a chip seal only. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that operators of the compaction equipment are fully trained in the importance and effect of amplitude and frequency adjustments when compaction is done using vibratory rollers.

A5.6.6.5 General

Static tanks shall be provided to store sufficient quantities of the stabilising agent for the needs of the project. Normally such tanks will have a capacity of between 30 000 l and 120 000 l. Static tanks must be fitted with a circulating pump system that will enable the stored stabilising agent to be properly circulated from time to time in the static tank, as per the requirements of the supplier. These tanks must be fitted with a flowmeter to ensure that the required volume of the stabilising agent is carefully measured and added to the construction water.

A5.6.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

A5.6.7.1 Removal of grass and weeds

Before commencing in-situ recycling, all grass, weeds, etc., encroaching into or onto the road surface or growing between the edge of the existing surfacing and kerbs, channels, etc., shall be removed.

A5.6.7.2 Preparing the pavement surface

Before any cold in-situ processing by any equipment may commence, the pavement surface shall be clean and free from any material that could be harmful to the execution of the works and affect the quality thereof.

For rehabilitation works, any asphaltic surface with granular sub-layers and/or cemented layers will be pre-milled before the preparation of the layer. Where specified/required, additional material shall be spread to the thickness and width as specified and milled together with the part of the existing pavement. The area to be processed shall be properly demarcated. No payment will be made for cold, in-situ reworking/processing of materials beyond the required width.

Before cold in-situ processing may commence, the moisture content of the in-situ materials to be reworked must be determined in an approved manner to determine the amount of water required to reach optimum moisture content. In the case of the measured moisture content exceeding the optimum by more than 0.5 per cent with the addition of the diluted stabilising agent, the layer shall be ripped and left to dry until the moisture content has reached an acceptable level before applying the stabilising agent and reaching the required moisture conditions.

A5.6.7.3 Construction in confined areas

In such an event where any material stabilisation as specified has to be executed in an area the width of which is less than 1.0 m or the length of which is less than 50 m and the area is less than 50 m², it shall be classified as work in restricted areas.

A5.6.7.4 Recovery of bituminous material

If so required by the design, existing bituminous material shall be milled out as indicated by the design. Excavated pavement material intended for reprocessing but which cannot be reprocessed in place or, in the opinion of the engineer, cannot be windrowed next to the excavation, nor placed in position directly at any other place, and material intended for recycling or reprocessing in a plant, shall be transported to approved stockpiles with the written permission of the engineer.

Stockpile sites for material intended for recycling or reprocessing in a plant shall be set out at the corresponding mixing or crushing plant or at such other locations as approved by the engineer.

The stockpile site shall be cleaned and all loose stones, vegetation and other materials which may cause contamination shall be removed. The site shall be graded smooth with an adequate slope to ensure proper drainage of water.

The limits of milling shall be demarcated clearly and these limits shall not be exceeded by more than 100 mm. Areas milled outside the specified limits shall be repaired by the Contractor at his own cost and to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

A5.6.7.5 Spreading of extra material on a layer before reprocessing

Where the existing road layer or surfacing level is too low, or existing material has to be spoiled due to unsuitability and/or where specified or instructed by the Engineer, suitable pavement material shall be added to the layer to make up the shortfall before the processing and stabilisation of the layer. Suitable pavement material for addition to make up a layer shortfall shall consist of naturally available materials as specified (and tested) as directed by the Engineer.

The extra pavement material shall be spread uniformly over the full area of the underlying shortfall layer by means of an approved type of mechanical spreader to such thickness as to comply with the requirements specified in Clause A5.6.3.6 after the final compaction. Segregation of the materials shall be avoided and the additional material shall be placed free from pockets of coarse and fine materials. Extra material shall only be spread on the section to be processed and stabilised and only immediately before the processing operation.

A5.6.7.6 Application of stabilising agent diluted with water

At no time whatsoever should an undiluted stabilising agent (such as an NME) be applied to the layer of material that is being processed. The NME must be added to the construction water (taking into account the total fluid content of the NME (a water-repellent modified emulsion effectively reduces the OMC of the material)). Hence, not only the water percentage within the emulsion needs to be taken into account but the total fluid content, to ensure that the mix is properly distributed throughout the layer and that the compaction can be done to meet the specified density criteria. The supplied NME needs to be diluted by a factor of between 1:4 (1-part NME and three parts water) and 1:1 (50-50) to ensure proper distribution of the stabilising agent. A high percentage of fine material (in the order of more than 20 to 25 per cent passing the 0.075 mm sieve size), will normally require higher rates of dilution (depending on the particle sizes of the NME and the specifications of the supplier) to ensure that a thorough distribution of the stabilising agent is achieved.

Coating of all the granular particles within the layer will not take place when the NME is added separately to the construction water (as is possible with modern recycling equipment). Any "wetting" of material before stabilisation will be detrimental to the material adhesion between the aggregate and the stabilising agent to be achieved. As a consequence, the in-situ moisture content of the untreated layer must never be so high that it cannot accommodate the NME stabilising agent that has been distributed within the construction water. The construction water is effectively used as a carrier of the NME stabilising agent, ensuring that all granular particles within a layer will be covered.

A5.6.7.7 Pre-treating an unsurfaced base layer

A material-compatible designed NME stabilising agent will not require the pre-treatment of materials to account for "problem" minerals such as smectites, muscovite (Mica), etc. The NME must be tested to automatically address the presence of such minerals during the detailed design phase and must be specifically designed to neutralise the effect of these minerals. In cases with high contents of specifically identified minerals, a pre-treatment may be prescribed using an appropriate co-product prior to the

C3-39

stabilisation process. The identification of the need for pre-treatment shall be done as part of the detailed design process through the detailed testing of the mineral composition of available materials (using XRD-scans), to be used in the upgrading, construction or rehabilitation of a road pavement.

Testing during the design development stage was undertaken. However, the contractor is required to undertake testing to ensure material compatibility and performance with the product that is preferred by the Contractor.

A5.6.7.8 Breaking down of material using conventional methods

During rehabilitation works, the existing pavement material shall be broken down to the specified depth and processed in place either through pre-milling or ripping as previously discussed.

The ripped material shall then be broken down in situ with a fully loaded grid roller hauled by an adequately powered tractor. During the process of grid rolling and breaking the material, the material shall be windrowed constantly and any oversize material shall be removed.

Unsuitable material for sub-base and base shall, as directed by the Engineer, be removed and spoiled and will be paid under pay Item C5.6.9.

Where sub-base layers need to be constructed, the base material shall be windrowed to the side and the sub-base layer should be inspected first. After inspection by the Engineer, the demarcated sub-base area should be reworked and re-stabilised as per design or required by the Engineer.

A5.6.7.9 Adding diluted NME

The emulsion tanker supplying the diluted NME (containing the mix of the NME and the required construction water as measured and calculated) shall be equipped with an approved measuring device (e.g., dipstick) to enable the site staff to take control calibrated depth measurements at intervals specified by the Engineer. The material processing and stabilisation operation will be cancelled/interrupted by the Engineer until this required specification is met.

The method of introducing the various materials comprising the final mix shall be done as per design and subject to the Engineer's approval. Care shall be taken to prevent excessive loss of moisture between the time when the materials are mixed and when they are compacted on the road (taking into account climatic conditions as mentioned).

A5.6.7.10 Spreading

The recycled mix shall be spread and levelled with a motor grader to the required width and to such thickness as to comply with the requirements specified in Clause A5.6.9.1 before final compaction. Segregation of the materials shall be avoided and the layers shall be free of pockets of coarse or fine materials.

A5.6.7.11 Mixing Recycler

The recycled base/sub-base material, extra material, and NME stabilising agent diluted in the construction water shall be thoroughly mixed by the recycling mixing process with plant as specified in Clause A5.6.6.

The NME diluted in the construction water, shall be measured by mass and quantities, calculated in accordance with the formulas given in Clause A5.6.5.4. It shall be introduced continuously in a controlled manner into the material that is being stabilised, proportionally to the speed of the recycler, to ensure that the correct quantity of the stabilising agent is added to the full width of the section being recycled. Care should be taken that all nozzles are fully operational during the recycling process. In cases where an uneven distribution of the stabilising agent is noticed, the layer will be re-mixed using conventional blade mixing with graders, at no extra costs or reworked in total as per instruction of the Engineer at no additional costs.

(ii) Conventional Method

Blade mixing by grader is undertaken by using the blade to move the material from side to side. This mixing process is often supplemented with the use of ploughs and/or rotavators. Where the width of the treatment restricts the horizontal movement of the material, extra use should also be made of the grader rippers with specially designed "shoes" welded onto the rippers. Such shoes are in the shape of a horizontal "V", with the sharp end of the V pointing in the direction of travel of the grader. The rippers

with their V-shaped shoes are lowered to the treated depth and the “fast forward” gear of the grader is used to plough through the layer. In this manner, the material is pushed aside, ensuring that proper mixing is achieved, even when working in confined widths.

The NME must first be diluted with the compaction water to a residual NME content of between a 1:1 to 1:4 dilution and applied in several applications onto the material over the width and length previously determined. Water tankers are used to apply the NME and the grader(s) must travel directly behind the water tanker, immediately covering the freshly sprayed NME with material, thereby preventing excessive loss of moisture and the NME from immediate breaking (where applicable). The volume of diluted NME applied is determined by the designed percentage of the NME, expressed as a percentage of the mass of the layer that is being treated.

Should weather conditions be particularly hot or dry, adjustments to the construction water must be made to ensure that the compaction moisture content (containing the NME stabilising agent) is achieved. This process is exactly the same as for the compaction of any granular layer, requiring the same care during construction to achieve the required densities.

Care should be taken to ensure that the diluted NME is applied in such a way that no rivulets are formed, that the NME does not run off the layer before it has been mixed into the layer and that the exact application rate is achieved.

During mixing, attention must be paid to the fluid content of the mix. The fluid content is the total quantity of fluid in the mix, including hygroscopic moisture, the diluted NME still in suspension and the water in the NME.

The addition of the post-mixed construction water (mixed with the NME stabilising agent) should not be so high as to result in deformation of the surface under final compaction. (Observed as a “wave” forming in front of the compaction equipment.) The required total mixed construction water as determined in the laboratory before the start of the stabilisation process may be amended based on on-site observations, allowing for the type of compaction equipment used.

Additional adjustments in the pre-mixed construction water may be required when working with porous materials. Such materials will absorb some water leading to a need for a higher percentage of pre-mixed water to achieve the required results. The design process, as recommended, should identify the presence of materials that will require higher than normal percentages of pre-mixed construction water. However, due to the limits to which pre-testing can be done, the Engineer on site should be aware of this possibility and require adjustments as recognised on site.

Where the existing asphalt surfacing or cemented base layer is being recycled with the underlying gravel layer using conventional construction equipment, the asphalt layer must first be milled off and left in a windrow on top of the granular base that is to be recycled. Once the asphalt layer has been milled off in this manner then the base layer can be milled or ripped and broken down. The stabilisation of the layer using a material-compatible NME should only commence once the milled asphalt layer and the existing gravel base material have been thoroughly blended to form a uniform material.

A5.6.7.12 Preparation before the stabilisation/treatment of the material

The following will need to be determined in advance for input into the Moisture Calculation Sheet:

- Length, width and depth of section to be stabilised; MOD, OMC and in-situ moisture content; Content of water tanker in litres; Water tanker volume will also need to be calibrated and marked out on a volume measuring gauge.

Preparation before stabilisation:

- Prior to applying the stabilising agent, the NME shall be mixed with water in the water tanker to form a diluted NME which, when applied to the material, will act as a carrier of the diluted NME to the soil fines.
- The Contractor shall determine the rate of dilution of the additive using the Moisture Calculation Sheet, which may range from 1 litre of NME to between (5 l and 40 l) of water depending on the type of material/soil, in-situ moisture content and percentage of the NME stabilisation required. This calculation sheet shall be submitted to the Engineer daily for approval, both before and after the completion of each section to be stabilised. Experience has shown that NME stabilised material/soil will reach optimum strength when final compaction is done at a moisture content of just below OMC taking into account the total fluid content (taking into consideration that a water-repellent modification will normally reduce the OMC by about 10 per cent - the contractor and his supplier will confirm the implications of any specific stabilising agent with the Engineer before the start of any operations to enable quality control to be effectively executed). To reach this target

OMC, it may be necessary to apply 1.0 per cent to 2.0 per cent moisture above OMC (depending on climatic conditions which could result in the drying and loss of moisture due to evaporation during very hot conditions and the mixing equipment used – e.g., conventional grader mixing will take longer and will allow more moisture to escape (evaporate) than mixing with a recycler). Compaction at moisture conditions which are too low will lead to the formation of fine cracks (immediately visible after the roller) which will compromise the integrity of the top of the layer, resulting in the formation of a weak inter-layer at the top which may result in the failure of the seal by separation from the rest of the base layer (the appearance of fine “cracking” when compaction commences can be addressed through a further application of some diluted NME (kept in reserve in the water-tanker) which will increase the surface moisture to achieve the desired compaction densities and a uniform layer. Too high moisture conditions will be seen when the layer is moving in front of the roller (kneeing) – in these cases, the drying out of the layer may be required by ripping, drying and re-compaction (as per previous discussions and guidelines). Such operations should not exceed more than 6 hours.

1. The diluted NME may be sprayed onto the road surface using a spray bar fitted to the water tanker or by hand spraying in places with difficult access.
2. Initial thorough and complete mixing of the NME with the construction water is essential. The NME products using a double emulsification process usually result in small particles that distribute easily through the construction water without much additional effort. However, **it is the Contractor’s responsibility to ensure that the NME is evenly distributed within the construction water.** In the cases where constant mixing of the stabilising agent with the construction water is required to prevent separation (usually a function of the particle size of the stabilising agent), an electrical or petrol-driven stirrer must be used. In such cases, the contractor must ensure that:

- The pump has sufficient capacity to circulate the entire contents of the tank in 15 minutes;
- There are no internal baffles in the tank restricting circulation, and
- Before the commencement of spraying, the contents are circulated for at least 20 minutes.

A5.6.7.13 Compaction

The completed compacted layer shall have a minimum in-situ dry density as specified for the specific layer (as per the requirement of the designed layer as in Table A5.6.5.3/1 and Table A5.6.10). It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to determine the maximum dry density and Optimum Moisture Content (OMC) of the material to be stabilised for purposes of quality control (compaction control). The Contractor may select any suitable compaction technique to achieve the required compaction, subject to the following conditions:

- The initial compaction shall be carried out with plant, which achieves stability suitable for subsequent compaction, without causing undue displacement of the material or deformation of the layers. The rolling pattern shall be designed to retain the shape of the layers as far as possible;
- The types and number of compaction equipment to be used and the amount of rolling to be done shall be such as to ensure that specified densities are obtained without damage being done to lower layers or structures. During compaction, the layer shall be maintained to the required shape and cross-section, and all holes, ruts and laminations shall be removed;
- Compaction equipment shall be adequate for obtaining the specified density within the specified time limits;
- The compaction equipment and techniques shall be capable of producing the specified surface finish and density without any interruption, and
- Not more than four (4) hours shall elapse between the time of starting the mixing process and that of starting to compact the material.

From the time when the diluted NME is added, not more than six (6) hours shall elapse until the compaction has been finally completed.

It is important to note that when adding water to material only diluted NME should be used.

The only time when the clean water can be used on its own is during the **pre-wetting of the completed layer before priming if required as per specification, depending on the type of product and supplier specification.** This information must be shared with the Engineer before the start of any works and tested as per a test section to ensure that materials are compatible and approved by the Engineer.

At no time is it allowed to “cut back“ materials, to achieve levels without remixing the layer – materials added by “cutting back” material will result in “biscuit” layers and the disintegration (breaking up) of the top of the layer. Under such circumstances, high penetration of the stone with associated bleeding within the wheel tracks will occur when a surfacing consisting of a seal is used. A ring and ball test performed on top of the base course before sealing should normally

expose this weakness and potential risks. The normal criteria used to evaluate ring and ball tests are applicable.

A5.6.7.14 Rejected work

The Contractor shall note that should he fail to meet the specified requirements for the NME stabilised layer placed at ambient temperatures, he shall remove the unacceptable layer and **will rework or replace it with approved material as instructed by the Engineer, at his own expense.**

Reworking of an existing layer may be allowed by the Engineer by ripping of the stabilised layer, adding 50 per cent of the original NME stabilising agent (this may be a function of the characteristics of the stabilising agent used) and compaction at the required OMC as per the original process to achieve the required results. It should be noted that the OMC of the material may have changed due to the first NME application. The reduction of the OMC is a function of the mineralogy of the granular material used, but normally in the order of 10 per cent. **Such reworking of the layer will be at the risk of the Contractor who will not be paid extra for the reworking of rejected works.**

A5.6.7.15 Providing a temporary wearing course

Immediately after completion of the compaction described in subsection (l), a material-compatible prime shall be applied to the finished surface using a water truck, binder distributor or hand sprayer at a spray rate of 1 litre/m² (or as specified for a specific supply). The spray rate may be adjusted by the Engineer following a trial section of not less than 100 m in length. Costing is to be done per constructed m² and not per litre, accounting for differences in product requirements.

As an alternative, a 50:50 diluted NME may be sprayed onto the layer and compacted using a steel-wheeled roller with a mass of not less than 12 tons, and/or with pneumatic rollers.

The following process is to be followed:

- Immediately after compaction, slushing of the surface will commence: Spray 1 litre/m² of the diluted NME onto the surface followed immediately by further compaction utilizing a 13-ton vibratory roller that must follow directly behind the water cart. A 22-ton Pneumatic Tyre Roller (PTR) must then follow directly behind the vibratory roller.
- Turn around and on the same strip have the water cart first drench the surface with a further 1 litre/m² diluted NME. This time the pneumatic tyre roller follows directly behind the water cart and the vibratory roller follows closely behind the PTR. It is important that the water cart and roller must work in close tandem at all times, to prevent any pick-up of the material by the drum of the vibratory roller (this is usually not a problem with the use of a material-compatible, water-repellent NME stabilising agent).
- Continue with the above points until the total area to be worked is completed.
- The area treated with a prime (recommended a diluted (50:50) NME similar to that used in the stabilisation of the base layer) is to be kept closed to traffic for the prime to properly set and dry (until the top 50 mm of the layer has dried out) with a moisture content of < 50% of OMC. The time of required closure is dependent on the prevailing weather and may be as short as 1 hour in the case of a material-compatible, water-repellent NME. Due to the addition of the water-repellent modification of a stabilising agent, a hydrophobic material surface is created and water is effectively repelled from the layer. Hence, stabilised layers constructed using a water-repellent modifier in the NME stabilising agent normally dry much quicker than pavement layers treated using traditional emulsion stabilisation processes that depend only on evaporation as a method of drying. In dry and hot conditions, a pavement layer will dry sufficiently within less than 24 hours to reach 50 per cent of OMC. The final surface should be smooth, tightly knit and free of undulations, corrugations, holes, bumps or loose material.

The application of a compatible prime (i.e., a recommended compatible NME-based prime) at a time when the base has reached a moisture content of 50 per cent of OMC should prevent most damage under conditions of light trafficking in urban areas. Heavy brushing with soft bristles is recommended before the application of the prime to remove any dust or loose materials on the surface, not disturbing the surface itself. The instructions of the supplier should apply - the risk remains with the contractor to achieve an acceptable base condition after the application of the prime. Experience has shown that a material compatible with NME prime will dry within an hour. In cases where the surfacing is applied immediately, the prime may be substituted by an appropriately specified tack coat. However, this is only applicable to cases where the contractor can ensure that the surfacing material and equipment are available for immediate application of the surfacing.

A5.6.7.16 Reconstruction of pavement layers using conventional equipment

Uniform pavement sections shall be clearly identified and detailed in the Contract Documentation. In accord with these uniform pavement sections an in-place gravel base layer or crushed stone base layer may be specified in the Contract Documentation to be reconstructed using conventional construction equipment.

C3-43

The Contractor shall first remove any asphalt surfacing to spoil or to stockpile as specified in the Contract Documentation before reconstructing the base layer. A bituminous seal surfacing is normally not removed before reconstructing the base layer unless specified otherwise in the Contract Documentation.

The exposed in-place gravel base layer or crushed stone base layer shall then be scarified to the full depth of the existing layer or to the depth as specified in the Contract Documentation. In order to comply with the grading specification in the Contract Documentation the scarified material shall then be broken down and all oversize material removed. Compliant material may also be added and thoroughly mixed in as specified in this Chapter if required to improve the grading and/or other properties of the in-place material or to increase the layer thickness as specified in the Contract Documentation.

The Contractor shall then reprocess the layer as specified for new pavement layers in this Chapter. All required stabilisation of material shall be done as specified in this Chapter

A5.6.7.17 Reconstruction of pavement layers using a recycler

Uniform pavement sections shall be clearly identified and detailed in the Contract Documentation. In accord with these uniform sections an existing gravel or crushed stone layer may be specified in the Contract Documentation to be reconstructed in-place, using a recycler.

a) Establishing construction levels – minor level changes

Before commencing any in-place reconstruction, the Contractor shall establish reference and level beacons for the setting-out and control of the works.

When only minor level changes (less than 15 mm up or down) will be made to the existing vertical alignment and/or to the road cross-fall or camber in order to restore the riding quality of the road, then new road design levels will not usually be provided in the Contract Documentation.

At each level control location, the Contractor shall record the existing road surface levels at the centre-line and at the outer limits of each lane including any surfaced shoulders. The Contractor shall use the existing road levels to determine the new construction levels along the centreline and the outer limits of each traffic lane and any surfaced shoulders. A line of best fit shall be used to determine the final levels for the reconstructed layer taking into account the following:

- The required camber or super elevation.
- The minimum requirements governing changes in the vertical alignment.
- The thickness of the existing layer to be reconstructed.
- Minimising the amount of preparatory work required ahead of reconstruction, such as minimising the importation of material.

At least two calendar weeks before reconstruction work is programmed to commence on any specific uniform pavement section, the Contractor shall submit the level proposals to the Engineer in sufficient detail to enable the proposed reconstruction levels to be reviewed. The detail shall incorporate a schedule as well as a drawing, of all the design levels and the grade lines respectively. Once agreement has been reached regarding the proposed levels, reconstruction work may commence.

The Contractor shall establish a series of level control poles placed at a constant offset on both sides of the road prior to commencing any construction work at a maximum interval as indicated in Table A5.3.8-2. The Engineer shall take control measurements to determine the accuracy and adequacy of the level control poles and shall instruct the Contractor to make any adjustments as required.

b) Establishing construction levels significant level changes

When significant level changes (more than 15 mm up or down) will be made to the vertical alignment and/or to the road cross-fall or camber, the reconstructed layers shall be reconstructed to new design levels provided in the Contract Documentation.

Before commencing any in-place reconstruction, the Contractor shall establish reference and level beacons for the setting-out and control of the works.

The Contractor shall survey the existing road levels and compare these with the new design levels and prepare a schedule of the areas where there will be surplus material and of where there will be insufficient material. This schedule will be used to prepare a layer material transfer diagram which will enable the transfer of surplus reconstructed material to areas where there is a shortage of material. The material

transfer diagram shall be submitted to the Engineer for review at least two calendar weeks before reconstruction work is programmed to commence on any specific uniform pavement section. The Engineer shall subsequently instruct the Contractor regarding the proposed reuse or spoil of surplus material, or the need to import any additional new material prior to the commencement of the reconstruction work.

The Contractor shall establish a series of level control poles placed at a constant offset on both sides of the road prior to commencing any construction work at a maximum interval as indicated in Table A5.3.8-2. The Engineer shall take control measurements to determine the accuracy and adequacy of the level control poles and shall instruct the Contractor to make any adjustments as required.

c) Preparation of the road surface

Before any reconstruction work may commence, the surface of the existing road shall be prepared as follows:

- Remove all vegetation, dirt and other foreign matter including from any adjacent lanes or shoulders that are not to be reconstructed.
- Remove road studs from the full road width.
- Remove standing water.
- Establish an off-set reference line, for each cut, for the recycler to follow and ensure accurate steering.
- Record the location of all road marking features that will be obliterated by reconstruction.
- Mill off the asphalt or bituminous seal surfacing to spoil or stockpile where specified in the Contract Documentation.

A5.6.7.17 Disposal of surplus material

Recovered pavement material remains the property of the Employer.

Surplus materials, including waste or oversized material, bladed or skimmed off the road, shall be stockpiled at designated areas within a free-haul radius of 5 km as directed by the Engineer with approval from the Client, considering environmental implications.

Should the Employer decide not to use the surplus material, the Contractor shall then dispose of the material to the satisfaction of the Client within a free-haul distance of 5 km.

A5.6.7.18 Checking moisture content and surface condition before priming and/or surfacing

The mixing and placing of asphalt or seal will not be allowed if:

- (i) free water is present on the working surface or when rain is imminent – no surfacing will be allowed during adverse weather conditions as this could result in the detachment of the surfacing from the base layer;
- (ii) the moisture content of the upper 50 mm of the recycled base exceeds 50 per cent of the Optimum Moisture Content (OMC);
- (iii) loose material is present on the surfacing - in cases where the base has been primed and exposed to trafficking, the surface needs to be cleaned of all loose material and any localised problem area repaired using an NME slurry mix (the same NME used for the stabilisation of the base layer) It is usually a good idea to prepare small quantities of slurry to ensure excellent bonding with the existing base layer).

A5.6.8 SETTING OUT OF THE WORKS

A5.6.8.1 Setting-Out and Control of The Work

The Contractor shall establish his own reference and level beacons for the setting out and control of the works.

The Contractor shall indicate his own reference and control beacons to the Engineer at least one week before the work is programmed to commence. The Engineer will take control measurements to determine the accuracy and adequacy of the reference/control beacons and may instruct the Contractor to correct any faulty work and to take and provide such additional measurements and details as may be deemed necessary. This survey work will not be measured and paid for directly and compensation for any work involved in staking or setting out will be deemed to be covered by the rates tendered and paid for the various items of work included in any contract.

No payment will be made for any inconvenience or delay caused by compliance with these requirements.

A5.6.8.2 Trial Sections (Refer COTO, 2020)

Where ordered by the Engineer, the Contractor shall construct trial sections with the preferred material-compatible NME stabilising agent (first proven through laboratory testing as per the test protocol contained in A5.6.9.2), to evaluate in practice the construction process, the compatibility of materials and the ability of the modified stabilising agent to be able to meet the specified criteria as per Table A5.6.5.3/1 and/or Table A5.6.10/1. During the trial sections, any adjustments in terms of the addition of water and applicable OMC should be finalised. The latter is of importance, especially if layers above 150 mm thick are to be stabilised in one operation (not advised). The water released and repelled by the NME will be pushed upwards towards the top part of the layer, requiring an adjustment in the pre-mixed construction water.

Trial sections shall be carried out at locations approved by the Engineer.

A5.6.8.3 Work Outside Normal Working Hours (Refer COTO, 2020)

Any work carried out outside of normal working hours must be approved by the Engineer. The Contractor shall give the Engineer at least 48 hours' notice of his intention to do work outside the normal working hours. The closure of traffic lanes will only be permitted during these times. The provision and layout of lighting for the works and warning lights for the accommodation of traffic shall be approved by the Engineer. No additional payment will be made for the provision of additional warning lights for work done outside of normal working hours. The Contractor shall allow for the provision, erection and maintenance of additional items required in his tendered rates.

A5.6.9 WORKMANSHIP

A5.6.9.1 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES AND FINISH REQUIREMENTS

(a) Construction tolerances (Refer COTO, 2020)

The applicable construction tolerances are the relevant tolerances indicated in the project specifications as related to the Category of Road. Where the existing granular base abuts kerbs or channels or New-Jersey barriers, the new work shall extend to the edge of these facilities.

Unless otherwise specified, the processed and stabilised base shall be constructed to the existing levels, cross-section profile and cross-fall to allow for a surfacing layer as specified.

(b) NME stabilising agents

The average rate of application of the diluted NME as measured at operating temperatures in the water cart shall be within 5 per cent of the specified rate of application.

(c) Uniformity of mix (chemical stabilisation)

Unless specified by a specific supplier and results proven as per specification, no additional chemical stabilisation agent (e.g., cement) is required with the use of a material-compatible NME stabilising agent.

(d) Statistical judgement schemes (Refer COTO, 2020)

Routine inspections and tests will be carried out by the Engineer to determine the quality of the materials and workmanship for compliance with the requirements of this section.

The statistical judgement schemes to be used to determine whether the requirements specified are being complied with shall be those set out in the prescribed contract documents and/or design and quality control methods.

A5.6.9.2 TESTING

(a) Testing

The Contractor shall give the Engineer at least 24 hours' notice of his intention to process/stabilise/recycle/rework any materials so that the actual process can be monitored and tested (quality control) by the Engineer. Unless otherwise agreed in advance, the Contractor shall only process/stabilise/recycle/rework any materials when the Engineer or his representative is present.

(b) Test Methods for determining UCS and ITS values – applicable during the design as well as quality control process. The number of tests done during construction as part of quality control will be done in accordance with the instructions of the engineer.

The following material test methods shall be used for the testing of NME stabilising agents or equivalent (engineering properties in terms of UCS and ITS values):

- As an input into the testing of the UCS and ITS of the material, the Optimum Moisture Content (OMC) and Maximum Dry Density (MDD) are to be determined using normal prescribed test procedures (SANS 3001-GR51), and
- The testing of the Unconfined Compression Strength (UCS), and the Indirect Tensile Strength (ITS) of the stabilised materials shall be done according to the protocols prescribed in the following paragraphs.

In all the above test methods, the +37.5 mm material must be screened off and discarded. The aggregate passing the 37.5 mm sieve and retained on the 19.0 mm sieve must not be crushed and must be used in the testing process. A pH test must be performed to determine the acidity/alkalinity levels of the material.

The curing and testing process of the 152 mm diameter samples (127 mm high) shall be as follows:

The NME stabilising agent is mixed in with the construction water and the sample is prepared at Optimum Moisture Content (OMC). For example, if the OMC of the material is 8 per cent and 1 per cent of the Material Compatible (MC) NME stabilising agent is added and the in-situ moisture content is 3 per cent, the addition of (8 to 3) 5 per cent moisture should be added to the material to achieve OMC. The 5 per cent to be added will consist of a mixture of 4 per cent construction water and 1 per cent MC-NME as per the total requirement. (Accordingly, the total fluid content (i.e., the total percentage of the NME) is added as part of the compaction water – not only the water percentage of the NME).

No cement or lime is added to a material-compatible NME stabilised material (unless specified by the supplier). Hence, the samples are not placed in plastic bags to assist with the hydration of the cement (as per usual, Bituminous Stabilised Materials (BSM) designs, contain cement as an additive and hence, the samples need to be placed in plastic bags in the oven during the rapid curing process to assist in the hydration of the cement in the mix):

- The prepared 152 mm diameter by 127 mm height samples are to be prepared as per TMH 1 (Method A14) (SANS 3001 – GR 50: 2013; SANS 3001 – GR51) with the following changes:
 1. When no cement is used as part of the stabilising agent the samples are not to be enclosed in a plastic bag. (Plastic covering is required when cement is included in the mix to assist in the hydration of the cement).
 2. Samples are cured for 24 hours in an oven at 22-25°C before being subjected to a “rapid curing” process in an oven for 48 hours at 40 to 45°C (temperatures in the oven should NOT exceed 50°C).
- After 48 hours the samples must be allowed to “cool off” for twenty-four (24) hours. This is preferably to be done in the oven at 22-25°C for 24 hours (SANS 3001 – GR 50: 2013; SANS 3001 – GR51) .
- Directly after the “cooling off” period, three (3) samples each must be crushed to determine the ITS and UCS values. The values obtained are called the DRY ITS and the DRY UCS values (as per the test procedure specified for the testing of cementitious stabilising agents (SANS 3001-GR53:2010, 2010 and SANS 3001-GR54:2014)).
- Six (6) samples must be placed in a bath of water with a temperature of 22°C to 25°C for four (4) hours (as per the test procedure specified for the testing of cementitious stabilising agents (SANS 3001-GR53:2010, 2010 and SANS 3001-GR54:2014)) and thereafter removed from the bath and allowed to drain off excess water before determining the wet ITS and wet UCS values. The values obtained are called the WET ITS and the WET UCS values.
- If approved by the Engineer, the “wet” tests (UCS and ITS) may suffice during the quality control during construction. For the lower-order roads (Category D and E), DCP tests done (as specified in Tables A5.6.5.3/1 and A5.6.10/1 for the specific material class) at randomly selected spots, may be approved for quality control as approved by the Engineer.
- During the design stage 3 samples, each (twelve (12) in total) must be preserved outside the moulds for 28 days at temperatures of 22-25° C. After 28 days the UCS (wet and dry), as well as the ITS (wet and dry), should be tested as per the procedure described above. The results of the

C3-47

28-day tests should not show a decrease in the tested values of the respective UCS and ITS tests (dry and wet) as compared to results obtained after the rapid curing process (an increase in tested UCS and ITS values is normally expected with the use of a material-compatible NME stabilising agent).

- It is important to note that sample preparation must be done in strict compliance with the prescribed procedures and NO deviation shall be allowed, including:
- The moulds in which the samples are prepared are not to be treated with grease or another lubricant to facilitate the easy removal of the sample as this could influence the loss of moisture or seal the sample and hence, the measurements of UCS and ITS;
- No additional soaking of samples in any “covering” liquid or any other material will be allowed as this will make any comparison and application of test requirements invalid and not comparable to what is practically achievable during construction,
- Compaction of the samples for testing will be done in strict compliance with the specified procedure in SANS 3001 – GR 50: 2013

A5.6.10 TREATMENT OF GRAVEL ROADS TO PROTECT THE GRAVEL LAYER AND REDUCE DUST OR STABILISING OF A SUPPORTING FOUNDATION FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF A MC-NME STABILISING LAYER

All preparations of the NME materials and construction processes and testing as per normal construction and rehabilitation of roads as discussed under items Table A5.6.9.2 also apply to the treatment of the top layer of the gravel roads. In the case of gravel roads, Table A5.6.5.3/1 is supplemented by Table 111 (A5.6.10/1).

In cases where the in-situ material consists of very fine materials (percentage passing the 0.075 mm sieve in excess of 50 per cent) the in-situ material may be treated with a MC-NME consisting of a Nano-Polymer Nano-Silane (NME-NPNS) which is transparent in nature or slightly milky coloured, retaining the natural colour of the material treated. After compaction an application of a Polymer Nano-Silane (NME-PNS) should be applied to bind the surfacing together

A NME consisting of a NPNS treatment can be done as a surface enrichment and strengthening action or as a whole base/surfacing structural layer gravel preservation action. Treatment of the surfacing only can result in a relatively deep penetration (> 60 mm), to bind the surfacing together (especially where the in-situ material consists of a very fine material containing a high percentage of problematic material, presenting problems in terms of workability and compatibility. Such treatment will enable the formation of a supporting layer on which a MC-NME layer can be constructed in a conventional way. The supporting layer should be bladed to the required geometric requirements before the NME-NPNS is applied and then compacted using a smooth drum roller.

The dilution of the NME-NPNS should be pre-determined through testing in a laboratory using a standard Marshall mould to ensure that a depth of penetration of 60 mm is achieved, binding the material together. Typically, dilution rates of 1 to 5; 1 to 10, 1 to 15 and 1 to 20 (1 being the NME-NPNS diluted in various ratios in water) applied at a rate of about 2 litres/m² (applicable application rates should preferably be established on a trial section). After application the layer should be compacted using a smooth drum roller.

For deeper penetrations and and/or treatment of a typical 150mm base/surfacing layer as part of a supporting layer, the in-situ material can be ripped, sprayed, grader mixed and bladed before compaction. The testing requirements shown in light yellow in Table A5.6.10 is not applicable to material testing in the field for the treatment of a gravel wearing coarse or as a supporting layer on which to construct a base layer. Quality control of the treatment efficiency is to be done using the DCP penetration rate (mm/blow) of the treated layer. The curing of this layer should conform to the DCP-DN values as given in Table A5.6.10.

In the case of a 150mm deep treatment, enrichment surface sprays with NME-PNS may be needed as a maintenance action.

The surface of the wearing course shall receive additional treatment as described under Item A5.6.7.15.

Additional protection of the surface can be provided by the application of an applicable seal, including an NME-PNS sand seal, slurry or proven “clear seal” to maintain a natural look as may be required by

any specific road agency. A clear seal consists of a combination of a water-repellent-modified graded polymer. The clear seal is applied as per product specifications using a diluted (as little as 5 per cent dilution dependent on the type and quality of the polymer) compatible water-repellent modified graded polymer (applied at 1.6 l/m² to 2 l/m²) which is transparent when applied, similar to a traditional prime or enrichment layer, but with extended expected service life, especially on fine graded materials.

Table A5.6.10: Recommended material specifications for the treatment of wearing courses of gravel roads and upgrading of gravel roads (Jordaan and Steyn, 2020) stabilised with NME

Test or Indicator	Material ¹	Material classification
		NME4- WC
Minimum material requirements before stabilisation and/or treatment (Natural materials)		
Material spec. (minimum) Unstabilised material: Soaked CBR (%) (Mod AASHTO)	NG/GS/SSSG (CS)	-
Sieve analysis % passing the 0.075 mm sieve (P _{0.075})		-
XRD scans: - Total sample - 0.075 mm fraction	ALL ALL	√ √
The greater of: Identified % Silt and Clay, or % Material passing 2 µm (P _{0.002}) (e.g. Clay & Mica & Talc), with Talc <10%) (XRD-scans of the material passing the 0.075 mm sieve is recommended for use to determine the % clay, mica and talc in the material).	NME stabilisation with emulsion particle size > 2 µm	
	ALL	< 15 %
	NME stabilisation with emulsion containing micro-scale as well as nano-scale particles (adjusted according to material grading)	
	ALL	< 35%
	NME stabilisation with emulsion containing nano-scale and pico-scale particles (grading adjustments) together with technologies addressing workability of materials on site (Nano-Polymer Nano-Silane (NPNS))	
	ALL	> 35%
Material specifications after stabilisation and/or treatment		
In-situ density to be required after stabilisation and compaction (mod AASHTO) (%) (minimum)	Base-layer	>97%
	Support	>95%
DCP(DN mm/blow)(Quality control in field testing - base only) (stabilised and compacted = wet; 7 days cured = dry)	Base-layer	< 3.5 (wet) < 2.3 (dry)
	Support	< 5.5 (wet) < 3.5 (dry)
Mod AASHTO density (%) (for laboratory testing)		> 100%
*UCS _{wet} (kPa) (150 mm Φ Sample)	Design³	> 750
	Construction⁴	> 450
Retained Compressive Strength (RCS) = (UCS _{wet} /UCS _{dry}) (%)		> 65
RCS in relation to minimum UCS _{wet} (criteria) = RCS _{effective} = (RCS x (UCS _{wet} /UCS _{wet} (criteria))) (%)		> 80
*ITS _{wet} (kPa) (150 mm Φ Sample)	Design³	> 70
	Construction⁴	> 50
Retained Tensile strength (RTS) =: ITS _{wet} /ITS _{dry} (%)		> 65
RTS in relation to minimum ITS _{wet} (criteria) = RTS _{effective} = ((RTS x (ITS _{wet} /ITS _{wet} (criteria))) (%)		> 80

¹CS – Crushed Stone; NG – Natural Gravel; GS – Gravel Soil, and SSSC – Sand, Silty sand, Silt, Clay.

*Definitions:

UCS_{dry}; ITS_{dry} = testing after rapid curing; UCS_{wet}; ITS_{wet} = testing after rapid curing and 4 hours in water (as per test procedure specified for the testing of cementitious stabilising agents (SANS 3001-GR32:2010, 2010));

Design³ = Minimum criteria to be met in the laboratory during the design phase

Construction⁴ = Minimum criteria to be met during construction as part of quality control

B5.6 RE-CONSTRUCTION OF PAVEMENT USING LAYERS COLD IN-SITU STABILISATION WITH A NEW (3RD-MILLENNIUM) MODIFIED EMULSION (NME) STABILISING AGENT

PART B: LABOUR ENHANCEMENT

CONTENTS

B5.6.1 SCOPE

B5.6.2 DEFINITIONS

B5.6.3 GENERAL

B5.6.4 DESIGN BY CONTRACTOR / PERFORMANCE BASED SYSTEMS

B5.6.5 MATERIALS

B5.6.6 CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT

B5.6.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

B5.6.8 WORKMANSHIP

B5.6.1 SCOPE

This Section covers the work requirements for the Reconstruction of existing road pavement layers. This section covers work required for the construction of new roads (including upgrading of existing unpaved roads) or the rehabilitation of the upper pavement layers (base and sub-base) using the cold in-situ recycling process with (a) labour-intensive construction methods with a mixture of conventional equipment (b) conventional equipment, i.e., water-cart, grader(s) and compaction equipment (b) recycler and (c) central mixing plant. A relative large proportion of activities as defined in Part A under the various sections are therefore suitable for labour enhanced methods of construction.

B5.6.2 DEFINITIONS

Definitions as provided in Clause A5.6.2 apply.

B5.6.3 GENERAL

Any activity specified in Part A, where hand work is given as an alternative, shall be executed in such a way as to maximise labour.

B5.6.4 DESIGN BY CONTRACTOR/PERFORMANCE BASED SYSTEMS

The provisions of Part A shall apply.

B5.6.5 MATERIALS

The provisions of Part A shall apply.

B5.6.6 CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT

Where reference is made in Part A to appropriate equipment, the use of light equipment shall be evaluated during trial sections.

B5.6.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

For the reconstruction of pavement layers, oversized material can be removed by labour-intensive hand picking before the layer is stabilised are suitable components for labour enhancement.

B5.6.8 WORKMANSHIP

The provisions of Part A shall apply.

C5.6 RE-CONSTRUCTION OF PAVEMENT USING LAYERS COLD IN-SITU STABILISATION WITH A NEW (3RD-MILLENNIUM) MODIFIED EMULSION (NME) STABILISING AGENT

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

(i) Preamble

The tendered rate for each pay item shall include full compensation for providing, maintaining and decommissioning upon completion, of all the equipment, labour, tools, incidentals and supervision to carry out the activity or construct the works in the pay item, unless otherwise stated.

Any prime cost or provisional sums shall be paid in accordance with the provisions of the conditions of contract. The charge or mark-up tendered or allowed for is a percentage of the amount actually paid under the prime cost or provisional sum. This percentage shall cover all the Contractor's handling, supervision, profit and liability costs to provide the services in the prime cost or provisional sum pay item.

(ii) Items not measured in this Section

The following required activities will not be measured or paid for separately and the Contractor shall include the cost thereof in other items as deemed appropriate:

- Drainage and protection of the pavement layers from all damage that may occur for any reason until the Employer has taken over the works.
- Protection of all existing or new kerbs, channels, sidewalks, lined drains, catch pits, kerb inlets, gratings, culverts, bridges, structures, buildings, road signs, guard rails, street lights, fencing, service pipes or cables and any other items adjacent to, over or under the road that could be damaged by the Contractor's vehicles, construction equipment, or by public traffic being accommodated on or alongside the pavement layers, during the construction of the pavement layers, until the Employer has taken over the works.
- Repair of all damage to the existing pavement layers after access to the construction site has been given to the Contractor and that may occur before, during or after the construction of the reconstructed or rehabilitated pavement layers up until the Employer has taken over the works.
- Provision of additional material in excess of the compacted volume of the layers calculated using the layer dimensions given in the Contract Documentation for whatever reason including additional material required for the correct placing, mixing, levelling and compaction of the layers.
- The removal of oversize material up to 5% of the compacted layer volume.
- Construction of tie in joints to new or existing road layers or surfacing.
- The preparation and the inspection for cracks in an underlying layer after removal of a pavement layer.
- Excavation of benches in pavement layers when widening an existing pavement
- The provision and maintenance of covers for stockpiled reclaimed materials
- The provision of method statements and of the programme of reconstruction work along with regular updates of the programme.
- The brooming during the slushing process whether by hand or by mechanical means

(iii) Items to be measured and paid for using payment items specified elsewhere in the specifications

For activities in Table C5.6-1 payment items specified in other Chapters or Sections of the specification, where they relate to work under this Section, will be listed in the Pricing Schedule.

Table C5.6-1: Payment items from other Chapters or Sections

Activity	Clause reference	Section or Chapter
Traffic accommodation	A5.6.3.1	Section C1.5 of Chapter 1
Stabilising agents	A5.6.5	Section A5.6
Construction equipment Processing of pavement	A5.6.6.1 & A5.6.6.2	Section A5.6.6

Activity	Clause reference	Section or Chapter
Curing a stabilised layer	A5.6.9.2	Section A5.6.9
Tack or prime a layer	A5.5.3.7	C9.1.3 of Chapter 9
Surfacing a reconstructed layer	A5.6.3.5	Section A5.6

(iv) Payment items specifically for this Section of the Specifications

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.1	Compiling and implementing M&U plans for the reconstruction of an existing road pavement number (No)	

The unit of measurement shall be the number of M&U plans for the reconstruction work. Several plans shall be required as specified in Clauses A5.6.3.8

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for gathering all information, compiling the plans and for ensuring the implementation of the plans during the RR construction work.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.2	Reconstruction preparatory work	
C5.6.2.1	Undivided carriageway	

The unit of measurement shall be the kilometre of uniform section of road to be reconstructed and rehabilitated, measured along the centre-line of the existing road. Each uniform section shall be measured separately. In the case of an undivided road carriageway this shall be measured once along the centreline. In the case of a divided road carriageway this shall be measured once along each carriageway separately.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for undertaking all the work required in preparation for reconstruction. This work includes all survey and survey-related work such as setting out, checking the design levels and the approval of the final design levels.

This work also includes the removal of standing water, grass and weeds from the road surface including the shoulders.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.3	Establishment Of Plant	
C5.6.3.1	Establishment of cold in-situ recycling equipment/plant on site	Lump Sum
C5.6.3.2	Establishment of conventional equipment/plant on site	Lump Sum

The tendered lump sum shall include full compensation for the provision of any number of recycling machine(s)/plant on the section of the site and the subsequent removal thereof, including additional plant required for carrying out cold in-situ processing, stabilisation and compaction operations.

The lump sum will become payable after the cold in-situ processing and stabilisation work has been completed and the equipment has been removed from the site. Payment will only be made for either C5.6.3.1 or for C5.6.3.2 dependent on the Contractor's chosen method of construction

Payment will not distinguish between the number of recycling machines or conventional units of equipment brought onto and/or removed from the site. No payment will be made for the replacement of the defective plant.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.4	Cold in-situ recycled granular layer treated	
C5.6.4.1	Using a recycler	
(a)	Base-layer (depth to be specified) compacted to the specified density (Table A5.6.5.3/1 and/or Table A5.6.10) using an NME or equivalent	cubic metre (m ³)
(b)	Sub Base-layer (depth to be specified) compacted to the specified density (Table A5.6.5.3/1 and/or Table A5.6.10) using an NME or equivalent	cubic metre (m ³)
C5.6.4.2	Using a conventional plant	
(a)	Base-layer (depth to be specified) compacted to the specified density (Table A5.6.5.3/1 and/or Table A5.6.10) using an NME or equivalent	cubic metre (m ³)
(b)	Sub Base-layer (depth to be specified) compacted to the specified density (Table A5.6.5.3/1 and/or Table A5.6.10) using an NME or equivalent	cubic metre (m ³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of pavement processed and stabilised to provide the recycled base and or sub-base layer as specified.

The rate tendered shall include full compensation for the provision of all plant, labour, materials and all other incidentals necessary to produce the finished layer as specified but excluding the provision of the NME stabilising layer that shall be measured and paid for under item C10.03. The NME will consist of a material-compatible product as described in the preamble, which will be able to meet the required specifications (the Contractor will take responsibility for using a stabilising agent not meeting the minimum requirements in terms of stability resulting in inferior test results).

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the milling of existing pavement layers, blending of the materials in the nominal mix ratios specified, supply, diluting of the NME in potable water and mixing of the diluted NME, spreading and final blading of the recycled mix, compacting the material to the specified density and protecting and maintaining the work in accordance with the specifications.

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the cleaning of the surface and the referencing of lane and control survey markings as specified.

Where ordered by the Engineer for the processing and stabilisation of pavement layers to depths other than specified, the payment will be made on a pro-rata basis between the tendered rates for the nominal depths scheduled.

All failures due to the use of contaminated equipment (not thoroughly cleaned) will be for the cost of the Contractor.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.5	New (3rd-Millennium) Modified Emulsion (NME) Or Equivalent	cubic metre (m ³)

The unit of measurement shall be per cubic metre of the material stabilised (different stabilising agents may require different percentage additives to meet criteria) with the stabilising agent to be supplied to meet all the required criteria as specified and as instructed by the Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for providing, diluting, mixing and applying the stabilising agent, irrespective of the rate of application. The material-compatible NME will be provided to the site by the supplier to meet the specifications. The Contractor will take full responsibility and liability for using a stabilising agent not meeting the END-PRODUCT specification. During the design phase, the Design Engineer should ensure that products are available that will meet the specifications with the given naturally available materials.

C5.6.6 Chemical additive

No chemical additives will normally be required with a material-compatible water-repellent NME stabilising agent. However, should the material characteristics dictate the use of any chemical additives the costs should be included in the cost of the NME stabilising agent (or alternative) must be included as part of Item C5.6.5

Item	Description
5.6.7	Pre-treating the base layer with an NME stabilising agent

No pre-treatment of lime, etc. will be required with an NME stabilising agent. Some minerals may require pre-treatment with an appropriate / proven product. Payment is to be included as part of Item 10.03.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.8	Blading of surplus material to windrow	cubic metre (m ³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of surplus material bladed to the windrow as specified by the Engineer. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour equipment and any other incidentals required for blading to a windrow of surplus material with a motor grader.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.9	Removal from site of surplus material	cubic metre (m ³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of surplus material removed. The volume shall be determined as prescribed by the Engineer and shall be the loose volume in stockpiles or the equivalent thereof volume in hauling vehicles. Accurate load and haul sheets shall be kept on site and submitted to the Engineer. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for loading and transporting the surplus material to a designated spoil or stockpile site as approved by the client

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.10	Construction of a temporary wearing course	square metre (m ²)

The unit of measurement shall be the square metres of stabilised base slushed in accordance with the requirements of section A5.6.7.15 of the Project Specification and the tendered rate shall include full compensation thereof.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.11	Trial sections where ordered (extra over items C5.6.4 and C5.6.5)	
	(a) Processing and stabilisation of layers	cubic metre (m ³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metres of processed and stabilised pavement layers as per instruction.

- (b) Applying of prime, tack coat or surfacing layer square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement of the prime coat shall be the square metres, independent of the applied surfacing as per instruction from the engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the construction of the trial section of recycled pavement layers complete as specified.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.12	Extra over Item C5.6.4 for adding extra material to the layer	
(a)	Gravel Base of a required quality as per specification	cubic metre (m ³)
(b)	Gravel sub-base of a required quality as per specification	cubic metre (m ³)
(c)	RA (when specified as per specific client)	cubic metre (m ³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material added on the instruction of the Engineer, which quantity shall be taken as 70 per cent of the loose volume measured in trucks unless instructed by the Engineer that the quantity be determined by way of cross-sections. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring and adding the specified material to the layer, for spreading the material, for all haul and for other incidentals to add the material to the layer.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.13	Milling out existing bituminous material with an average milling depth	
(a)	Not exceeding 30 mm	cubic metre (m ³)
(b)	Exceeding 30 mm but not exceeding 60 mm	cubic metre (m ³)
(c)	Exceeding 60 mm	cubic metre (m ³)

The unit of measurement shall be a cubic metre of asphalt milled out and removed to approved stockpiles. The tendered rate shall include the compensation for providing milling equipment and milling out the material to the specified depth and in accordance with the requirements for evenness and for all measurements, labour, supervision and incidentals for executing the work and obtaining milled material which will comply with specified materials

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for trading and transporting the material to approved stockpiles for a free-haul distance 1.0 km irrespective of the method of loading and for unloading of the material and placing it in stockpile, also for screening out the oversize material if necessary. Separate payment will be made for preparing stockpile site.

Payment for milling the material will distinguish between the various average depths of excavation, irrespective of the required number of passes by the plant for milling out material.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.14	Providing the milling machine on the site (size indicated)	number (No)

The unit of measurement shall be the number of milling machines provided on the site, or the number of times & milling machine is brought onto the site where it had to be removed temporarily with the approval of the engineer.

The unit of measurement shall be the number of times the machine is moved for more than 1,0 km, as may be approved or instructed by the engineer, in writing.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all costs involved in such moving irrespective of as to whether the machine is moved to a new section of the site or returned to a previous position for further work), as well as for all delays and production losses. Payment will not be made for moving for the purpose of maintenance and repairs or for replacement with another machine.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.15	Break down of in-situ material	cubic metre (m ³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic meter of material measured after compaction. The quantity measured shall be computed by the method of average end areas from levelled cross-sections prepared from the existing road surface before any ripping or breaking down of the existing surface and base course has taken place. All measurements shall be neat and material placed in excess of the authorized cross-section will not be paid for. The tendered price shall include the ripping, breaking down, preparing, processing, shaping and watering of the materials to the specified densities.

Item	Description	Unit
C5.6.16	Application of a prime or “clear seal”	square metre (m ²)

Rates should include the provision of the materials and suitable distribution equipment able to apply the prime or specified “clear seal” to meet the required specifications and at the required rate.

D5.6 RE-CONSTRUCTION OF PAVEMENT USING LAYERS COLD IN-SITU STABILISATION WITH A NEW (3RD-MILLENNIUM) MODIFIED EMULSION (NME) STABILISING AGENT

PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES

CONTENTS

D5.6.1 SCOPE

D5.6.2 GENERAL

D5.6.3 PERFORMANCE GUARANTEE REQUIREMENTS

D5.6.4 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENTS

D5.6.5 VISUALLY ASSESSED PROPERTIES

D5.6.6 INSTRUMENTALLY ASSESSED PROPERTIES

D5.6.7 EVALUATION FOR ACCEPTANCE

D5.6.8 ADDITIONAL PROCEDURES TO BE ADOPTED IN THE EVENT OF FAILURE

D5.6.9 NOTIFICATION OF REMEDIAL WORK

D5.6.10 REMEDIAL WORKS

No specific items in this Section.

COTO CHAPTER 6: CONCRETE LAYERS

SECTION 6.1: PAVES LAID CONCRETE LAYERS

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A6.1.5 MATERIALS

A6.1.5.1 Cementitious materials

In the 2nd paragraph insert:

“the quantity of supplementary cementitious materials be limited to” *after* “... may be used subject to”.

A6.1.6 CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT

A6.1.6.2 Concrete batching plant

In the 1st sentence of the 2nd paragraph delete the following:

“Where concrete is supplied by a commercial source outside the direct control of the Engineer”.

A6.1.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

A6.1.7.4 Joint forming

Add the following before the 1st paragraph a:

“The requirements for the thickening of slabs at joints, will be specified in the Contract Documentation.”

A6.1.8 WORKMANSHIP

c) Construction tolerances

(vii) Surface regularity

Add the following new paragraph:

“Any adjustment in the payment for the concrete layer will be made by multiplying the full payment value for each 100 m section, (for all the relevant payment items for this work) by the payment adjustment factor derived from Table A9.1.8-3. The payment adjustment shall apply to the total concrete layer width placed over the 100 m sections in question.”

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

(iii) Items that will not be measured separately

Concrete mix design and materials for design
Additional trial sections
Removal of trial section
Protection of concrete

COTO CHAPTER 7: MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR OF CONCRETE LAYERS

SECTION 7.1: REPLACEMENT OF EXISTING JOINT SEALANT

PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES

D7.1.8 WORKMANSHIP

D7.1.8.8 Alternative materials and design

Add the following to the end of the 1st paragraph as part of the 1st sentence:

”and in addition to the postulated tender”.

D7.1.8.9 Work on behalf of Employer

In the 2nd sentence of the 1st paragraph delete: “(cost plus 15%)”.

COTO CHAPTER 8:PRETREATMENT AND REPAIR OF EXISTING LAYERS

SECTION 8.1: PRIME COAT

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A8.1.5 MATERIALS

A8.1.5.1 Bituminous material

In Table A8.1.5-1 Delete “the excavated area” in the table caption and heading.

A8.1.8 WORKMANSHIP

A8.1.8.2 Testing

Replace the last sentence of the 1st paragraph with the following: “Unless agreed in advance and in writing, the Contractor shall only spray when the Engineer’s representative is present.”

COTO CHAPTER 9: ASPHALT LAYERS

SECTION 9.1: ASPHALT LAYERS

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A9.1.5 MATERIALS

A9.1.5.4 Aggregates

a) Aggregate properties

In the 1st paragraph, delete the 2nd sentence: “Coarse and fine aggregate shall be clean and free from decomposed materials, vegetable matter or any other deleterious substances, and shall meet the requirements listed in Table A9.1.5-1 below unless otherwise specifically stated in the Contract Documentation.”, and replace with the following:

“Coarse and fine aggregate shall be clean from excess dust and free from decomposed materials, vegetable matter and any other deleterious substances such as clay lumps and organic matter and shall meet the requirements listed in Table A9.1.5-1 below unless otherwise specifically stated in the Contract Documentation.”.

A9.1.8 WORKMANSHIP

A9.1.8.4 Surface regularity

a) Measured using inertial laser profilometers

In the 6th paragraph add the following prior to “The applicable Full Payment Bracket ...”:

“For the Asphalt Base the values in Payment Bracket 6 in Table A9.1.8-3 shall be applied as the payment adjustment factors for the Asphalt Base on the contract or section, and for the Asphalt Surfacing”.

In the 6th paragraph add the following after “...assessment of the base as per Clause A5.3.8.5c) of Chapter 5 for granular bases”:

“, and this clause A9.1.8.4a) for Asphalt bases.”

In the 7th paragraph, delete: “under 1”.

Add the following after the 8th paragraph:

“Where the asphalt surfacing is placed on a surface, other than a granular or asphalt base, constructed by the Contractor through mill and replace or patching, the surface regularity of the replaced or patched surface shall be measured before the surfacing is placed. Should the IRI values per 100m section so determined be better than the IRI values of the original surfacing for the particular 100m section, the measured values shall be used for the IRI_{b Ave} in the above calculation. Should the IRI values per 100m section so determined be worse than the IRI values of the original surfacing for the particular 100m section, the IRI values of the original surfacing shall be used for the IRI_{b Ave} in the above calculation.”

In the 9th paragraph, delete : “surfacing”.

For Table A9.1.8-3, delete “surfacing” in the heading and add the following additional Payment Bracket to Table A9.1.8-3

“Target IRI_{100m Ave} (m/km)	Payment Bracket 9
< 0.80	1.050
0.81 to 0.90	1.050
0.91 to 1.00	1.050

“Target IRI _{100m Ave} (m/km)”	Payment Bracket 9
1.01 to 1.10	1.050
1.11 to 1.20	1.050
1.21 to 1.30	1.050
1.31 to 1.40	1.050
1.41 to 1.50	1.050
1.51 to 1.60	1.050
1.61 to 1.70	1.025
1.71 to 1.80	1.010
1.81 to 1.90	1.000
1.91 to 2.00	0,990
2.01 to 2.10	0,975
2.11 to 2.20	0,955
2.21 to 2.30	0,930
2.31 to 2.40	0,900
2.41 to 2.50	0.865
>2.51	Reject”

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	Description	Unit
------	-------------	------

C9.1.9 Application of rolled-in chippings (State nominal size)

Delete the 1st paragraph of the item description: “The unit of measurement shall be the ton of specified size of rolled-in chippings applied at the approved application rate, measured loose in hauling vehicles. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the procuring, furnishing, pre-coating, spreading and rolling in of the chippings and for any additional costs resulting from the construction of the asphalt surfacing with rolled-in chippings.”, and replace with the following:

“The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of specified size of rolled-in chippings applied at the approved application rate. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the procuring, furnishing, pre-coating, spreading and rolling in of the chippings and for any additional costs resulting from the construction of the asphalt surfacing with rolled-in chippings.”.

COTO CHAPTER 10: SURFACE TREATMENTS

SECTION 10.1: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SURFACE TREATMENTS

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A10.1.3 GENERAL

A10.1.3.2 Weather limitations

Delete the 1st sentence of the 2nd paragraph, and replace with the following:
“No seal work will be allowed in the Seal Embargo Period defined in the Contract Documentation, unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documentation.”.

A10.1.3.14 Nominal rates of application for tender purposes

In the 1st sentence of the 2nd paragraph, after the wording: “...used in the various types of seals”, add the following: “,as specified in the Contract Documentation”.

e) Nominal binder application and aggregate spread rates for Cape seals (Slurry component)

In Table A10.1.3-7 in the last row of the 1st column, delete “1” and replace with “10”.

g) Cover sprays

Replace the 1st paragraph with the following: “The nominal application rate of a diluted emulsion cover spray (50/50) as specified, shall for tender purposes be 0,8 l/m² residual cold bitumen.”.

A10.1.5 MATERIALS

A10.1.5.7 Precoating fluid

Add the following new paragraph: “The precoating fluid shall be a low viscosity bitumen-based product containing petroleum cutters and a chemical adhesion agent. It shall comply with the specifications as provided in the SABITA Manual 30: Requirements for stone precoating fluids.”.

A10.1.6 CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT

A10.1.6.1 Binder distributor

In the last paragraph replace the 1st sentence with the following: “The transverse distribution of spray flares shall be field verified according to SANS 3001-BT25 and Clause A20.1.5.9 of Chapter 20 and by visual observations to ensure a uniform transverse distribution of binder.”.

A10.1.6.2 Chip spreaders

In the last paragraph delete the 2nd bullet and replace with the following:
“- of spreading Grade C aggregate, Graded aggregate and Sand- or Grit seals.”.

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	Description	Unit
C10.1.2	Single seals including a cover spray, if specified (indicate grade of aggregate and type of binder) spreading the aggregate by (state: walk behind spreader or by hand):	

Replace the 1st two item description paragraphs with the following:

“The unit of measurement for item C10.1.1 and C10.1.2 shall be square metre of completed and accepted seal in accordance with the approved method statement and additional instructions.

The nominal rates for single seals indicated in A10.1.3.14(a) and for cover sprays indicated in A10.1.3.14(g), shall apply.”.

C10.1.3 Multiple stone seals including a cover spray, if specified using:

Replace the 1st sentence of the 2nd paragraph of the item description, with the following:
“The nominal rates for multiple stone seals indicated in A10.1.3.14(b) and for cover sprays indicated in A10.1.3.14(g), shall apply.

C10.1.4 Embargo period effects

In the 1st paragraph of the item description, delete reference to: “C10.1.6.1”, and replace with: “C10.1.4.1”.

In the 2nd paragraph of the item description, delete reference to: “C10.1.6.2”, and replace with: “C10.1.4.2”.

C10.1.6 Sand or Grit seals using (state: walk behind spreader or by hand):

Replace the 1st two item description paragraphs with the following:
“The unit of measurement for item C10.1.5 and C10.1.6 shall be square metre of completed and accepted seal in accordance with the approved method statement and additional instructions.

The nominal rates for sand or Grit seals indicated in A10.1.3.14(c) shall apply.”.

C10.1.11 Application of cover spray

In the 2nd paragraph of the item description, delete reference to: “A10.1.3.15”, and replace with: “A10.1.3.14”.

C10.1.12 Application of cover spray by hand

In the 2nd paragraph of the item description, delete reference to: “A10.1.3.15”, and replace with: “A10.1.3.14”.

PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES

D10.1.5 VISUALLY ASSESSED PROPERTIES

D10.1.5.4 Acceptance criteria

In note 3 below Table D10.1.5-3, delete “May 2016” and replace with “Latest version”.

COTO CHAPTER 11: ANCILLARY ROAD WORKS

SECTION 11.4: ROAD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A11.4.1 SCOPE

Delete the last paragraph, and replace with the following:

“Moveable vehicle restraint systems required for traffic accommodation during construction and truck mounted attenuators are also specified in Clauses A1.5.6.1, A1.5.6.3 and A1.5.7.11 of Chapter 1.”.

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item

Unit

C11.4.2 Performance based vehicle restraint systems

Where the Concrete barrier system is utilised as temporary restraint systems for Traffic Accommodation and scheduled under C1.5 in the Pricing Schedule, the unit of measure shall be metre.month.

SECTION 11.6: ROAD SIGNS

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A11.6.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

A11.6.7.5 Erecting road signs

b) Excavation and backfilling

In the 1st sentence of the 2nd paragraph, before “Section A13.4 of Chapter 13”, add the following:

“Section A13.2, Section A13.3 and”.

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item

Unit

C11.6.1 Road signboards with painted or coloured semi-matt background. Symbols, lettering and borders in semi- matt black or in Class I retro-reflective material, where the sign board is constructed from:

Add the following new pay item:

“C11.6.1.13 Moveable barricade/road sign combination (signboard material, background, symbol retro-reflective class and size indicated) number (No)

The unit of measurement for item C11.6.1.13 shall be the number of moveable barricades, complete with road signs provided.

The tendered rate for item C11.6.1.13 shall include full compensation for providing and erecting each moveable barricade and signs and shall also include full compensation for moving the barricade as and when required.”

SECTION 11.7: ROAD MARKINGS AND ROAD STUDS

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A11.7.5 MATERIALS

A11.7.5.2 Materials

a) Marking materials

(iii) Thermoplastic road marking material

In the 4th paragraph, delete “mcd/m².lux” and replace with “mcd/m²/lux”.

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item

Unit

C11.7.3 Thermoplastic road marking

Amend the retro-reflective luminance unit to be “mcd/m²/lux”.

COTO CHAPTER 13:STRUCTURES

SECTION 13.1: FOUNDATIONS

PART B: LABOUR ENHANCEMENT

B13.1.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

B13.1.7.4 Utilisation of excavated material

Delete reference to: “100 m” and replace with “50 m”.

SECTION 13.3: STEEL REINFORCEMENT

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A13.3.8 WORKMANSHIP

A13.3.8.4 Tolerances

b) Concrete cover

Delete reference to “Clause A13.4.8.1a)(iv)” and replace with: “Clause A13.4.8.1a)(v)”.

SECTION 13.4: CONCRETE

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A13.4.2 DEFINITIONS

Fresh phase of concrete

Add the following at the end of the definition of “Fresh phase of concrete”:

“This is also known as the plastic phase.”

Add the following definition between “Fresh phase of concrete” and “Hardened phase of concrete”:

“Hydration or curing phase – this is concrete that is no longer a semi-liquid but has not yet reached a solid state.”

A13.4.7 EXECUTION OF THE WORKS

A13.4.7.12 Placing and Compaction

b) Placing

Delete the 3rd sentence of the 1st paragraph and replace with the following:

“The Contractor shall not be permitted to pour unless the specific method statement for that pour has been accepted by the Engineer.”

COTO CHAPTER 20: QUALITY ASSURANCE

SECTION 20.1: TESTING MATERIALS AND JUDGEMENT OF WORKMANSHIP

PART A: SPECIFICATION

A20.1.2 DEFINITIONS

Independent site laboratory

In the definition of “Independent site laboratory”, add the following:

“Independent Site laboratory in COTO is equivalent to the combined laboratory in the Employer documentation”

A20.1.7 ACCEPTANCE CONTROL BY STATISTICAL JUDGEMENT PRINCIPLES

A20.1.7.2 Taking samples

b) Stratified random sampling

Add the following new paragraph:

“Where the SARDS Laboratory module is used, the sampling locations must be as per the software. The Engineer may specify additional sampling locations.”

c) Minimum samples per lot

Add the following new paragraph:

“Where the SARDS Laboratory module is used, the number of samples per lot must be as per the software, as a minimum. The Engineer may specify additional numbers of samples. The Number of samples must be sufficient to meet the requirements of TMH5.”

PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

C20.1.5 Financial contribution for an independent site/commercial laboratory

Add the following new pay item:

“Item	Unit
--------------	-------------

C20.1.6 Payment of independent site laboratory

C20.1.6.1	Direct payment by contractor	prime cost (PC) sum
a)	Handling cost and profit in respect of item C20.1.6.1 ...	percentage (%)

The contractor shall pay the appointed site laboratory monthly for the amount as certified by the Engineer.

The charge or mark-up tendered or allowed for is a percentage of the amount actually paid under the prime cost item. The percentage shall cover all the Contractors’ sourcing, handling, profit, and payment of the service provider in providing the services. The Contractor shall forfeit his mark-up when the service provider is not paid in time.”

SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL ROADS AGENCY SOC LIMITED

CONTRACT SANRAL S.004-005-2020/1
FOR ISANDLWANA ROADS UPGRADE – PACKAGE 1 (UPGRADE OF PROVINCIAL ROAD P372)

SECTION B: SPECIFICATION DATA

Notes to tenderer:

- 1. In certain clauses, the Standard Specifications allow a choice to be specified in the Contract Documentation or Project Specifications between alternative materials or methods of construction and for additional requirements to be specified to suit a particular contract. Details of such alternatives or additional requirements applicable to this contract are contained in this Section B: Specification Data.**
- 2. The number of each clause and each payment item in this part of the project specifications follows the numbering format of the COTO standard specifications. Where, however, a clause has been amended under Section A2, the clause number is prefixed with a “P” in this Section.**

COTO CHAPTER 1: GENERAL

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
1			GENERAL	
	A1.1		GENERAL PREAMBLE	
		PA1.1.2	DEFINITIONS	
			Conditions of Contract	The Conditions of Contract for Construction for Building and Engineering Works designed by the Employer as published by the International Federation of Consulting Engineers First Edition 1999, shall apply.
			Site / Site of the Works	The limits of construction is provided in Part C4: Project Information, Section C4.1 Locality and Extent. Section C4.13 – Appendix A – Locality Maps illustrates the project area and limits
	C1.1		GENERAL PREAMBLE	
	A1.2		GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND PROVISIONS	
		A1.2.3	GENERAL	
			A1.2.3.3 Environmental management	The requirements of the Environmental Officer is indicated in Section C.
			A1.2.3.4 Extension of time for delays caused by rainfall	
			c) Method 3 (Critical path method without consequential delays)	Method 3 (Critical path method without consequential delays) is specified. The value of "N" is 18 In calculations of payment for approved extensions of time granted for delays caused by rainfall, payment will be made utilising the applicable payment items for which the unit of measurement is "month" but excluding payment items with negative rates and non-applicable payment items such as pay item C1.3.1.4.

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			A1.2.3.5 Handing-over of the Site of the Works	<p>The conditions for handing-over of the Site of the Works are as follows:</p> <p>a) Sequence All sections of the works as described in the scope of work shall be completed to the satisfaction of the Engineer before a completion certificate shall be issued Partial completion of sections shall not be accepted even though portions of the access roads will be opened to traffic.</p> <p>b) Temporary deviations It is anticipated that temporary deviations will be required. However, existing roads should be the primary option of use as detours. In restricted area or areas with no option of detour, specific roads within the road servitude may need be constructed as deviations (running parallel to the road being constructed)</p> <p>The Contractor shall plan his work in such a way that the existing road network may be used to divert traffic away from the works and deviations may be required on different sections of road where required.</p> <p>c) Half or partial width sections Halfwidth construction is permitted with STOP/GO control/traffic signals and maximum length of 4km with two closures allowed at a time for temporary deviations</p> <p>d) Unrestricted sections No more than 4 km of road may be under construction at any time and includes any tapers required for road signs. The length between successive closures shall be such that a 2 km free space is provided between the extremities of these closures.</p> <p>e) Routine Maintenance The Contractor shall take over the maintenance responsibility on the date of Access to site but may liaise with the routine maintenance contractor by</p>

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA									
				arranging a transition period immediately after the Access to site to allow sufficient time to muster his resources required for routine maintenance of the road. However, the transition period may not extend beyond the end of the Mobilisation Period defined in sub-clause 8.1 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract and C1.2.2 Contract Data.									
			A1.2.3.9 Monthly reports	Other information to be included in monthly progress reports are as follows: a) Information as required in terms of Conditions of Contract Clause 4.21 b) Aerial progress footage (images and video) c) The monthly reports shall include the completion cost estimate which shall be updated monthly as part of the payment certificate. d) The monthly reports shall include the contractors IT IS reports associated with the payment certificate. e) Reports shall coincide with the payment certificates with a reporting date of the 24th of each month. f) The programme and progress of the works shall be summarised into a four-week rolling window which will show the previous week and the forecasted three weeks. g) The progress report shall include the SMME Contractors CIDB certificates, performance reports and EPWP Reports h) The Lab results and Materials used SANS/ SABS approval certificates									
			A1.2.3.10 Notices, signs and advertisements	Details of the contract sign board is provided in Drawing ICP063-P372-TD15 and has been included under sub-section 4.2 Typical details of Book 4 Tender drawings.									
			A1.2.3.12 Ownership of assets and disposal of non-usable assets	Any road furniture and structures that become redundant due to the upgrading of gravel roads to surfaced standards shall become the property of the contractor who shall remain responsible for the disposal thereof.									
			A1.2.3.13 Prevention of damage to nearby properties and services	Structures that could be affected by excessive ground vibrations is listed in the following table: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Structure</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Location</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Buildings</td> <td>Business</td> <td>Along Project Extent</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Buildings</td> <td>Residential</td> <td>Along Project Extent</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Structure	Type	Location	Buildings	Business	Along Project Extent	Buildings	Residential	Along Project Extent
Structure	Type	Location											
Buildings	Business	Along Project Extent											
Buildings	Residential	Along Project Extent											

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA						
				<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Buildings</td> <td>Institutional</td> <td>Along Project Extent</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Buildings</td> <td>Educational</td> <td>Along Project Extent</td> </tr> </table> <p>At the time that this report was compiled a number of structures have been constructed in close vicinity of the roads. The road P372 go through built-up areas (Villages/Townships) as per the list below:</p> <p>P372 & R68 intersection at Ngwebeni Village as Ch 0 or Starting Point:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) K Section @ Ch2km, b) KwaNyoni @ Ch6.8km, c) Isandlwana @ Ch9.3km, d) Ncepheni @ Ch11.36 km, e) Ngedla @ Ch17.47km, Pollock @ Ch21.11km, f) Ngwetshana @ Ch25.24km, g) Luvisi @ Ch 28.89km and, h) Nqutu @ Ch31 km <p>It is the responsibility of the Contractor to identify with assistance fo the Resident Engineer, structures that may be affected by way of damage, cracking, collapse, etc as a result of any construction activities.</p>	Buildings	Institutional	Along Project Extent	Buildings	Educational	Along Project Extent
Buildings	Institutional	Along Project Extent								
Buildings	Educational	Along Project Extent								
			A1.2.3.18 Stakeholder liaison	Additional requirements related to structured engagement with project Stakeholders and affected Communities, as well as guidance on the selection and the enhanced utilisation and development of Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises is provided in Section D1000.						
			A1.2.3.20 Road safety audits	A Work zone traffic management audit as well as a Pre-opening stage road safety audit, shall be carried out.						

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			A1.2.3.22 Wayleaves/Agreements and Permits	The Contractor shall be responsible for applying for the following wayleaves, but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Application to Telkom for working in close proximity and the relocation of telecommunications services. • Application to ESKOM for work in close proximity and the relocation of electrical service • Application to uMzinyathi District Municipality or any other Water Board for working in close proximity of an existing water pipeline. • Fibre Owners namely: Neotel, Open Serve, Dark Fibre Africa, Link Africa etc (if any)
		A1.2.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	
			PA1.2.7.1 Programme of work	
			a) General	A scheme 2 programme shall apply.
			b) Scheme 2	The programme shall be drawn up or be compatible with MS Projects 2010 Additional schedules, other than required in terms of Conditions of Contract Clause 8.3, to be provided are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An agreed Calendar showing the planned working days and non-working days. • A work breakdown structure that identifies all major activities. • Production rates • Scheduled start and end date for each activity • Linkages and list of Predecessor and successor activities that clearly identify the sequence, floats and critical path. • Intended working hours, resource allocations (plant labour) and associate production rates.

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Monthly Cashflow projections to be in line with the expected completion estimate. • Key dates in respect of information required or due for delivery. • A risk assessment schedule with mitigating plans of issues that could prevent the due completion date being met
			A1.2.7.4 Work on, over, under or adjacent to utilities	<p>The contractor shall obtain the latest edition of the required specifications from the service provider when working near, over or under adjacent utilities. The following service providers have been identified:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Eskom • Nquthu Local Municipality • uMzinyathi District Municipality
	A1.3		CONTRACTOR'S SITE ESTABLISHMENT AND GENERAL OBLIGATIONS	
		A1.3.3	GENERAL	
			A1.3.3.1 Construction camps	<p>The Contractor shall make his own arrangements with regards to construction camps.</p> <p>Where possible, existing infrastructure should be used for the establishment for the facilities for the Engineer, failing which the contractor will be required to make his own arrangements for a site camp. Three possible site areas/ vicinity shall be proposed to the Engineer and each shall have sufficient space to accommodate the Engineer Offices, Boardroom, Laboratory, Parking and accommodation.</p>
	A1.4		FACILITIES FOR THE ENGINEER	
		A1.4.3	GENERAL	Where possible, existing infrastructure should be used for the establishment for the facilities for the Engineer, failing which the contractor will be required to submit a detailed survey of the proposed camp site together with his proposed

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
				<p>layout of the camp for the approval of the Engineer at which time the Engineer shall be able to amend the layout and add to it in order to incorporate his own requirements.</p> <p>Drawing ICP063/P372/P1/TD/16 illustrates the required Engineers facilities</p>
		A1.4.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	
			A1.4.7.1 Offices and laboratories	
			a) General	The site laboratory shall be supplied with three-phase electricity.
			b) Offices	<p>The Engineers offices shall be fitted with office furniture and equipment and specified in the BOQ.</p> <p>Where possible, existing buildings and infrastructure should be used for the Site Offices.</p> <p>Floodlights which are to be controlled by photocell for security purposes at the office and laboratory.</p>
			c) Laboratories	<p>The services of a site lab will be obtained through an open tender basis and the successful service provider will be required to provide a layout plan as to his requirements.</p> <p>A lab may have to be established as part of the site camp should no suitable buildings be readily available</p>
			f) Ablution unit	Separate ablution facilities shall be made available for the Laboratory and the Engineers offices.
			A1.4.7.2 Housing	
			a) Prefabricated houses	Each unit shall be fitted with a gas stove and oven combination and a 19 kg gas bottle refilled timeously.
			A1.4.7.3 Services	

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			b) Water, electricity and gas	An on-site generator shall supply electricity when power from a recognized power-supply authority is not available to the Engineer's offices, laboratories and housing. The contractor shall ensure that all services are maintained during the duration of the contractor and should allow for at least two 100 Kva generator on site.
			A1.4.7.5 Office staff	
	A1.5		ACCOMMODATION OF TRAFFIC	
		A1.5.3	GENERAL	
			A1.5.3.3 Lane width	A minimum width of 3m and vehicles traveling in opposing directions will have to make use of the concrete v drain and the 1 m gravel shoulder in order to pass each other.
			A1.5.3.14 Vertical clearance	No existing overhead clearance to overhead electrical and telecommunications infrastructure constraints were envisaged on site at the time of compiling this tender. Should there be during construction, the Contractor will be required to issue to the Engineer a method statement of mitigation measures for approval and implementation by contractor at own cost.
		A1.5.6	CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT	
			A1.5.6.1 Traffic control facilities	
			A1.5.6.2 Illuminated traffic signs and safety devices	
			d) Sign mounted flashing lights	Two amber flashing lights shall be vertically mounted on top of the traffic signs at each end of each traffic accommodation section as shown on the drawings. The lights shall be operated during the hours of darkness.
		A1.5.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			A1.5.7.3 Accommodation of traffic where the road is constructed in half or partial widths	<p>The length of the half or partial width construction sections where the traffic can only pass in one direction at a time shall not exceed 4 km.</p> <p>The number of one-ways sections under construction at any one time shall not exceed 3.</p> <p>Halfwidth construction is permitted with STOP/GO control/traffic signals and maximum length of 4km with three closures allowed at a time for temporary deviations. The one way for half-width traffic shall be controlled by a STOP / GO system manned by an adequate number of traffic controllers, flagmen and/or traffic signals, signs, barricades, lights and the necessary supervisory staff to ensure a reasonably free flow of traffic alternately in each direction throughout the entire period when the roadway is open to one-way traffic only. Two-way traffic shall be accommodated safely within the contract limits during the following additional periods: Builder Holiday Mid-December to Mid-January the following in line with the dates released by SAFCEC</p>
			A1.5.7.6 Maintenance of existing roads used as detours	All existing roads used as detours by public traffic, and/or by the Contractor's vehicles, for bypassing the Site of the Works shall be maintained by the Contractor. It is anticipated that approximately 20-30 km of existing roads will be used as detours
			A1.5.7.10 Construction of temporary deviations	
			e) Surfacing of temporary deviations	There will be no surfacing on temporary deviations
	A1.6		CLEARING AND GRUBBING	
		A1.6.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	
			A1.6.7.2 Clearing	No trees with a girth exceeding 1,0 m are located along the route, will be removed/cleared
	A1.7		LOADING AND HAULING	
		A1.7.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	The Contractor must provide the Engineer with the certified carrying capacity of each vehicle before any construction materials can be transported.

COTO CHAPTER 2: SERVICES

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
2			SERVICES	
	A2.1		GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND TRENCHING FOR SERVICES	
		A2.1.1	SCOPE	
			A2.1.1.1 Installation of new services	No new services will be installed by the Contractor and the relevant service provider shall be informed of the services that require relocation or removal. Any new infrastructure will therefore be provided by the relevant service provider.
			A2.1.1.2 Location, identification, protection and relocation of existing services	All above ground services have been indicated on the layout plans which have been included under booklet 4 with drawing numbers ICP063-P1- LP01 to LP11. Underground services have however not been identified and a GPR (Ground penetrating radar) survey will have to be conducted along the route to identify any sub-surface infrastructure.
		A2.1.2	DEFINITIONS	
		A2.1.3	GENERAL	
			A2.1.3.1 Installation of new services	No new services will be installed by the Contractor and the relevant service provider shall be informed of the services that require relocation or removal. Any new infrastructure will therefore be provided by the relevant service provider.
			A2.1.3.2 Location, identification, protection and relocation of existing services	
			a) Existing as-built records	No as-built records were obtained during the services investigations that were conducted and the contractor will be required to do his own investigations.
			b) Location of existing services	A provisional sum has been included under item C2.1.2.1 of the schedule of quantities for the location of service by making use of Ground penetrating Radar.

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			d) Protection of services	
			<i>(i) Service owners</i>	<p>Within the mobilization period (3 months), acquire from the service providers the lead times required to make the necessary arrangements for the protection, removal or relocation of services.</p> <p>The successful contractor will be required to submit a request for the relocation of the services within 30 days of contract award. No work shall be done in a radius of 5 m around the infrastructure of any third-party service providers.</p>
			<i>(iv) Relocation</i>	Contractor is to submit method statements for approval by engineer before any permanent works can be conducted.
			A2.1.3.3 Safety, Method Statements, safeguarding the works and accommodation of traffic	
			a) Safety and Method Statements	Contractor is to submit road closures for approval by Engineer before any closures are done.
			c) Accommodation of traffic	<p>The extent of underground services is not known at tender stage and a GPR survey will be required to determine any crossings and specific requirements shall have to be obtained by the contractor from the relevant service provider.</p> <p>The Contractor shall then update his programme specified in Clause A2.1.3.5 b). Payment for this item will be made under item C2.1.2.1.</p>
			A2.1.3.5 Programming for services	
			A2.1.3.6 Provision of record drawings and details	-
			A2.1.3.9 Limitations and restrictions	<p>Relative density compaction control shall be used over and above any service where it crosses a road carriageway or lined drains or under any paved footways, sidewalks or walkways.</p> <p>Relative density compaction control shall be used for trenches in embankments, fills or cut slopes</p>

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			c) Installation under special conditions	The Contractor is required to adhere to the Services Owners installation conditions and specifications issued with the Wayleaves
			e) Working widths	All trench widths will be inline with Drawings. Should there be any changes induced by safety or environmental issues, this shall be through an instruction by the Engineer
		A2.1.4	DESIGN BY CONTRACTOR / PERFORMANCE BASED SYSTEMS	
			A2.1.4.1 Temporary works	Temporary works relating to services shall be designed and installed by the Contractor as required to construct the permanent works. Furthermore, these works need to be approved by the service owner
			A2.1.4.2 Alternative designs	
			b) Alternative design approvals	Any alternative design shall comply with the same design requirements as the original design. Furthermore, these works need to be approved by the service owner
			A2.1.4.3 Designs	Any service(s) installations which form part of the permanent works in the road reserve so that where the Contractor is responsible for the design such work shall be carried out by sufficiently qualified and competent registered professional engineers/practitioner. Furthermore, these works need to be approved by the service owner

COTO CHAPTER 3: DRAINAGE

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
3			DRAINAGE	
	A3.1		DRAINS	
		A3.1.4	DESIGN BY CONTRACTOR / PERFORMANCE	
		A3.1.5	MATERIALS	
			A3.1.5.2 Subsoil Drainage Materials	All subsoil drains to be constructed using U-PVC perforated pipes
	B3.1		DRAINS	
		B3.1.6	CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT	Labour enhanced methods to be utilised.
	D3.1		DRAINS	Subsoil drains (chutes) and v-drains will be constructed line with the drawing's specifications
	A3.2		CULVERTS	
		A3.2.3	GENERAL	
			A3.2.3.1 Types of culverts	Works will involve concrete pipe culvert as per the BOQ and Drawings Specifications
		A3.2.4	DESIGN BY CONTRACTOR / PERFORMANCE BASED SYSTEMS	
	D3.2		CULVERTS	
	A3.3		CONCRETE KERBING AND CHANNELING, ASPHALT BERMS, CHUTES, DOWNPIPES, AS WELL AS CONCRETE, STONE PITCHED AND GABION LININGS FOR OPEN DRAINS	

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
		A.3.3.4	DESIGN BY CONTRACTOR / PERFORMANCE BASED SYSTEMS	
		A3.3.5	MATERIALS	
			A3.3.5.2 Drainage structure materials	
			d) Joint sealant	Sealant to be utilised as approved by the Engineer.(If required)
		A3.3.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	
			A3.3.7.1 Drainage structures	
			a) Prefabricated concrete kerbing and channelling	As per DOT SD 0701
			f) Cast in situ chutes on cut slopes	As per DOT SD 0704
			i) Stone pitched open drains	As per DOT SD 0701.
	B3.3		CONCRETE KERBING AND CHANNELING, ASPHALT BERMS, CHUTES, DOWNPIPES, AS WELL AS CONCRETE, STONE PITCHED AND GABION LININGS FOR OPEN DRAINS	
	D3.3		CONCRETE KERBING AND CHANNELING, ASPHALT BERMS, CHUTES, DOWNPIPES, AS WELL AS CONCRETE, STONE PITCHED AND GABION LININGS FOR OPEN DRAINS PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES	

COTO CHAPTER 4: EARTHWORKS AND PAVEMENT LAYERS: MATERIALS

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
4			EARTHWORKS AND PAVEMENT LAYERS: MATERIALS	
	A4.1		BORROW MATERIALS	
		A4.1.3	GENERAL	
			A4.1.3.1 Employer identified borrow pits and quarries	No Borrow Pits have been identified for the Contract, construction materials to be sourced by Contractor from own established commercial sources.
			A4.1.3.2 Contractor identified borrow pits and quarries	
			A4.1.3.4 Contractor prepared plans for borrow materials	
		A4.1.5	MATERIALS	
			A4.1.5.4 Sand, normal and coarse fill material in the earthworks layers (Table A4.1.5-2)	Fills of more than 10 m high will not be encountered on this project and will not apply.
			A4.1.5.5 Rock fill material in the earthworks layers	Competent/ un-weathered rock is frequently encountered within the cuttings and may be used as rockfill only upon the instruction of the Engineer.
		A4.1.7	EXECUTION OF WORKS	
			A4.1.7.1 Haul and access roads	
			c) Construction requirements of new temporary unsealed roads	The construction of any temporary roads shall be in line with the Contractors traffic accommodation plan pending approval by the Engineer.
			d) Reinstatement of the temporary unsealed roads	The reinstatement of any temporary roads shall be in line with the Contractors traffic accommodation plan pending approval by the Engineer.
			A4.1.7.2 Borrow pit and Quarry operations	
			a) General control at the borrow pits and quarries	In a case the Contractor finds own borrow pit, a full-time materials manager shall be appointed for the duration of the contract and shall have worked as a

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
				Senior general foreman on contracts with similar value and similar scope of works for a minimum of 10 years or 3 projects.
			b) Classes of excavations	
			<i>(i) Soft excavation</i>	The reference construction equipment shall be as specified in the COTO under this section
			<i>(iv) Hard excavation</i>	As specified in the COTO under this section
			g) Selection and excavation of material in borrow pits	In a case the Contractor finds own borrow pit, a full time materials manager shall be appointed for the duration of the contract and shall have worked as a Senior general foreman on contracts with similar value and similar scope of works for a minimum of 10 years or 3 projects
			h) Selection and excavation of material in quarries	Selection of materials in quarries shall be conducted by a Senior Engineering Geologist / Geo-Technologist must be registered with the Engineering Council of South Africa (ECSA) or South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP) A full time materials manager shall be appointed for the duration of the contract and shall have worked as a Senior general foreman on contracts with similar value and similar scope of works for a minimum of 10 years or 3 projects
			l) Use of the borrow material	Included are laboratory test, test pits and borehole drilling results in Part C4 of this document
			m) Closing of the borrow pits and quarries	The Closing of Borrow Pits shall be in line with the Contractor's Materials and Utilization Plan pending approval by the EAP and Engineer.
			A4.1.7.3 Stockpiles	
			b) Stockpiling of the material	A full time materials manager shall be appointed for the duration of the contract and shall have worked as a Senior general foreman on contracts with similar value and similar scope of works for a minimum of 10 years or 3 projects
			c) Reinstatement of stockpiles site	The reinstatement of any stockpiles shall be in line with the Contractor's Materials and Utilization Plan pending approval by EAP and the Engineer.
	C4.1		BORROW MATERIALS	

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	
		C4.1.19	Excavating hard material	
	D4.1		BORROW MATERIALS PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES	
		A4.2.7	EXECUTION OF WORKS	
			A4.2.7.1 Excavation operations	
			a) Control at the cuttings, designated excavations and box cuts	To be Supervised by the Fulltime Materials Manager
			b) Classes of excavation	As per COTO specification
			h) Excavation of material in cuttings	
			i) Excavation of material in box cuts	<p>Typical Cross sections of the roads included under Volume 4 – Book of drawings as Drawings ICP063/P372/P1/TCS01 which shows the extent of cut required for the roads.</p> <p>Due to the nature of the roads upgrade, cuts are generally limited to box cutting operations.</p> <p>A full-time materials manager shall be appointed for the duration of the contract and shall have worked as a Senior general foreman on contracts with similar value and similar scope of works for a minimum of 10 years or 3 projects</p>
			j) Excavation of material in designated excavations	Typical Cross sections of the roads included under Volume 4 – Book of drawings as Drawings ICP063/P372/P1/TCS01 which shows the extent of cut required for the roads
			k) Selection and the use of the cut material	Laboratory test, test pits and cut material drilling results in Part C4 – Appendix 4 – Geotechnical Report

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			n) Finishing of the side slopes of cuttings and designated excavations (<i>para 1</i>)	Cut and fill slopes shall be battered back to a minimum of 1:1.5 except where access to properties will be required in which case the slopes will be cut back to allow a typical sedan to gain access without bottoming on any portion of the road, drain or embankment.
	D4.2		CUT MATERIALS PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES	
	A4.3		EXISTING ROAD MATERIALS	
		A4.3.3	GENERAL	
			A4.3.3.1 Employer identified existing road materials	See Part C4 and Volume 5 of Contract Document
	D4.3		EXISTING ROAD MATERIALS PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES	
	A4.4		COMMERCIAL MATERIALS	
		A4.4.3	GENERAL	
			A4.4.3.1 Employer identified commercial materials	
			a) Materials from commercial suppliers	G5 from Afrimat Vryheid Quarry.
			b) Materials from private or non-commercial suppliers	None identified by the Employer
			c) Materials from the Employer's own sources	Employer does not own Material sources within the vicinity

COTO CHAPTER 5: EARTHWORKS AND PAVEMENT LAYERS: CONSTRUCTION

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
5			EARTHWORKS AND PAVEMENT LAYERS: CONSTRUCTION	
	A5.1		ROADBED	
		A5.1.2	DEFINITIONS	
			Batter	Cut and Fill batter slopes shall be constructed at a maximum slope of 1:1.5 unless instructed otherwise by the Engineer.
			Roller-pass (high-energy impact compactor or roller HEIC)	It remains the Contractors responsibility to achieve the required compaction of any layer as specified. The contractor shall be required to provide evidence which supports the number of equivalent passes done by HEIC as compared to conventional Rollers.
		A5.1.3	GENERAL	
			A5.1.3.1 Roadbed material Investigation	5 test pits were done along the route with the layer results after testing being reported as G9 or lower quality
		A5.1.5	MATERIALS	
			A5.1.5.2 Topsoil	No topsoil sources have been identified and any topsoil obtained from within the proposed road reserve must be stockpiled for later use. Stock piles to be approved by EAP and Engineer.
			A5.1.5.3 Collapsing soil material	-
		A5.1.6	CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT	-
		A5.1.7	EXECUTION OF WORKS	
			A5.1.7.1 Clearing and grubbing	Any material obtained from clearing and grubbing shall be disposed at approved spoil sites.

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			A5.1.7.2 Removal and conservation of topsoil from roadbed	Topsoil shall be removed to either windrows alongside the construction area or to stockpile. Where ordered by the engineer, any topsoil that shall be required for the topsoiling of new banks and cuts, but which cannot be accommodated within the construction site, shall be loaded and hauled to the designated stockpile area where it shall be placed in temporary stockpiles for later use in the rehabilitation of the site affected by construction activities.
			A5.1.7.3 Normal roadbed treatment	
			a) Construction overview	<p>Conventional roadbed preparation procedures must be followed where required on the contract.</p> <p>Where the in-situ material has a CBR 3 – 15%, and in-situ material suitable then scarify in-situ to a depth of 200mm, and re-compact to 93% MDD.</p> <p>Where the in-situ CBR <3% or in-situ material unsuitable then remove unsuitable to minimum depth of 600mm and construct a 600mm Pioneer layer or as instructed by the Engineer.</p> <p>Alternatively remove 300mm of unsuitable and replace with a 300mm drainage layer of 20mm aggregate, wrapped in geofabric</p> <p>Then construct fill in maximum 150mm lifts, compacted to 93% MDD without the use of vibratory equipment. Layer thickness may have to be reduced to achieve compaction without the use of vibration.</p>
			b) Removal of unsuitable roadbed material	Any unsuitable roadbed material shall be disposed at approved spoil sites.
			c) Percentage of Max Dry density (MDD)	All roadbed materials shall be scarified to a depth of at least 150mm and compacted to 93% of MDD.

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			e) Compaction of collapsible soil	<p>It is not anticipated that collapsible soil will be encountered on this project, however unforeseeable circumstances common in projects.</p> <p>Treatment of collapsible soil shall be done in accordance with treating the roadbed with a CBR <3% where 600mm of the unsuitable material will be removed and replaced with 600 mm pioneer layer or as instructed by the Engineer. Alternatively remove 300mm of unsuitable and replace with a 300mm drainage layer of 20mm aggregate, wrapped in geofabric.</p>
			f) Hard material	
			<i>(i) In situ treatment by ripping</i>	Rip in-situ to depth of up to 600mm below final road level
			<i>(ii) In situ treatment by drilling and rock breaking</i>	Blast in-situ to up to depth of 1000mm below final road level
			<i>(iii) Removal of material</i>	<p>Clayey areas shall be treated similar to unsuitable material and shall be removed upon the instruction of the Engineer.</p> <p>Treatment shall be done in accordance with treating the roadbed where unsuitable material will be removed and replaced with up to 1000 mm rockfill. Compaction shall be done by using 8 roller pass compactions</p>
			<i>(ii) Alternative 2 – Roadbed construction by removal of active clay</i>	<p>Clayey areas shall be treated similar to unsuitable material and shall be removed upon the instruction of the Engineer. Treatment shall be done in accordance with treating the roadbed where unsuitable material will be removed and replaced with up to 1000 mm rockfill.</p> <p>Compaction shall be done by using 8 roller pass compactions.</p>
			i) Construction of a pioneer layer	Where the in-situ CBR <3% or in-situ material unsuitable then remove unsuitable to minimum depth of 600mm and construct a 600 mm thick pioneer layer which shall consist of blasted rock as per Clause A4.1.5.3 of the specifications and 200 mm capping layer consisting of G9 quality material compacted to 93% MDD or as instructed by the Engineer.

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			A5.1.7.4 Special drainage measures, dewatering	Where drainage layers are required 600mm of unsuitable will be removed and replaced with a 300mm drainage layer of 20mm aggregate, wrapped in geofabric. 300 mm G9 Quality fill shall then be imported and compacted to 93% MDD.
		A5.1.8	WORKMANSHIP	
			A5.1.8.2 Compaction requirements	-
	C5.1		ROADBED PART C: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	Measurement of the levelling layer (Capping layer) shall be done by making use of the average end areas alternatively the contractor shall provide a detailed survey of the area before the levelling layer is placed and again after in order to determine the quantity of material placed. The survey shall be done jointly between the contractor and the Engineers representative.
	D5.1		ROADBED PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES	
	A5.2		FILL	
		A5.2.3	GENERAL	
			A5.2.3.1 Fill Dimensions and shape	Fill dimension shall be in line with the COTO specification in conjunction with the issued drawings
			A5.2.3.2 Fill adjacent to existing fill	The minimum width of any fill widening shall be 4 m in order to allow the contractors plant to gain access to the works. Additional fill required to achieve the required working width shall be paid as normal Fill. Fills shall be imported and compacted to a maximum thickness of 200 mm and benching widths shall be a function of the respective batter slope of the existing embankment.

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
				<p>Benches will have a minimum width of 200 mm + (slope of embankment * thickness of fill layer) but shall not exceed the width of the existing gravel shoulder.</p> <p>example: the existing fill embankment has a slope of 1:1.5 and fill is compacted in 200 mm layers.</p> <p>Minimum width for each bench shall be $200+(200*1.5) = 500$ mm</p>
			A5.2.3.3 Fill layer thickness	Fill layer thicknesses shall not exceed 150 mm and may be reduced if the compaction is not achieved by nonvibratory means.
			A5.2.5.2 Use of fill materials	Refer to drawing ICP063/P372/P1/TD-D-SD-1001 which/11which which shows the typical subsoil drain detail applicable to this contract.
			Table A5.2.8-1	Normal Fill – 93% of MDD. Course Fill – 93% MOD
		A5.2.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	
			A5.2.7.3 Benching for fill construction	<p>Compaction of the pavement layers shall be achieved without vibration as structures along the route are susceptible to vibratory compaction.</p> <p>The vibratory component on all rollers shall be disabled for the purposes of this contract.</p>
			A5.2.7.4 Widening of fills	
			A5.2.7.5 Rockfill embankment toe	<p>Longitudinal joints in surfacing to coincide with road marking line positions.</p> <p>Joints in lower layers to be located as specified in the Standard Specifications.</p>
			A5.2.7.9 Fills higher than 10m	TBC.
			A5.2.7.10 Drainage blankets in fills	TBC.
	D5.2		FILL	

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES	
	A5.3		ROAD PAVEMENT LAYERS	
		A5.3.3	GENERAL	
			A5.3.3.3 Requirements prior to the construction of any pavement layer	Compaction of the pavement layers shall be achieved without vibration as structures along the route are susceptible to vibratory compaction. The vibratory component on all rollers shall be disabled for the purposes of this contract.
			A5.3.3.4 Compaction of pavement layer material	NME 100 -200 mm – 97% MDD Sub Base Layer G5A 150 mm – 95% MDD Upper selected Layer G7 150mm – 97% of MDD Lower selected layer G9 150mm – 93% of MDD
			A5.3.3.7 Joints between pavement layers	
			a) Location of joints	
			b) Longitudinal joints	Longitudinal joints in surfacing to coincide with road marking line positions. Joints in lower layers to be located as specified in the Standard Specifications.
			c) Transverse Joints	TBC.
			A5.3.3.8 Pavement Layer Drainage	TBC.
		A5.3.5	MATERIALS	
			A5.3.5.1 Material information	Material to be sourced from commercial suppliers.
			A5.3.5.2 Pavement Layer thickness and compaction requirements	
			a) Pavement layer thickness requirements	Pavement layers thickness will vary from 100mm to 200mm in line with the issued Pavement Design

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			b) Gravel and soil pavement layer compaction requirements (G4B to G9 material)	Compaction will be in line with the issued Pavement Design
			Table A5.3.5-1	NME 100 -200 mm – 97% MDD Sub Base G5A 150 mm – 95% MDD Upper selected Layer G7 150mm – 97% of MDD Lower selected layer G9 150mm – 93% of MDD
		A5.3.7	EXECUTION OF WORKS	
			A5.3.7.1 Controlling pavement layer thickness	
			b) Minimum pavement layer thickness in transition areas	100mm
			A5.3.7.2 Combining Materials	There are sections of the road where the road in-situ material will be mixed with Sub Base G5A

COTO CHAPTER 6: CONCRETE LAYERS

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
6			CONCRETE LAYERS	
	A6.1		PAVER LAID CONCRETE LAYERS	
		A6.1.2	DEFINITIONS	
			Aggregate	-
		A6.1.4	DESIGN BY CONTRACTOR / PERFORMANCE BASED SYSTEMS	
			A6.1.4.2 Design requirements	
			e) Air content	Air content in the freshly mixed concrete shall be $M \pm 1\%$, where M is the target value within the limits of 2 % to 4 %. Tests shall be conducted in accordance with SANS 3001- CO1-8.
		A6.1.5	MATERIALS	
			A6.1.5.5 Reinforcing steel, tie-bars and dowels	
			a) Dimensions	In line with issued drawings and approved by the Engineer
			A6.1.5.7 Materials for joints	
			b) Silicone sealant	
			<i>(vii) Sealant.</i>	In line with issued drawings and approved by the Engineer
			A6.1.7.3 Placing, Compacting and Finishing Concrete	
			a) General requirements for both side-form and slip-form paving	
			<i>(x) Surface texturing</i>	In line with the COTO specification
			A6.1.7.4 Joint forming	

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			c) Weakened-plain transverse contraction joints	The joints shall be sealed in accordance with clause A6.1.7.5
			A6.1.7.5 Joint sealing	
			a) Silicone sealant	
			<i>(vii) Materials</i>	-

COTO CHAPTER 7: MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR OF CONCRETE LAYERS

No Amendment to this section

COTO CHAPTER 8: PRETREATMENT AND REPAIR OF EXISTING LAYERS

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
8			PRETREATMENT AND REPAIR OF EXISTING LAYERS	
	A8.1		PRIME COAT	
		A8.1.3	GENERAL	
			A8.1.3.1 Weather limitations	The limiting moisture contents for treated layers before priming shall be less than 25% of the OMC
		A8.1.5	MATERIALS	
			A8.1.5.1 Bituminous material	The priming material shall be as specified in Part C: Measurement and Payment: MC-30 cut-back bitumen
		A8.1.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	
			A8.1.7.5 Opening to traffic	Where a blinding layer is specified in the drawings the specification in the COTO shall apply

COTO CHAPTER 9: ASPHALT LAYERS

No Amendment to this section

COTO CHAPTER 10: SURFACE TREATMENTS

No Amendment to this section

COTO CHAPTER 11: ANCILLARY ROAD WORKS

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
11			ANCILLARY ROAD WORKS	
	A11.1		PITCHING, STONEMWORK, CAST IN SITU CONCRETE FOR PROTECTION AGAINST EROSION	
		A11.1.5	MATERIALS	
	D11.1		PITCHING, STONEMWORK, CAST IN SITU CONCRETE FOR PROTECTION AGAINST EROSION PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES	
	A11.2		NON-STRUCTURAL GABIONS	
		A11.2.7	EXECUTION OF WORKS	
			A11.2.7.2 Constructing gabion boxes and mattresses	
			g) Assembly	As per DOT standard details.
	D11.2		NON-STRUCTURAL GABIONS <i>PART D: GUARANTEES AND COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES</i>	All products to be SABS approved.
	A11.6		ROAD SIGNS	
		A11.6.1	SCOPE	Road signs will be in accordance with the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual.
		A11.6.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	
			A11.6.7.5 Erecting road signs	

CH	SEC	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
			a) Position	Road sign installation will be in accordance with the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual.
			b) Excavation and backfilling	Drawing ICP063/P372/P1/TD-RS-1201/08 indicates the typical detail of the excavation and backfilling required for a signpost and has been included under volume 4. The level of soil-crete shall be reduced to accommodate paving or concrete walkways with the thickness of the walkway or respective paving block. Sufficient allowance shall be made for the sand bedding layer should block paving be used.
	A11.7		ROAD MARKINGS AND ROAD STUDS	
		A11.7.5	MATERIALS	
			A11.7.5.2 Materials	
			a) Marking materials	
			(ii) Retro-reflective Road marking	Retro-reflective Road marking material shall be applied a minimum of 6 months after the issue of the taking over certificate and 4 months before the end of the defects and liability period.
			b) Road studs	Bi-directional, SANS1442 &/or SANS1446 with shank Class RSA-2.
	A11.8		LANDSCAPING AND PLANTING PLANTS	
		A11.8.5	MATERIALS	
			Grass sods	Refer to Schedule of Quantities.
		A11.8.7	EXECUTION OF THE WORKS	
			A11.8.7.3 Grassing	
			f) Sowing by hand	By Labour enhanced methods.

COTO CHAPTER 12: GEOTECHNICAL APPLICATIONS

No Amendment to this section

COTO CHAPTER 13: STRUCTURES

No Amendment to this section

COTO CHAPTER 14: REPAIR AND REHABILITATION OF STRUCTURES

No Amendment to this section

SANRAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION SECTIONS

-

SECTION	CL	SUB-CLAUSE	SPECIFICATION DATA
SECTION C		ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN	
	C1004	ADMINISTRATION OF ENVIRONMENTAL OBLIGATIONS	
		(d) Dedicated Environmental Officer (DEO)	DEO means: Dedicated Environmental Officer
	C1007	ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT OF CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES	
		(h) On site plant	
	C1008	AREAS OF SPECIFIC IMPORTANCE	The Employer will consider monitoring and reporting in terms of a sustainability rating tool and the Contractor will be required to engage through its appointed DEO with the ECO to provide all the relevant information.

	C1012	PROJECT SPECIFIC CONDITIONS	<p>The Contractor will be bound by the terms of this EMPI regardless that some of them might not be part of an EMPr authorised by a competent authority.</p> <p>It is intended that this standard EMPI be the base document for the development of the draft of each EMPr that is to accompany each application to the relevant competent authority.</p> <p>The EAP's identification of an activity requiring inclusion of mitigation or action in the EMPr should preferably use verbatim the relative text in this EMPI. However, if the EAP can show that his/her version is an improvement then the Engineer in liaison with the relevant project manager should be aware of the amendment and approve the change.</p> <p>It is preferable to improve this EMPI than create different versions of the same mitigation. Proposals for improvement are encouraged.</p> <p>This section of the EMPI should be used by the EAP to record site specific activities and proposed mitigation measures. A graphic display of these will be a useful visual aid.</p> <p>The Employer will consider monitoring and reporting in terms of a sustainability rating toll and the Contractor will be required to engage through its appointed DEO with the ECO to provide all the relevant information.</p>
SECTION D		STAKEHOLDER AND COMMUNITY LIAISON AND TARGETED LABOUR AND TARGETED ENTERPRISES UTILISATION AND DEVELOPMENT	
	D1002	DEFINITIONS AND APPLICABLE LEGISLATION	
		D1002.01 Definitions	
		(r) Target Area(s)	For Targeted Labour: Preference to be Nquthu local Municipality, however other target areas for target labour will be considered where required or agreed upon by PLC

		(w) Targeted Labour	Target Group for Targeted Labour: a. black designated groups (As per latest PPPFA Regulations); b. black people; c. women; d. people with disabilities
	D1003	TARGET GROUP PARTICIPATION	
		D1003.04 Contract Participation Goal (CPG)	
		CPG for Targeted Labour:	Minimum of 8% of the Final Contract Value by the end of the contract to Targeted Labour The Final Contract Value is defined in clause D1003.04
		Targeted Labour minimum contributions by the following Target Groups:	
		a. black designated groups; (i) Black people who are youth	30% of targeted labour value
		(ii) Black people who are persons with disabilities	1% of targeted labour value
		b. Black women;	30% of targeted labour value
		CPG for Targeted Enterprise	Minimum of 30% of the Final Contract Value by the end of the contract to Targeted Enterprises. The Final Contract Value for purposes of this clause is defined in clause D1003.04.
		Targeted Enterprise minimum contribution by the following Target Groups:	
		Targeted Enterprise with ≥51% ownership by Youth	Minimum of 5% of the Final Contract Value
		Targeted Enterprise with ≥51% ownership by Women	Minimum of 5% of the Final Contract Value
		Targeted Enterprise with ≥51% ownership by Military veterans	Minimum of 1% of the Final Contract Value

		Targeted Enterprise with ≥51% ownership by Disabled persons (Differently abled)	Minimum of 0.5% of the Final Contract Value
		Targeted Enterprise with CIDB 1 or 2 grading	Minimum of 1.5% of the Final Contract Value
		Targeted Enterprise with CIDB 3 or 4 grading	Minimum of 1.5% of the Final Contract Value
	D1008	WORK SUITABLE FOR EXECUTION BY TARGETED ENTERPRISES	Works identified for target enterprises includes the works listed below, but may not be limited to this list: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Traffic accommodation • Trenching for services • Earthworks • Prime coat & surfacing • Installation of road signs • Drains, Culverts and wingwalls • Kerbs, channel and concrete lined drains, Stone pitching and erosion protection • Non-Structural Gabions • Road Marking and road studs • Guide blocks and Kilometre markers • Road Restraint Systems • Landscaping and planting of plants • Finishing the road and road reserve and treating old roads • Construction of pedestrian walkways and bus bays
SECTION E		REQUIREMENTS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT AND REGULATIONS	
	E1018	PROJECT SPECIFIC CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS	See Part C4, Site Information: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Baseline Risk Assessment: Appendix 2 2. Site Specific Health & Safety Specification: Appendix 3.

SECTION F		REFURBISHMENT OF ISANDLWANA HERITAGE SITE	Refurbishment Of Isandlwana Heritage Site to be implemented by the Engineer or Engineer appointed competent person.
------------------	--	--	---

SECTION C: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN

SECTION C: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN

TABLE OF CONTENTS		PAGE
C1001	SCOPE	C3-116
C1002	DEFINITIONS	C3-116
C1003	LEGAL REQUIREMENTS	C3-117
C1004	ADMINISTRATION OF ENVIRONMENTAL OBLIGATIONS.....	C3-119
C1005	TRAINING	C3-120
C1006	ACTIVITIES/ASPECTS CAUSING IMPACTS.....	C3-121
C1007	ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT OF CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES.....	C3-124
C1008	AREAS OF SPECIFIC IMPORTANCE	C3-131
C1009	REHABILITATION	C3-131
C1010	RECORD KEEPING.....	C3-132
C1011	COMPLIANCE AND PENALTIES	C3-132
C1012	PROJECT SPECIFIC CONDITIONS	C3-132

C1001 SCOPE

The South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited (SANRAL) recognises environmental management as a key component of road infrastructure development and as part of its Environmental Sustainability Framework has developed this Environmental Management Plan (EMP) as a tool for continual improvement in environmental performance.

This EMP prescribes the methods by which proper environmental controls are to be implemented by the Contractor for construction and maintenance projects. The duration over which the Contractor's controls shall be in place cover the construction period of the project as well as the limited time after contract completion defined by the Conditions of Contract for Construction for Building and Engineering Works Designed by SANRAL published by the Federation Internationale des Ingenieurs-Conseils (FIDIC) as the Defects Notification Period (maintenance period).

The provisions of this EMP are binding on the Contractor during the life of the contract. They are to be read in conjunction with all the documents that comprise the suite of documents for this contract, particularly the conditions of any environmental authorisation and associated site-specific Environmental Management Programme (EMPr). In the event that any conflict occurs between the terms of the EMP and the project specifications or environmental authorisation, the terms herein shall be subordinate.

The EMP is a dynamic document subject to similar influences and changes as are brought by variations to the provisions of the project specification. Any changes to the EMP and/or environmental authorisation cannot occur without being submitted to SANRAL who will manage the process of amending the EMP.

The EMP identifies the following:

- Relevant parties and their responsibilities;
- Construction activities that will impact on the environment;
- Specifications with which the Contractor shall comply in order to protect the environment from the identified impacts; and
- Actions that shall be taken in the event of non-compliance.

C1002 DEFINITIONS

Alien Vegetation: undesirable plant growth which includes but is not limited to all declared category 1 and 2 listed invader species as set out in the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (CARA), 1983 and the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act No. 10 of 2004). Other vegetation deemed to be alien are those plant species that show the potential to occupy in number, any area within the defined construction area and which are declared to be undesirable.

Construction Activity: any action taken by the Contractor, his sub-contractors, suppliers or personnel during the construction process as defined in the contract documents.

Environment: the surroundings within which the contract exists and comprises land, water, atmosphere, micro-organisms, plant and animal life (including humans) in any part or combination thereof as well as any physical, chemical, aesthetic or cultural inter-relationship among and between them.

Environmental Aspect: any component of a contractor's construction activity that is likely to interact with the environment.

Environmental authorisation: a written statement from a Competent Authority, with the general and specific conditions and the EMPr recording its approval of an application for a planned undertaking that triggers listed activities in the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) regulations of the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA).

Environmental Impact: any change to the environment, whether desirable or undesirable, that will result from the effect of a construction activity. An impact may be the direct or indirect consequence of a construction activity.

C3-116

Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA): a systematic process of identifying, assessing and reporting environmental impacts associated with an activity and includes basic assessment and scoping and environmental impact reporting.

Environmental Management Plan: An Environmental Management Plan (EMP) is an environmental management tool used to ensure that adverse impacts of the construction and operation and decommissioning of a project are prevented and/or minimised, and that the positive benefits are enhanced.

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr): A project-specific Environmental Management Plan approved by a competent authority through an environmental impact assessment process.

Road Reserve: a corridor of land, defined by co-ordinates and/or proclamation, within which the road, including access intersections or interchanges, is situated. A road reserve may, or may not, be bounded by a fence.

Site; the site is defined in the FIDIC Conditions of Contract and in the scope of works. It is bound by the limits of construction as shown in the drawings or the title of the project and extends to also include the following:

- Areas outside the construction zones where accommodation of traffic is placed;
- All borrowpits defined in the applications approved by the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR);
- All haul roads constructed by the Contractor for purposes of access;
- Any non-adjacent sites specified in the contract documentation;
- The Contractor's and his subcontractors' camp sites.

For the purposes of this EMP, the site includes areas outside of, but adjacent to, the road reserve that may be affected by construction activities.

Spoil material: is material that is unsuitable for construction of the road pavement and for which no other useful purpose can be found in additional works on the project (e.g. for the provision of protection berms). Such material requires spoiling at convenient areas to be identified by the Engineer and/or Contractor within the Site. Spoil material does not require removal to a designated landfill site unless it contains identifiable hazardous contaminants.

C1003 LEGAL REQUIREMENTS

(a) General

Construction shall be according to the best industry practices, as identified in the project documents. This EMP, which forms an integral part of the contract documents, informs the Contractor as to his duties in the fulfilment of the project objectives, with particular reference to the prevention and mitigation of environmental impacts caused by construction activities associated with the project. The Contractor should note that obligations imposed by the EMP are legally binding in terms of this contract. In the event that any rights and obligations contained in this EMP contradict those specified in the standard or project specifications then the latter shall prevail.

(b) Statutory and other applicable legislation

The Contractor is deemed to have made himself conversant with all legislation pertaining to the environment, including provincial and local government ordinances, which may be applicable to the contract.

Major environmental legislation, as amended from time to time, includes but is not limited to the following:

(i) Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983)

This act provides for control over the utilisation of the natural agricultural resources of South Africa in order to promote the conservation of soil, water sources and vegetation, as well as combating weeds and invader plants.

(ii) The Constitution (Act 6 of 1996)

The Constitution states that everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being, and to have the environment protected through reasonable legislative and other measures to prevent pollution and ecological degradation; promote conservation and ensure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources.

(iii) Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act No. 28 of 2002)

This act makes provision for equitable access to, and sustainable development of, minerals and petroleum resources.

(iv) National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), (Act No. 107 of 1998)

This act supports the Bill of Rights within the Constitution and highlights principles of sustainable development including preservation of ecosystems and biological diversity and avoidance, minimisation and remediation of pollution and environmental degradation. It also sets the stage for the EIA Regulations.

(v) National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (Act No. 39 of 2004)

This act provides reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation; and provides for specific air quality measures; for national norms and standards regulating air quality monitoring, management and control by all spheres of government.

(vi) National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act No. 10 of 2004)

This act makes provisions to accomplish the objectives of the United Nations' Convention on Biological Diversity. SANRAL may be required to apply for permits to conduct certain listed activities which, together with the listed threatened or protected species, may be identified by the Minister.

Section 73 (3) of this act empowers a competent authority to direct a person to take steps to remedy any harm to biodiversity resulting from the actions of that person or as a result of occurrence of listed invasive species occurring on land on which that person is the owner. Thus SANRAL may be directed to remedy harm caused by listed invasive species.

(vii) National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act No. 57 of 2003)

This act provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa's biological diversity, natural landscapes and seascapes.

(viii) National Environmental Management: Waste Act (Act No. 59 of 2008)

This act aims to regulate waste management practices through provision of national norms and standards, specific waste measures, licensing and control of waste activities, remediation of contaminated land as well as providing for compliance and law enforcement.

(ix) National Forests Act (Act No. 84 of 1998)

This act makes provision for promoting the sustainable management and development of forests, and for the protection of certain forests and trees for environmental, economic, educational, recreational, cultural, health and spiritual purposes.

(x) National Heritage Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999)

This act provides for an integrated and interactive system for identification, assessment and management of South Africa's heritage resources, and empowers civil society to nurture and conserve their heritage resources.

(xi) National Water Act (Act No. 36 of 1998)

This act makes provision for the protection of surface water and groundwater and their sustainable management for the prevention and remediation of the effects of pollution, as well as for the management of emergency situations.

(xii) The South African National Roads Agency Limited and National Roads Act (Act No. 7 of 1998)

This Act makes provision for a National Roads Agency for the Republic to manage and control the Republic's national roads system and take charge, amongst others, of the development, maintenance and rehabilitation of national roads within the framework of government policy.

C1004 ADMINISTRATION OF ENVIRONMENTAL OBLIGATIONS

Copies of this EMP shall be kept at the site office and must be distributed to all senior contract personnel who shall familiarise themselves with its contents.

Implementation of this EMP requires the involvement of several stakeholders, each fulfilling a different but vital role as outlined herein, to ensure sound environmental management during the construction phase of a project.

(a) SANRAL

SANRAL and anyone acting on SANRAL's behalf is accountable for the potential environmental impacts of any activities that are undertaken and is responsible for managing these impacts.

(b) The Engineer

The Engineer has been appointed by, and acts for, SANRAL as its on-site implementing agent and carries the responsibility to ensure that the Contractor undertakes its construction activities in such a way that SANRAL's environmental responsibilities are not compromised.

The Engineer will, within seven days of receiving a contractor's request for approval of a nominated Dedicated Environmental Officer (DEO), approve, reject or call for more information on the nomination. The Engineer will be responsible for issuing instructions to the DEO where environmental considerations call for action to be taken.

If in the opinion of the Engineer the DEO is not fulfilling his/her duties in terms of this EMP, the Engineer may, after discussion and agreement with SANRAL, exercise his powers under FIDIC general conditions of contract and instruct replacement of the DEO in writing and with stated reasons.

(c) The Contractor

The Contractor is responsible for project delivery in accordance with the prescribed specifications, among which this EMP shall be included.

The Contractor shall receive and implement any instruction issued by the Engineer relating to compliance with the EMP including the removal of personnel or equipment.

Compliance with the provisions contained herein or any condition imposed by the environmental approvals shall become the responsibility of the Contractor through an approved Dedicated Environmental Officer (DEO). The Contractor shall nominate a person from among his site personnel to fulfil this function and submit to the Engineer for his approval the *curriculum vitae* of the proposed DEO. This request for approval shall be given, in writing, at least fourteen days before the commencement of any construction activity clearly setting out reasons for the nomination, and with sufficient detail to enable the Engineer to make a decision.

(d) The Dedicated Environmental Officer (DEO)

Once a nominated representative of the Contractor has been approved, he/she shall become the DEO and shall be the responsible person for ensuring that the provisions of this EMP are complied with during the life of the contract. The DEO shall submit regular written reports to the Engineer, but not less frequently than once a month.

The DEO may undertake other construction duties unless Section B: Specification Data, prescribes this position as 'Full-time' or 'dedicated' as opposed to the standard position being 'designated'. However, the DEO's environmental duties shall hold primacy over other contractual duties and the Engineer has the authority to instruct the Contractor to reduce the DEO's other duties or to replace the DEO if, in the Engineer's opinion, he/she is not fulfilling his/her duties in terms of the requirements of this EMP. Such instruction will be in writing clearly setting out the reasons why a replacement is required.

As a minimum the DEO shall have an accredited National Qualifications Framework (NQF) level 6 qualification in environmental or natural sciences or equivalent and a minimum of 2 years' experience in a similar role in construction or other environmental regulatory field.

In addition to the compliance duties relating to EMP the DEO shall also provide full cooperation whenever the Contractor is subjected to environmental audits.

(e) Environmental Control Officer (ECO)

The Environmental Control Officer (ECO) is an independent environmental specialist appointed by SANRAL or the Engineer to objectively and regularly monitor the Contractor's compliance with the conditions of the authorisations issued for the project and the approved EMP (that is this EMP augmented with specifics of the project). These are external audits and the regularity is determined by the environmental authorisations.

C1005 TRAINING

(a) Qualifications

The (DEO) shall have the minimum qualifications as prescribed above and must be conversant with all legislation pertaining to the environment applicable to the contract. He/she must be appropriately trained in environmental management and possess the skills necessary to impart environmental management skills to all personnel involved in the contract.

The Contractor shall ensure that adequate environmental training takes place. All employees shall have been given an induction presentation on environmental

C3-120

awareness. Where possible, the presentation needs to be conducted in the language of the employees.

(b) Content

Apart from induction environmental training should, as a minimum, include the course content below and no induction or course should be given until the Engineer has been afforded the opportunity to appraise it and provide comment.

- (i) The importance of conformance with all environmental policies and the consequences of departure from standard operating procedures;
- (ii) Environmental impacts, actual or potential, caused by work activities, prevention measures to avoid them and mitigation measures when they occur;
- (iii) Work force roles and responsibilities in achieving conformance with the environmental policy and procedures, including emergency preparedness and response requirements;
- (iv) The environmental benefits of improved personnel performance and
- (v) Consequences of non- compliance

(c) Induction

In the case of permanent staff the Contractor shall provide evidence that such induction courses have been presented. In the case of new staff (including contract labour) the Contractor shall inform the Engineer when and how he intends concluding his environmental training obligations.

C1006 ACTIVITIES/ASPECTS CAUSING IMPACTS

Typical environmental aspects and impacts associated with road construction are listed in Table 1: Aspects and Impacts Associated with Road Construction. Actual impacts will differ from project to project and, therefore, so may the mitigation measures employed. The most common aspects and impacts are addressed separately, and typical avoidance and/or mitigation measures described. The list and descriptions are not by any means exhaustive, and they shall be used for guideline purposes only.

Table 1: Aspects and Impacts Associated with Road Construction

Aspect	Potential Impact
Waste generation/storage	Water pollution; nuisance; visual impact
Water use and stormwater discharge	Change in flow regime and/or reduction in downstream availability; soil erosion: water pollution
Vehicle use and maintenance	Air pollution; noise
Chemical/fuel storage	Water/air/soil pollution; health impacts; accidents e.g. spills, fire
Site clearing; earthworks; layer-works; seal works	Change in landform; impact on heritage resources; noise; soil erosion; air pollution
River bridges; installing drainage structures	Water pollution; impact on river flows; noise
Land acquisition	Loss of land and/or livelihood; change in land use;
Acquisition of building material from borrow pits	Change in landform and use

(a) General approach

The role of the DEO cannot be underestimated and once approved he/she shall be on the site at all times, and before the Contractor begins each construction activity, he/she shall give to the Engineer a written statement setting out the following:

- (i) The type of construction activity about to be started.
- (ii) Locality where the activity will take place.
- (iii) Identification of the environmental aspects and impacts that might result from the activity.
- (iv) The methodology of impact prevention for each activity or aspect.
- (v) The methodology of impact containment for each activity or aspect.
- (vi) Identification of the emergency/disaster potential for each activity (if any) and the reaction procedures necessary to mitigate impact severity.
- (vii) Treatment and continued maintenance of impacted environment.

The Contractor shall programme his work in such a way that each cause and effect of a construction activity is also identified, and the activity planned so as to prevent any impact from happening and shall demonstrate that he is capable of carrying out any repair and reinstatement of the damaged environment. These requirements shall be concurrent with the time constraints to produce method statements for each construction activity in compliance with the provisions of these project specifications.

The Contractor shall provide such information in advance of any or all construction activities provided that new submissions shall be given to the Engineer whenever there is a change or variation to the original.

The Engineer may provide comment on the methodology and procedures proposed by the DEO, but he shall not be responsible for the Contractor's chosen measures of impact mitigation and emergency/disaster management systems. However, the Contractor shall demonstrate at inception and at least once during the contract that the approved measures and procedures function properly.

(b) Spillages

Streams, rivers and dams shall be protected from direct or indirect spillage of pollutants such as refuse, garbage, cement, concrete, sewage, chemicals, fuels, oils, aggregate, tailings, wash water, organic materials and bituminous products. In the event of a spillage, the Contractor shall be liable to arrange for professional service providers to clear the affected area.

Responsibility for spill containment and treatment (whether hazardous or not) lies with the Contractor. The individual causing a spill, or who discovers a spill, must report the incident to his/her DEO or to the Engineer. The DEO will assess the situation in consultation with the Engineer and act as required. In all cases, the immediate response shall be to contain the spill. The exact treatment of polluted soil/water shall be determined by the Contractor in consultation with the DEO and the Engineer. Areas cleared of hazardous waste shall be re-vegetated according to the Engineer's instructions.

Should water downstream of the spill be polluted, and fauna and flora show signs of deterioration or death, specialist hydrological or ecological advice will be sought for appropriate treatment and remedial procedures to be followed. The requirement for such input shall be agreed with the Engineer. The costs of containment and rehabilitation shall be for the Contractor's account, including the costs of specialist input as well as the sampling and testing of the water quality upstream and downstream of the spill. Water quality sampling and testing, and further treatment shall continue until upstream and downstream results correspond with each other.

(c) Water use and control

The Contractor's use of water shall take into consideration that it is a scarce commodity and shall be optimised. Authorisation shall be obtained from the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) before water is drawn from streams or new boreholes developed.

The Contractor shall also ensure that any stream deviations or diversions are undertaken in such a manner that the impact on the environment is minimised. Method statements shall be submitted to the Engineer for comment, detailing how

C3-122

the work will be undertaken, what risks are foreseen and what measures will be employed to minimise such risks. Notwithstanding any comments by the Engineer, no work on stream deviations or diversions shall be undertaken in accordance with GN 509 in GG 40229 of 26 August 2016 - General Authorisation in terms of Section 39 of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 Of 1998) for Water Uses as defined in sections 21(c) and (i) .

The quality, quantity and flow direction of any surface water runoff shall be established prior to disturbing any area for construction purposes. Cognisance shall be taken of these aspects and incorporated into the planning of all construction activities. Before a site is developed or expanded, it shall be established how this development or expansion will affect the drainage pattern. Recognised water users/receivers shall not be adversely affected by the expansion or re-development. No water source shall be polluted in any way due to proposed changes.

Streams, rivers, pans, wetlands, dams, and their catchments shall be protected from erosion and flooding by dredging, daylighting, removal of debris and vegetation, etc. These shall also be protected from direct or indirect spillage of pollutants such as refuse, garbage, cement, concrete, sewage, chemicals, fuels, oils, aggregate, tailings, wash water, organic materials and bituminous products.

The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer his proposals for prevention, containment and rehabilitation measures against environmental damage of the identified water and drainage systems that occur on the site. Consideration shall be given to the placement of sedimentation ponds or barriers where the soils are of a dispersive nature or where toxic fluids are used in the construction process. The sedimentation ponds must be large enough to contain runoff so that they function properly under heavy rain conditions up to 1:5 year severity.

The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer the results of the baseline water quality test taken above and below the site of the proposed activity, and thereafter monthly testing results or at the frequency as may be specified by the Water Use Licence/General Authorisation, where applicable. No taking-over can be authorised until the water quality is shown to be at pre-construction levels or better.

(d) Vegetation management

The Contractor shall be responsible for the management of vegetation by protection of indigenous vegetation, especially identified protected species, and the prevention of alien vegetation germinating in areas disturbed by road construction activities within and outside the road reserve. This includes, for example, service roads, stockpile areas, stop/go facilities, windrows and wherever material generated for or from road construction has been stored temporarily. This responsibility shall continue for the duration of the defects notification period. The project specification may instruct the removal of CARA and/or NEMBA-listed category 1 and 2 alien species and planting of specified indigenous species.

(e) Dust control

Dust caused by construction activities shall be controlled by appropriate means and applied at sufficient frequency so as not to cause nuisance to adjacent habitation or affect farming activities or natural vegetation. Vegetation cover should also be kept for as long as possible to reduce the area of exposed surfaces. Dust emissions from batching and screening plants shall be subject to the relevant legislation and shall be the subject of inspection by the relevant authorities.

(f) Noise control

The Contractor shall endeavour to keep noise generating activities to a minimum. Noises that could cause a major disturbance, for instance blasting and crushing activities, should only be carried out during the hours prescribed by the conditions of contract (i.e. normal hours). Should such noise generating activities have to occur at any time outside normal hours the people in the vicinity of the noise-generating

C3-123

activity shall be warned about the noise well in advance and the activities kept to a minimum. Relevant legislation shall also be taken into consideration, and any practical mitigation measures adopted. No noise generating activity outside of normal hours, regardless of its proximity to residences, can take place without application to the Engineer for approval. The application shall be accompanied by the noise containment measures proposed.

(g) Energy consumption

The Contractor shall take into consideration the impacts of high energy consumption, both from a cost and emissions point of view. Energy use shall be minimised, and where possible, alternative energy sources such as solar utilised.

Furthermore, the Contractor shall measure and keep records of the consumption of carbon units his chosen method of construction produces in the execution of his programme. In conjunction with the Engineer who will provide complete cooperation, a month by month output shall be compiled and efforts made to see how these outputs can be curtailed and reduced.

C1007 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT OF CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES

The Contractor shall undertake “good housekeeping” practices during construction as stated in the COTO Standard Specifications for Roads and Bridges and the FIDIC conditions of contract. This will help avoid disputes on responsibility and allow for the smooth running of the contract as a whole. Good housekeeping extends beyond the wise practice of construction methods that leaves production in a safe state from the ravages of weather to include the care for and preservation of the environment within which the site is situated.

The construction activities addressed below shall become part of the Contractor’s obligations regarding his programme of work and incorporated into the required method statements for workmanship and quality control.

a) Site establishment

i) Site Plan

The site refers to an area with defined limits on which the project is located. The Contractor shall establish his construction camps, offices, workshops, staff accommodation and testing facilities on the site in a manner that does not adversely affect the environment. However, before any site establishment can begin, the Contractor shall submit to the ECO for his comments and to the Engineer for his approval, plans of the exact location, extent and construction details of these facilities and the impact mitigation measures the Contractor proposes to put in place.

The plans shall detail the locality as well as the layout of the waste management facilities for litter, kitchen refuse, sewage and workshop-derived effluents. The site offices should not be sited in close proximity to steep areas, as this will increase soil erosion. Preferred locations would be flat areas along the route. If the route traverses water courses, streams and rivers, it is recommended that the offices, and in particular the ablution facilities, aggregate stockpiles, spoil areas and hazardous material stockpiles are located as far away as possible from any water course. No camp establishment, including satellite camps, can be placed within 150 metres of an identified watercourse unless the Contractor has applied to DWS and received authorisation to do so. Regardless of the chosen site, the Contractor’s intended mitigation measures shall be indicated on the plan. The site plan shall have been submitted and approved before establishment commences. Detailed, electronic colour photographs shall be taken of the proposed site before any clearing may commence. These records are to be kept by the ECO and the Engineer for consultation during rehabilitation of the

site in order that rehabilitation is, as a minimum, done to a standard similar to pre-construction activities.

ii) Vegetation

The Contractor has a responsibility to inform his staff of the need to be vigilant against any practice that will have a harmful effect on vegetation.

The natural vegetation encountered on the site is to be conserved and left as intact as possible. Vegetation planted at the site shall be indigenous and in accordance with instructions issued by the Engineer. Only trees and shrubs directly affected by the works, and such others as may be indicated by the Engineer in writing, may be felled or cleared. In wooded areas where natural vegetation has been cleared out of necessity, the same species of indigenous trees as were occurring shall be re-established. Protected trees may not be removed without a permit from the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment.

Contravention of a notice of listed protected tree species under the National Forests Act, 1998 is regarded as a first category offence that may result in a fine or imprisonment for a period up to three years, or to both a fine and imprisonment. The DEO must be conversant with the latest gazette of declared protected trees.

Rehabilitation shall be undertaken using only indigenous tree, shrub and grass species. Special attention shall be given to any search and rescue operation identified during the environmental assessment process and any removal to an on-site nursery for continuous nurturing and protection and later replanting.

Any proclaimed weed or alien species that propagates during the contract period shall be cleared by hand before seeding.

Fires shall only be allowed in facilities or equipment specially constructed for this purpose. The need for a firebreak shall be determined in consultation with the Engineer and the relevant authorities, and if required a firebreak shall be cleared and maintained around the perimeter of the camp and office sites.

iii) Water management

Water for human consumption shall be available at the site offices and at other convenient locations on site.

All effluent water from the camp/office sites shall be disposed of in a properly designed and constructed system, situated so as not to adversely affect water sources (streams, rivers, pans, dams etc.). Only domestic type wastewater shall be allowed to enter this system.

iv) Heating and cooking fuel

The Contractor shall provide adequate facilities for his staff so that they are not encouraged to supplement their comforts on site by accessing what can be taken from the natural surroundings. The Contractor shall ensure that energy sources are available at all times for construction and supervision personnel for heating and cooking purposes.

b) Sewage management

Particular reference in the site establishment plan shall be given to the treatment of sewage generated at the site offices, site laboratory and staff accommodation and at all localities on the site where there will be a concentration of labour. Sanitary arrangements should be to the satisfaction of the Engineer, the local authorities and legal requirements.

Safe and effective sewage treatment will require one of the following sewage handling methods: septic tanks and soak-aways, dry-composting toilets such as “enviro loos”, or the use of chemical toilets which are supplied and maintained by a specialist service provider. The type of sewage management will depend on the geology of the area selected, the duration of the contract and proximity (availability) of providers of chemical toilets. Should a soak-away system be used, it shall not be closer than 800 metres from any natural water course or water retention system. The waste material generated from these facilities shall be serviced on a regular basis. The positioning of the chemical toilets shall be done in consultation with the Engineer. Should a soak-away system be used, it shall not be closer than 800 metres from any natural water course or water retention system and shall be approved by the Engineer in consultation with the ECO.

Toilets and latrines shall be easily accessible and shall be positioned within walking distance from wherever employees are employed on the works. Use of the veld for this purpose shall not, under any circumstances, be allowed.

Outside toilets shall be provided with locks and doors and shall be secured to prevent them from blowing over. The toilets shall also be placed outside areas susceptible to flooding. The Contractor shall arrange for regular emptying of toilets and shall be entirely responsible for enforcing their use and for maintaining such latrines in a clean, orderly and sanitary condition to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

c) Waste management

The Contractor’s intended methods for waste management shall be outlined and implemented at the outset of the contract and shall be to the satisfaction of the Engineer. A waste inventory shall be drawn up of all waste streams that will possibly be generated by the site/project and an integrated approach shall be taken to its management. Records shall be kept of all waste disposed. Opportunities for avoiding, reducing, reusing and recycling of materials should be identified upfront, as should constraints for their implementation. All personnel shall be instructed to dispose of all waste in the proper manner.

i) Solid waste

Solid waste shall be stored in an appointed area in covered, tip-proof metal drums or similar container for collection and disposal. Disposal of solid waste shall be at a licensed landfill site or at a site approved by the relevant authority in the event that an existing operating landfill site is not within reasonable distance from the project area. No waste shall be burned or buried at or near the project area.

ii) Litter

No littering by construction workers shall be allowed and particular emphasis on litter control measures shall apply at stop/go facilities.

During the construction period, the various contractors’ facilities shall be maintained in a neat and tidy condition and the site shall be kept free of litter. At all places of work the Contractor shall provide litter collection facilities for later safe disposal at approved sites.

iii) Hazardous waste

Hazardous waste such as oils shall be disposed of at an approved landfill site and proof of such disposal kept by the Contractor. Special care shall be taken to avoid spillage of bitumen products such as binders or pre-coating fluid to avoid water-soluble phenols from entering the ground or contaminating surface water.

Under no circumstances shall the spoiling of bituminous products on the site, over embankments, in borrow pits or any burying, be allowed. Unused or

rejected bituminous products shall be returned to the supplier's production plant. Any spillage of bituminous products shall be attended to immediately and affected areas shall be promptly reinstated to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

iv) Construction and demolition waste

The opportunity for recycling and reuse of construction and demolition waste as fill for road embankments, land reclamation and drainage control must first be explored and take priority before the option of declaring these materials a 'waste'.

The Contractor is encouraged to actively engage with authorities and landowners adjacent to the site and identify where such materials can be usefully deployed to repair existing environmentally damaged areas such as erosion dongas.

d) Control at the workshop

The Contractor's management and maintenance of his plant and machinery will be monitored according to the criteria given below.

i) Hazardous Material Storage

Petrochemicals, oils and identified hazardous substances shall only be stored under controlled conditions. All hazardous materials such as bitumen binders shall be stored in a secured, appointed area that is suitably fenced, bunded and has restricted entry. Storage of bituminous products shall only take place using suitable containers to the approval of the ECO and the Engineer.

The Contractor shall provide proof to the Engineer that relevant authorisation to store such substances has been obtained from the relevant authority. In addition, hazard signs indicating the nature of the stored materials shall be displayed on the storage facility or containment structure. Before containment or storage facilities can be erected, the Contractor shall furnish the Engineer with details of the preventative measures he proposes to install in order to mitigate pollution of the surrounding environment from leaks or spillage. The preferred method shall be a concrete floor that is bunded. Any deviation from the method will require proof from the relevant authority that the alternative method proposed is acceptable to that authority. The proposals shall also indicate the emergency procedures in the event of misuse or spillage that will negatively affect an individual or the environment.

ii) Fuel and gas storage

The Contractor shall take cognisance of the limits set by legislation for the storage of fuels and acquire the necessary authorisation for storage capacity beyond these. An adequate bund wall, 110% of volume, shall be provided for fuel and diesel areas to accommodate any leakage spillage or overflow of these substances. The area inside the bund wall shall be lined with an impervious lining to prevent infiltration of the fuel into the soil. Any leakage, spillage or overflow of fuel shall be attended to without delay.

Gas welding cylinders and LPG cylinders shall be stored chained in a secure, well-ventilated area exterior to any building wall.

iv) Oil and lubricant waste

Used oil, lubricants and cleaning materials from the maintenance of vehicles and machinery shall be collected in a holding tank and sent back to the supplier. Water and oil should be separated in an oil trap. Oils collected in this manner, shall be retained in a safe holding tank and removed from site by a specialist oil recycling company for disposal at approved waste disposal sites

C3-127

for toxic/hazardous materials. Oil collected by a mobile servicing unit shall be stored in the service unit's sludge tank and discharged into the safe holding tank for collection by a specialist oil recycling company.

Drip trays shall be used to collect any lubricants or fuel spilled where any vehicle and machinery are repaired or refuelled. The lubricants and fuel collected shall be handled as specified above.

All used filter materials shall be stored in a secure bin for disposal off site. Any contaminated soil shall be removed and replaced. Soils contaminated by oils and lubricants shall be collected and disposed of at a facility designated by the local authority to accept contaminated materials.

e) Clearing the site

In all areas where the Contractor intends to or is required to clear the natural vegetation and soil, either within the road reserve, or at designated or instructed areas outside the road reserve, a plan of action shall first be submitted to the Engineer for his approval. Working areas shall be clearly defined and demarcated on site to minimise the construction footprint. 'No-go- areas' and other sensitive areas shall also be clearly demarcated on site, and staff must be made aware of them.

The plan of action shall contain a photographic record and chainage/land reference of the areas to be disturbed. This shall be submitted to the Engineer for his records before any disturbance/stockpiling may occur. The record shall be comprehensive and clear, allowing for easy identification during inspections.

f) Soil management

i) Topsoil

Topsoil shall be removed from all areas where physical disturbance of the surface will occur and shall be stored and adequately protected. The contract will provide for the stripping and stockpiling of topsoil from the site for later re-use. Topsoil is the natural soil covering, including all the vegetation and organic matter. Depth may vary at each site. The areas to be cleared of topsoil shall include all storage areas. All topsoil stockpiles and windrows shall be maintained throughout the contract period in a weed-free condition. Weeds appearing on the stockpiled or windrowed topsoil shall be removed by hand. Soils contaminated by hazardous substances shall be disposed of at an approved waste disposal site. The topsoil stockpiles shall be stored, shaped and sited in such a way that they do not interfere with the flow of water to cause damming or erosion, or itself be eroded by the action of water.

The Contractor shall ensure that no topsoil is lost due to erosion – either by wind or water. Areas to be top-soiled and grassed shall be done so systematically to allow for quick cover and reduction in the chance of heavy topsoil losses due to unusual weather patterns. The Contractor's programme shall clearly show the proposed rate of progress of the application of topsoil and grassing. The Contractor shall be held responsible for the replacement, at his own cost, for any unnecessary loss of topsoil due to his failure to work according to the progress plan approved by the Engineer. The Contractor's responsibility shall also extend to the clearing of drainage or water systems within and beyond the boundaries of the road reserve that may have been affected by such negligence.

ii) Subsoil

The subsoil is the layer of soil immediately beneath the topsoil. It shall be removed, to a depth instructed by the Engineer, and if not used for road building it shall be stored and maintained separately from the topsoil so that neither stockpile is contaminated by the other. This soil shall be used for

C3-128

rehabilitation purposes by first spreading it over the excavated slopes without interfering with or contaminating the stockpiled topsoil.

Whilst in stockpile it shall be maintained free from erosion and weed infestation in the same way as for topsoil stockpile maintenance.

g) Earthworks and layerworks

This section includes all construction activities that involve the mining of all materials, and their subsequent placement, stockpile, spoil, treatment or batching, for use in the permanent works, or temporary works in the case of deviations. Before any stripping prior to the commencement of construction, the Contractor shall have complied with the requirements of this EMP. In addition, the Contractor shall take cognisance of the requirements set out below.

i) Quarries and borrow pits

The Contractor's attention is drawn to the requirement of the Department of Mineral Resources, that before entry into any quarry or borrow pit, an Environmental Authorisation for the establishment, operation and closure of a quarry or borrow pit shall have been approved by the Department where applicable. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that he is in possession of the authorisation prior to entry into the quarry or borrow pit. The conditions imposed by the relevant authorisation are legally binding on the Contractor and may be more extensive and explicit than the requirements of this specification. In the event of any conflict occurring between the requirements of the specific authorisation and this EMP, the former shall apply.

ii) Excavation, hauling and placement

The Contractor shall provide the ECO and the Engineer with detailed plans of his intended construction processes prior to starting any cut or fill or layer. The plans shall detail measures by which the impacts of pollution (noise, dust, litter, fuel, oil and sewage), erosion, vegetation destruction and deformation of landscape will be prevented, contained and rehabilitated. Particular attention shall also be given to the impact that such activities will have on the adjacent built environment. The Contractor shall demonstrate his "good housekeeping", particularly with respect to closure at the end of every day so that the site is left in a safe condition.

iii) Spoil sites

The Contractor shall be responsible for the safe siting, operation, maintenance and closure of any spoil site he uses during the contract period, including the defects notification period. This shall include existing spoil sites that are being re-entered. Before spoil sites may be used proposals for their locality, intended method of operation, maintenance and rehabilitation shall be given to the ECO for his/her comments and to the Engineer for his approval. The location of these spoil sites shall have signed approval from the affected landowner before submission to the ECO and the Engineer. No spoil site shall be located within 50m of any watercourse. A photographic record shall be kept of all spoil sites for monitoring purposes. This includes before the site is used and after re-vegetation.

The use of approved spoil sites for the disposal of any waste shall be prohibited. Spoil sites will be shaped to fit the natural topography. Depending on availability these sites shall receive a minimum of 75mm topsoil and be grassed with the recommended seed mixture. Appropriate grassing measures to minimise soil erosion shall be undertaken by the Contractor. This may include both strip and full sodding. The Contractor may motivate to the Engineer for other acceptable stabilising methods. The Engineer may only approve a completed spoil site at the end of the defects notification period upon receipt from the Contractor of a landowner's clearance notice.

C3-129

iv) Stockpiles

The Contractor shall plan his activities so that materials excavated from borrow pits and cuttings, in so far as possible, can be transported direct to and placed at the point where it is to be used. However, should temporary stockpiling become necessary, the areas for the stockpiling of excavated and imported material shall be indicated and demarcated on the site plan submitted in writing to the Engineer for his approval. The Contractor's proposed measures for prevention of environmental damage, containment and subsequent rehabilitation shall also be submitted.

The areas chosen shall have no naturally occurring indigenous trees and shrubs present that may be damaged during operations. Care shall be taken to preserve all vegetation in the immediate area of these temporary stockpiles. During the life of the stockpiles the Contractor shall at all times ensure that they are positioned and sloped to create the least visual impact, constructed and maintained so as to avoid erosion of the material and contamination of surrounding environment and kept free from all alien/undesirable vegetation.

After the stockpiled material has been removed, the site shall be re-instated to its original condition. No foreign material generated/deposited during construction shall remain on site. Areas affected by stockpiling shall be landscaped, top soiled, grassed and maintained at the Contractor's cost until clearance from the Engineer and the landowner is received.

Material milled from the existing road surface that is temporarily stockpiled in areas approved by the Engineer within the road reserve, shall be subject to the same condition as other stockpiled materials. Excess materials from windrows, in situ milling or any leftover material from road construction activities may not be swept off the road and left unless specifically instructed to do so in the contract documentation or under instruction from the Engineer.

The ECO shall comment on and the Engineer shall approve the areas for stockpiling and disposal of construction rubble before any operation commences and shall approve their closure only when they have been satisfactorily rehabilitated.

v) Blasting activities

Wherever blasting activity is required on the site (including quarries and/or borrow pits) the Contractor shall rigorously adhere to the relevant statutes and regulations that control the use of explosives.

h) On site plant

i) Crusher, screening plants and concrete batching plants

Crushing plants and concrete batching plants, whether sited inside or outside of defined quarry or borrow pit areas, shall be subject to the requirements of the applicable industrial legislation that governs gas and dust emissions into the atmosphere. Such sites will be the subject of regular inspections by the relative authorities during the life of the project. In addition, the selection, entry onto, operation, maintenance, closure and rehabilitation of such sites shall be the same as for those under section C1007(g)(i) of this EMP, with the exception that the Contractor shall provide additional measures to prevent, contain and rehabilitate against environmental damage from toxic/hazardous substances. In this regard the Contractor shall provide plans that take into account such additional measures as concrete floors, bunded storage facilities, linings to drainage channels and settlement dams. Ultimate approval of these measures shall be from the relevant authority, as shall approval of closure. The Engineer will assist the Contractor in his applications to the relevant authority.

Screening activities shall be undertaken so that dust and noise is minimised. This can be done by carefully choosing the site for the activity, and by using slightly damp material.

Effluent from concrete batch plants and crusher plants shall be reused where possible or treated in a suitable designated sedimentation dam to the legally required standards to prevent surface and groundwater pollution. The designs of such a facility should be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

ii) Asphalt Plant

Asphalt plants shall be subject to the applicable legislation that governs establishment and operation of batching plants. The Contractor shall be responsible to obtain the necessary permit from the relevant authority.

Operation of the plant shall conform to the same requirements as for a crushing plant or concrete batching plant under C1007(h)(i) above.

C1008 AREAS OF SPECIFIC IMPORTANCE

Any area, as determined and identified within the project documents as sensitive or of special interest within the site shall be treated according to the express instructions contained in these specifications or the specific environmental authorisation, as well as the approved EMPr. The Contractor may offer alternative solutions to the Engineer in writing should he consider that construction will be affected in any way by the hindrance of the designated sensitive area or feature. However, the overriding principle is that such defined areas requiring protection should not be changed. Every effort to identify such areas within the site will have been made prior to the project going out to tender. The discovery of other sites with archaeological or historical interest that have not been identified shall receive ad hoc treatment.

a) Archaeological sites

If an artefact on site is uncovered, work in the immediate vicinity shall be stopped immediately. The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions to prevent any person from removing or damaging any such article and shall immediately upon discovery thereof inform the Engineer of such discovery. The South African Heritage Resource Agency (SAHRA) is to be contacted, and a SAHRA-registered archaeological consultant may undertake the necessary work involved in confirming the find and advising on how it should be preserved or removed. Work may only resume once clearance is given in writing by the archaeologist. (Read with FIDIC condition of contract clause 4.24)

If a grave or midden is uncovered on site then all work in the immediate vicinity of the graves/middens shall be stopped, and the Engineer informed of the discovery. The South African Heritage Resource Agency and the South African Police Services (SAPS) should be contacted and in the case of graves, arrangements made for an undertaker to carry out exhumation and reburial. The undertaker will, together with SAHRA, be responsible for attempts to contact family of the deceased and for the place where the exhumed remains can be re-interred.

C1009 REHABILITATION

The Contractor shall be responsible for the re-establishment of grass within the road reserve boundaries for all areas disturbed during construction. This includes, for example, service roads, stockpile areas, stop/go facilities, windrows and wherever material generated for, or from, construction has to be stored temporarily, and designated or instructed areas outside the road reserve. It also includes the area where site offices were erected which may require rehabilitation at the end of the contract. All construction material, including concrete slabs and barbecue (braai) areas shall be removed from the site on

completion of the contract unless written approval from the relevant landowner demonstrates it is to be left in place.

Responsibility for re-establishment of vegetation shall extend until expiry of the defects notification period. However, SANRAL reserves the right to continue holding retention monies (or not releasing guarantees in lieu of retention) depending upon the state of cover at the end of the defects notification period. Such extension may continue until closure of the relevant quarry or borrow pit has been secured,

Rehabilitation of affected areas should be undertaken as early as possible when the relevant activities are done in order to reduce further environmental damage. All re-vegetation should be undertaken using indigenous vegetation. The standard of rehabilitation should be to the satisfaction of the Engineer and the relevant authorities. The Department of Minerals Resources will only issue closure certificates for borrow pits and quarries when they are satisfied with the rehabilitation undertaken. It should also be noted that in some cases there is a requirement for a final environmental audit covering the extent of the project.

C1010 RECORD KEEPING

The Engineer and the DEO will continuously monitor the Contractor's adherence to the approved impact prevention procedures and the DEO shall submit regular written reports to the ECO and to the Engineer at least once a month. The DEO will report the environmental compliance performance of the project at regular site meeting. The Engineer shall issue to the Contractor a notice of non-compliance whenever transgressions are observed. The DEO shall document the nature and magnitude of the non-compliance in a designated register, the action taken to discontinue the non-compliance, the action taken to mitigate its effects and the results of the actions. The non-compliance shall be documented and reported to the Engineer in the monthly report.

Copies of all authorisations shall be kept on site and made available for inspection by visiting officials from SANRAL, relevant authorities or internal/external auditors.

C1011 COMPLIANCE AND PENALTIES

The Contractor shall act immediately when a notice of non-compliance is received and correct whatever is the cause for the issuing of the notice. Complaints received regarding activities on the construction site pertaining to the environment shall be recorded in a dedicated register and the response noted with the date and action taken. This record shall be submitted with the monthly reports and an oral report given at the monthly site meetings.

Any non-compliance/omissions with the procedures in this EMP, environmental authorisations and the approved EMPr constitute a breach of the Conditions of Contract. Regulatory financial penalties imposed on SANRAL shall be passed onto the defaulting parties.

C1012 PROJECT SPECIFIC CONDITIONS

The EMPr is attached under/as Volume 6

SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL ROADS AGENCY SOC LIMITED

CONTRACT SANRAL S.004-005-2020/1

FOR ISANDLWANA ROADS UPGRADE – PACKAGE 1 (UPGRADE OF PROVINCIAL ROAD P372)

SECTION D: STAKEHOLDER AND COMMUNITY LIAISON, AND TARGETED LABOUR AND TARGETED ENTERPRISES UTILISATION AND DEVELOPMENT

TABLE OF CONTENTS	PAGE
<u>D1001</u> <u>SCOPE</u>	C3-134
<u>D1002</u> <u>DEFINITIONS AND APPLICABLE LEGISLATION</u>	C3-135
<u>D1003</u> <u>TARGET GROUP PARTICIPATION</u>	C3-140
<u>D1004</u> <u>STAKEHOLDER AND COMMUNITY LIAISON AND SOCIAL FACILITATION</u>	C3-145
<u>D1005</u> <u>MOBILISATION PERIOD</u>	C3-153
<u>D1006</u> <u>THE ROLE OF THE ENGINEER</u>	C3-155
<u>D1007</u> <u>TENDER PROCESS FOR TARGETED ENTERPRISES</u>	C3-157
<u>D1008</u> <u>GENERAL RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE CONTRACTOR TOWARDS TARGETED ENTERPRISES</u>	C3-166
<u>D1009</u> <u>WORK SUITABLE FOR EXECUTION BY TARGETED ENTERPRISES</u>	C3-172
<u>D1010</u> <u>TRAINING, COACHING, GUIDANCE, MENTORING AND ASSISTANCE</u>	C3-172
<u>D1011</u> <u>LABOUR ENHANCED CONSTRUCTION</u>	C3-180
<u>D1012</u> <u>COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</u>	C3-180
<u>D1013</u> <u>MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT</u>	C3-181

D1001 SCOPE

Section D of the Specifications describes the structured engagement with project Stakeholders and affected Communities to the project. It also guides the selection and the enhanced utilisation and development of Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises.

D1001.01 Principles for Project Liaison, Sub-contracting, and Labour Sourcing in SANRAL Projects (Fourteen Point Plan)

The scope of the work described in this Section D of the Specifications shall be based on the Employer's 14 principles for project liaison, sub-contracting and labour sourcing in all SANRAL projects, which are stipulated below:

1. *SANRAL will establish a Project Liaison Committee (PLC) for every project to create a platform for project communication with the aim to facilitate successful, works execution, sub-contracting, procurement, participation with MOU partners, supply of material, services and goods and employment facilitation.*
2. *SANRAL will chair PLCs and provide secretarial support through the Consulting Engineer or its Agent. Representation on the PLC will comprise: SANRAL; the Contractor; the Consulting Engineer or SANRAL's Agent; business representatives; traditional authority representatives; provincial and municipal government representatives (not politicians); community representatives; and any other critical local stakeholder that may be deemed necessary by SANRAL. While serving on the PLC, PLC members must declare any conflict of interest and recuse themselves if requested by the PLC Chairperson.*
3. *The selection of a Project Liaison Officer (PLO) who will be employed by the Consulting Engineer, must be acknowledged, and supported by the PLC.*
4. *The definition of a target area (sometimes referred to as a local area or traffic area) will be determined by SANRAL in consultation with the PLC.*
5. *The setup of database for contractors, sub-contractors, consultants, and suppliers will be conducted with the input and support of the PLC. The final database will be disseminated to the PLC. The entities on the database must be assisted by the Consulting Engineer and the Contractor to be compliant with the relevant legislation required to conduct work for a SANRAL project.*
6. *The setup of databases for local labour in the target area will be done with the input and support of the PLC. The final list will be disseminated to the PLC. Entities on the database must be registered on the National Treasury Central Supplier Database (CSD). A system of labour selection from the database must be agreed at the PLC.*
7. *The databases for sub-contracting will be handed over to the Contractor for open tender processes. The labour database will be disseminated to the PLC and handed over to the Contractor to use for recruitment of local labour.*
8. *Tender processes for sub-contracting must be conducted by Contractor using government principles (e.g. public opening of received bids, announcement of bidders and prices). Winning bidders shall be tabled by the Contractor in the PLC meeting for information purposes.*
9. *Appeals to the tender process must be escalated to SANRAL for an independent review which will be facilitated by the Transformation Unit.*
10. *Capability assessments of sub-contractors and suppliers will be done with the input and support of the PLC, prior to the sub-contract tender stage commencing, to identify any deficiencies in skills and experience. For labour, skills assessments will be done at recruitment stage.*
11. *Sub-contractor development support and training must be coordinated and conducted prior to the sub-contract tender stage commencing, with the input and support of the PLC.*
12. *The PLC may identify works areas that are deliverable by local service providers, and areas where capabilities are not available locally. All works areas where capabilities are not available locally will be imported and local service providers will be given an opportunity to learn.*

13. *The PLC and Consulting Engineer must ensure that formal contracting arrangements between the main contractor and the sub-contractor are in place in all projects.*
14. *Communication will be streamlined through the PLC and used to manage expectations of local business and communities.*

These principles must be applied to facilitate better project level liaison with project Stakeholders and affected Communities. In addition, these principles serve to ensure communication and transparency in the execution of the Works and to facilitate inclusivity in the allocation of projects to benefit black business and local communities.

D1002 DEFINITIONS AND APPLICABLE LEGISLATION

The definitions and legislation listed below informs the requirements of this Section D of the Specifications for Stakeholder and Community Liaison, Targeted Labour employment and Targeted Enterprise sub-contracting.

D1002.01 Definitions

Unless inconsistent with the context, in these specifications, the following words, terms or expressions shall have the meanings hereby assigned to them:

a) Business Coaching

Business coaching establishes an atmosphere of mutual trust, respect, responsibility and accountability to motivate the emerging business owner and his team. To that end, the business coach must conduct an ethical and competent practice, based on appropriate professional experience and business knowledge.

b) Community¹

South African Citizens, as defined in terms of the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), who permanently reside within the Target and Project Area(s) of the project.

c) Contract Participation

A process by which the Employer implements Government's objectives by setting targets to enhance Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises' utilisation and development, which the Contractor shall achieve as a minimum.

d) Contract Participation Goal (CPG)²

- i) In the case of Targeted Enterprises, including manufacturers and suppliers, the amount equal to the value of goods, services and works for which the principal Contractor contracts to engage Targeted Enterprises in the performance of the Contract, expressed as a percentage of the tender value excluding escalation, contingency and value added tax associated with the targeting strategy that is identified in the Specification Data; or
- ii) In the case of Targeted Labour:
 - a. the sum of the wages and allowances, for which the principal Contractor, Sub-contractor or Targeted Enterprises contract to engage Targeted Labour in the performance of the Contract, expressed as a

¹ CIDB Standard for Contract Participation Goals for Targeting Enterprises and Labour through Construction Work Contracts, 31 October 2017, as adapted from SANS 10845, Suite for Construction Procurement, 2015.

² Adapted from the CIDB Standard for Contract Participation Goals for Targeting Enterprises and Labour through Construction Work Contracts, 31 October 2017, as adapted from SANS 10845-5:2015 and SANS 10845-8:2015 SANS 10845, Suite for Construction Procurement, 2015.

- percentage of the contract amount associated with the targeting strategy that is identified in the Specification Data; or
- b. the amount equal to the person days worked for which the principal Contractor, Sub-contractors or Targeted Enterprises contract to engage Targeted Labour expressed as a percentage of the total person days worked associated with the targeting strategy that is identified in the Specification Data.

e) Contract Participation Goal Plan (CPG Plan)

The plan which outlines how the Contractor intends to achieve the various CPG targets as stated in the Contract Data and includes the detail of the Targeted Enterprise work programme, as well as the contents and value of the work packages. See Appendix 8 for the CPG Plan template.

f) Contract Participation Performance (CPP)

The measure of the Contractor's progress in achieving the CPG.

g) Contract Skills Development Goals (CSDG)³

The number of hours or head count of skills development opportunities that a Contractor contracts to provide in relation to work directly related to the contract or order up to:

- i) completion in the case of a professional service contract;
- ii) the end of the service period in the case of a service contract; and
- iii) practical completion in the case of an engineering and construction works contract.

h) Designated Group⁴

Unless otherwise permissible in terms of procurement regulations or the PPPFA, "Designated Group" means:

- i) black designated groups;
- ii) black people;
- iii) women; or
- iv) people with disabilities;

i) Domestic Sub-contractors

A Domestic Sub-contractor is one in whose selection and appointment the Employer traditionally plays no part in other than simply giving consent when that is required under the terms of the main contract. The appointment of the sub-contractor is treated as something entirely for the benefit of Main Contractor and is a purely "domestic matter".

j) Final Contract Value

Final Contract Value as defined under Section D1003.04 - Contract Participation Goal (CPG) of the Specifications, also means Contract Price as defined in FIDIC, sub-clause 1.1.4.2, (excluding CPA, adjustments for reduced payments, Rise and Fall adjustments, penalties, and VAT)

k) Guidance

Guidance is anticipating where one might go wrong, or where one is doing a task in a complicated, inefficient or ineffective way, and giving help, advice and direction as

³ CIDB Standard for Developing Skills through Infrastructure Contracts, July 2020 (or latest version).

⁴ Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2017, Government Gazette N. 40553, 20 January 2017.

to how to achieve a better result. Guidance is mostly given by a person in the direct reporting line but can be given by anyone. Guidance is not imparting skills but suggesting ways to improve performance.

l) Labour

Persons:

- i) who are employed by the Contractor or a Sub-contractor in the performance of the Contract; and
- ii) whose monthly earnings are derived from hours worked for a fixed hourly rate which is adjusted from time to time by legislation (as a statutory minimum) and the Contractor's or Sub-contractor's employment policies;
- iii) but who are not Targeted Labour as stated in the Specification Data.

The personnel employed by the suppliers of goods and material are not defined as "Labour" for the purposes of this Contract.

m) Mentoring

Mentoring is a professional relationship in which an experienced businessperson assists another by giving advice and imparting their knowledge in developing special skills and knowledge that will enhance the less experienced businessperson's professional and personal growth. The objective is to equip the emerging business owner and his team to improve their decision-making skills, being focussed and make positive progress quickly.

n) Mobilisation Period

The period between the Commencement Date and the date of Access to Site), which period (duration) is stated in the Contract Data. This part of Section D of the Specifications describes the requirements of the Mobilisation Period.

o) Project Area

The area through which the road under construction traverse or which is adjacent to and/or in proximity to project operations.

Based on market research and/or requisite resources availability, Project Areas other than defined above may be identified where preference would be given to Targeted Enterprises for sub-contracting opportunities.

p) Project Liaison Committee (PLC)⁵

The Committee that represents the Employer, Engineer, Contractor, project Stakeholders and the Communities affected by the project. It is important to note that:

- i) elected and/or nominated political office bearers shall not be members of the PLC, and
- ii) the Engineer and Contractor becomes members of the PLC on their appointment and participate in the Committee within the scope of their respective roles and responsibilities.

⁵ CIDB Standard for Minimum Requirements for Engaging Contractors and Sub-Contractors on construction Works Contracts, 31 October 2017.

q) Project Liaison Officer (PLO)⁶

The person who acts as the liaison officer for the project. The PLO facilitates the selection of Targeted Labour to be employed by the Contractor and attends to the day-to-day project, Stakeholder, and Community matters that impact on the parties to the PLC.

r) Stakeholders⁷

Any Stakeholder listed in the Employer's Communication Policy who is affected by the Employer's operations in the Project Area(s) and/or who has an interest or concern in the project, either as a decision maker, participant or affected party and may include, amongst others, the following entities:

- i) Relevant Provincial departments;
- ii) Relevant Municipal departments;
- iii) Traditional authorities;
- iv) Community interest groups;
- v) Organised youth representation;
- vi) Organised women representation;
- vii) Organised disabled people representation;
- viii) Other structured community groups such as religion, education, farming, etc.
- ix) Local transport industry forums, e.g. Bus and taxi;
- x) Business sector forums;
- xi) Road user forums;
- xii) Environmental interest groups;
- xiii) Road safety interest groups;
- xiv) Any other recognised relevant and representative structure.

s) Sub-contractor

An entity appointed by the Contractor to execute a portion of the Works as defined in the Conditions of Contract under FIDIC subclause 1.1.2.8. This includes both Domestic Sub-contractors and Targeted Enterprises.

t) Target Area

The geographic area defined in the Specification Data for Targeted Labour and which typically are:

- i) one or more Provinces;
- ii) one or more Metropolitan or District Municipalities;
- iii) one or more Local Municipalities;
- iv) one or more Wards that are predominantly located within the Project Area;
- v) one or more of the areas listed in the definition of Designated Groups.

u) Targeted Enterprise⁸

A Targeted Enterprise is an entity to which the Contractor sub-contracts a percentage of the contract value as a condition of contract and which is:

- i) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people; or
- ii) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people who are youth;
or
- iii) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people who are women;
or
- iv) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people with disabilities;
or

⁶ CIDB Standard for Minimum Requirements for Engaging Contractors and Sub-Contractors on construction Works Contracts, 31 October 2017; CLO definition.

⁷ Derived from SANRAL communication Policy, March 2018.

⁸ Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2017 Pertaining to the Preferential; Procurement Framework Act, Act no 5 of 2000.

- v) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people who are military veterans; or
- vi) an EME or QSE which is 51% owned by black people living in rural or underdeveloped areas or townships; or
- vii) a cooperative which is at least 51% owned by black people.

In addition, Targeted Enterprises must be:

- a. CIDB registered where applicable;
- b. registered with National Treasury's Central Supplier Database;
- c. tax compliant prior to award of the sub-contract; and
- d. COIDA compliant prior to award of the sub-contract where applicable.

Targeted Enterprises are also Sub-contractors as defined in the Conditions of Contract under FIDIC subclause 1.1.2.8.

v) Targeted Enterprise Construction Manager (TE Construction Manager)

The full-time dedicated staff member or sub-service provider appointed by the Contractor to develop, implement and monitor the training, development and support of Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises. The Targeted Enterprise Construction Manager also mentors, guides and coaches the Targeted Enterprises.

w) Targeted Enterprise Monitor

The Targeted Enterprise Monitor is an independent service provider, or individual, appointed by the Employer's Transformation Unit, to audit the Contractor and his TE Construction Manager's activities with respect to their obligations to Targeted Enterprises.

x) Targeted Enterprise Procurement Coordinator (TE Procurement Coordinator)

The staff member or sub-service provider appointed by the Contractor to facilitate the procurement of Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors.

y) Target Group

It is a group of entities and/or persons selected from the Designated Group as defined in the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act Regulations, 2017, and may include both Targeted Enterprises and Targeted Labour.

z) Targeted Labour⁹

Persons:

- i) who are unemployed; and
- ii) who are then employed by the Contractor or a Sub-contractor (including Targeted Enterprises) in the performance of this Contract; and
- iii) whose monthly earnings are derived from hours worked for a fixed hourly rate which is adjusted from time to time by legislation (as a statutory minimum) and the Contractor's or Sub-contractor's or Targeted Enterprise's employment policies; and
- iv) permanently reside in the Target Area(s) or who are recognized as being residents of the Target Area(s) based on identification and association with, and recognition by, the residents of the Target Area(s); and
- v) who are stated as being Targeted Labour in the Specification Data.

The personnel employed by the suppliers of goods and material are not defined as "Targeted Labour" for the purposes of this Contract.

⁹ SANS 10845-7:2015, definition 2.12

aa) Trainee Targeted Enterprise

A Targeted Enterprise as defined in this Section D of the Specifications but which is selected and sub-contracted as a Trainee in terms of the Community Development Project associated with this Contract.

bb) Training

Training refers to the process of teaching a Trainee, usually in a classroom or simulated work environment situation where principles, theory, knowledge and skills are taught, and demonstrations are given. Assignments are set to ensure that the Trainee can apply what has been taught. Training is done by a specialist in the subject, and who is qualified and accredited to train. The objective is to improve the competency of the Trainee.

cc) Training and Skills Development Programme

The programme which outlines how the Contractor intends to achieve the CSDG targets, as per Section D1010 of the Specifications and in line with the CIDB Standard for Developing Skills through Infrastructure Contracts (refer to latest version on cidb.org.za), by applying the various training methods described in Section D1010 of the Specifications.

D1002.02 Applicable Legislation, Regulations and Standards

The following Acts, as amended from time to time, are predominant amongst those which apply to the Construction Industry and are listed here for reference purposes only:

- a) The Constitution of South Africa;
- b) Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act No. 1 of 1999);
- c) Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act No. 5 of 2000) and its latest applicable regulations;
- d) Construction Industry Development Board Act, 2000 (Act No. 38 of 2000);
- e) Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act No. 53 of 2003);
- f) The South African National Roads Agency Limited and National Roads Act, 1998 (Act No. 7 of 1998);
- g) The Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act No. 97 of 1998);
- h) The Skills Development Levies Act, 1999 (Act no. 9 of 1999);
- i) The amended Construction Sector Codes published in Notice 931 of 2017 of Government Gazette No. 41287 on 1 December 2017 by the Department of Trade and Industry;
- j) The National Small Enterprises Act, 1996 (Act 102 of 1996) as amended.

The following Standards and Practice Notes, as amended from time to time, are applicable in terms of Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises and are used fully or portions thereof in this Section D of the Specifications:

- i) SANS 10845: 2015, Parts 5, 7 and 8; and
- ii) CIDB Standard for Contract Participation Goals for Targeted Enterprises and Labour through Construction Works Contracts (refer to latest version on www.cidb.org.za).

D1003 TARGET GROUP PARTICIPATION

This part of Section D of the Specifications describes the Employer's requirements for the establishment of Target Group databases from which participants in the project will be selected for employment and sub-contracting.

It also describes the measurement of, and penalties or bonus to be applied, with respect to the CPG as defined in the Specification Data.

D1003.01 Objectives of Target Group Participation

Amongst others, the key objectives of Government are to extend economic opportunities and build entrepreneurial capacity in rural and underdeveloped areas and townships by:

- a) optimising the utilisation of local resources in the Project Area;
- b) developing these local resources in the execution of the project; and
- c) maximising the amount of funds retained within the Project Area.

To give effect to these objectives the Contractor shall, over the full duration of the contract, from site establishment up to the completion of the works:

- i) employ Targeted Labour from the Target Area(s) as stated in the Specification Data; and
- ii) sub-contract Targeted Enterprises as stated in the Specification Data; and
- iii) give preference to Targeted Enterprises which are from rural and underdeveloped areas and townships within the Project Area(s).

D1003.02 Targeted Labour Database

A system for the recruitment of Targeted Labour shall be agreed with the PLC prior to the commencement of labour recruitment. This system shall be fair and transparent.

Based on the system for recruitment, a Targeted Labour Database shall be compiled by the Contractor, with the assistance of the PLO, and the input and support of the PLC, for the Target Area(s) as stated in the Specification Data. If necessary, the assistance of the Department of Labour may be called upon to provide a labour database of labourers with the required skills and within the required designated groups and Target Area. Once the Database has been disseminated to the PLC, it shall be utilised to facilitate the selection of Targeted Labour as per the resources and skills required by the Contractor during the different construction stages.

The Targeted Labour Database shall be updated as and when required to reflect new employment seekers in the labour market.

Only Labour recruited from the Targeted Labour Database will be measured for Contract Participation Performance (CPP).

D1003.03 Targeted Enterprise Database

The Contractor shall, with the assistance and inputs of the PLC, compile a Targeted Enterprise Database from which Targeted Enterprises shall be sub-contracted to construct portions of the work as described in this part of Section D of the Specifications.

a) Market Analysis and Requisite Resources Availability Audit

The Contractor shall conduct a market analysis and requisite resources availability audit to determine the availability, expertise, abilities, and proficiency of Targeted Enterprises in the Project Area.

To inform the market analysis and requisite resources availability audit, the Contractor shall, as a minimum, use the National Treasury's Central Supplier Database (CSD) which can be obtained from the Employer's Supply Chain Management department via the Project Manager, as well as the CIDB contractor database (if applicable).

The market analysis and requisite resources availability audit, and all updates thereof for the duration of the Contract, shall be submitted to the Engineer and the Employer's Project Manager in a format acceptable to the Employer.

Following the market analysis and a requisite resources availability audit, the Contractor shall apply the CPG Target Group criteria in the Specification Data to compile a **preliminary** Targeted Enterprise Database (see D1003.03(c) below).

b) Call for an Expression of Interest

In addition to the CSD and the CIDB database, the Contractor shall call for an expression of interest from Targeted Enterprises in the Project Area. The call for an expression of interest shall outline the anticipated eligibility, functionality, preference and compliance criteria, as well as the anticipated Works content.

c) Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database

Based on the information obtained from the CSD, CIDB and the call for an expression of interest, the Contractor shall compile a Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database.

The purposes of the Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database are:

- i) for the Contractor to determine if the required resources and skills to execute the identified Targeted Enterprise work packages are available in the Project Area(s);
- ii) for the PLC to verify that Targeted Enterprises on the Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database are authentic in terms of the Specification Data and other Database criteria, and
- iii) for the PLC to alert prospective Targeted Enterprises that are not on the Preliminary Database of the opportunity.

Based on the market analysis and requisite resources availability audit, and the information obtained from the call for an expression of interest, additional criteria for the Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database may be tabled by the PLC to the Contractor to ensure Target Group participation as intended by the Employer.

d) Final Targeted Enterprise Database

Once the Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database has been disseminated to the PLC, the Contractor shall invite Targeted Enterprises to tender for the Targeted Enterprise work packages. The Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database shall remain a "live database" until the day of tender closure when a print-out of the CSD, based on the Database criteria, shall become the **Final** Targeted Enterprise Database for the tender and shall be disseminated to the PLC.

Any Targeted Enterprise may respond to the invitation to tender, but preference shall be given to those Targeted Enterprises that satisfy the tender criteria.

The Targeted Enterprise Database shall be updated at every instance that a new sub-contract tender or group of similar sub-contract tenders are to be let for Targeted Enterprise work packages.

Targeted Enterprises within the Project Area shall be encouraged and assisted to register on the CSD and to become compliant with all other statutory requirements.

D1003.04 Contract Participation Goal (CPG)

The CPG is the monetary value of the participation targets set by the Employer for Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises expressed as a percentage of the Final Contract Value. The participation targets comprise of the following:

% Targeted Labour (TL_{Total%}) = the sum of the % Targeted Labour employed by the Contractor, Sub-contractors and Targeted Enterprises.

% Targeted Enterprises (TE_{Total%}) = the % Targeted Enterprises, including the % Targeted Labour employed by Targeted Enterprises.

While the individual participation targets, i.e. TL_{Total%} and TE_{Total%} must be met, the total CPG (CPG_{Total}) is not the sum thereof, but are calculated as follows:

CPG_{Total} = Final Contract Value x [TL_{Total%} + (TE_{Total%} - Targeted Labour employed by the Targeted Enterprises)]

where

Final Contract Value is = the total value of the Contractor's final certified work measured at the date of issue of the Taking-Over Certificate. The Final Contract Value includes the value of scheduled work and extra work, but excludes any Contract Price Adjustment and adjustments for reduced payments, Rise and Fall, Retention Money, Penalties and VAT.

The Contractor shall strive to distribute and implement the participation targets and opportunities equally and continuously over the duration of the Contract. Where the Contractor deems such an equal and continuous distribution of the participation targets to be unachievable, he shall provide reasons and motivate it clearly in the preliminary CPG Plan submitted with the tender document.

Both the Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprise participation targets may consist of sub-targets which are stipulated in the Specification Data, clause D1003. The Contractor is required to achieve these individual sub-targets. If the Contractor fails to achieve any one of the individual sub-targets and does not substantiate that such failure is due to quantitative underruns, the elimination by the Employer of items contracted to targeted enterprises, or any other reason beyond the Contractor's control which may be acceptable to the Employer, penalties shall apply as stated in Section D1003.05 of the Specifications, and as provided for in clause 8.7 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract.

The value of the Provisional Sum scheduled under item D10.05 will not necessarily make up the full value of the work required to meet the minimum target set by the Employer for Targeted Enterprises. It is the Contractor's responsibility to assess the work required to meet the targets and, if necessary, to engage additional Targeted Enterprises to execute work on the Contract as well to ensure that the minimum targets are achieved.

D1003.05 Contract Participation Performance (CPP)

The CPP is the monetary value of the Contractor's actual progress towards achievement of the CPG calculated as follows:

CPP = CPG_{Actual}
= total monetary value (excluding VAT) of Targeted Labour employed by the Contractor + total monetary value (excluding VAT) of Targeted Enterprises contribution, including Targeted Labour employed by the Targeted Enterprises.

The Contractor's CPP shall be monitored monthly to determine the extent to which it is striving to achieve the CPG. The basis of monitoring shall be a comparison of the actual expenditure on Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises with the planned expenditure for Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises as per the accepted CPG Plan. Monthly

returns, in the format required by the Employer, shall be submitted by the Contractor with each interim Payment Certificate.

To assist in the measurement of the CPP the Contractor shall include the envisaged CPG programme in its initial contract programme which is to be submitted within 28 days after the Commencement Date. The CPG programme shall be updated in the accepted construction programme on acceptance of the CPG plan and with every subsequent revision.

As an incentive to encourage the Contractor to exceed the CPG, a bonus is offered, measured as follows:

a) CPP Bonus

$$\text{The bonus} = 0.25 \times (\text{CPP} - \text{CPG}_{\text{Total}})$$

Any bonus due (or portion thereof) shall be calculated on the Final Contract Value. No bonus shall apply if either the Targeted Labour, Targeted Enterprises and/or any individual sub-targets for Target Groups are not reached.

b) CPP Penalties

Conversely, failure to reach either the CPG or any individual Target Group targets shall render the Contractor liable for a penalty as prescribed in clause 8.7 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract unless there are compelling reasons why the target or sub-targets could not be achieved as stipulated in Section D1003.04 of the Specifications. Penalties for Targeted Labour and for Targeted Enterprises shall be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Penalty Targeted Labour} = 0.5 \times ((\text{TL} - \text{TG}) + \text{Sum} (\text{TL}_n - \text{TG}_n) - 1.2 \times \text{L dp})$$

Where:

- n = Each lowest order sub-group of Targeted Labour stipulated in the Specification Data.
- TL = Monetary value of the Targeted Labour calculated at the percentage stipulated in the Specification Data applied to the Final Contract Value.
- TG = Cumulative monetary value of Targeted Labour employed on the contract by the Contractor and all Sub-contractors.
- L dp = Cumulative monetary value of black Disabled Persons employed on the Contract by the Contractor and all Sub-contractors.
- $(\text{TL}_n - \text{TG}_n)$ = The monetary values calculated unless if any calculated value is negative, then it shall be a zero value.

$$\text{Penalty Targeted Enterprises} = 0.5 \times ((\text{TE} - \text{TGE}) + \text{Sum} (\text{TE}_n - \text{TGE}_n) - 1.2 \times \text{TE mv} - 1.2 \times \text{TE dp})$$

Where:

- n = Each lowest order sub-group of Targeted Enterprise stipulated in the Contract Data.
- TE = Monetary value (excluding VAT) of Targeted Enterprises calculated at the percentage stipulated in the Specification Data applied to the Final Contract Value
- TGE = Cumulative monetary value (excluding VAT) by Targeted Enterprises sub-contracted to the contract by the Contractor and 50% of the cumulative monetary value (excluding VAT) by Targeted Enterprise suppliers of goods and/or services.
- TE mv = Cumulative monetary value (excluding VAT) by Targeted Enterprises being majority owned by black Military Veterans, sub-contracted to the Contract by the Contractor.

TE_{dp} = Cumulative monetary value (excluding VAT) by Targeted Enterprises being majority owned by black Disabled Persons, sub-contracted to the Contract by the Contractor.

(TE_n – TGE_n) = The monetary values calculated unless if any calculated value is negative, then it shall be a zero value.

The total Penalty value shall be the sum of the Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises Penalty values unless the total Penalty value is negative then it shall be a zero value.

Interim penalty valuations, based on the accepted CPG Plan, shall be calculated to interim Payment Certificate values (excluding VAT) to establish the anticipated outcome, and to plan corrective actions for non-adherence to the CPG Plan.

Interim penalty valuations shall not be applied to the interim certificate value, but the Contractor shall by notice be placed on terms to correct as prescribed in sub-clause 15.1 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract. Failure to correct by completion of the Contract will lead to an Employer's Claim in terms of sub-clause 2.5 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract.

Any Penalty payable shall be calculated on, and applied to, the Final Contract Value.

D1003.06 Accredited Registration

The CPP for Targeted Enterprises shall only be accepted if the respective Targeted Enterprises comply fully with the definition of a Targeted Enterprise, and documentary evidence to support the claim lodged with the Engineer before the work, goods or service may be considered as having been performed by a Targeted Enterprise. The responsibility for producing evidence of the respective documentation shall rest with the Contractor.

The Contractor shall assume responsibility for the compilation and maintenance of comprehensive records detailing each Targeted Enterprise's progress.

D1003.07 Contractor's Responsibility

In terms of the Conditions of Contract, all Targeted Labour recruitment and employment and Targeted Enterprises sub-contracting, as well as its associated risks, shall remain the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

The Employer's CPG requirements, and the compulsory utilisation of project specific Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises databases, shall not relieve the Contractor of its obligations under the Contract and shall not attract any liability to the Employer.

D1004 STAKEHOLDER AND COMMUNITY LIAISON AND SOCIAL FACILITATION

This part of Section D of the Specifications describes the Employer's requirements with respect to Stakeholder and Community liaison and social facilitation. It also describes the roles and responsibilities of the Project Liaison Committee (PLC) and the Project Liaison Officer (PLO).

D1004.01 Purpose of Stakeholder and Community Liaison

To give effect to the need for transparency and inclusion in the process of delivering services, the Contractor shall liaise with the project Stakeholders and affected Communities for the duration of the Contract's life cycle. This shall be achieved through structured engagement with the PLC which was established by the Employer for this purpose.

D1004.02 Contractor's Responsibilities in Stakeholder and Community Liaison

The Contractor shall have the following general responsibilities in the Stakeholder and Community liaison process:

- a) Stakeholder and Community engagement shall be executed based on the Employer's social facilitation principles and processes described in this Section D of the Specifications.
- b) The Contractor shall make use of the PLC as the official communication channel and utilise it to facilitate harmonious relationships, with project Stakeholders and affected Communities.
- c) PLC members, to which the Contractor is a party, shall be held accountable to disseminate project information discussed at the PLC meetings to the entities that they represent.
- d) As a party to the PLC, the Contractor shall delegate from among his site personnel a responsible person to participate in the PLC and its business.
- e) The Contractor shall provide the PLC with any assistance and information that it requires to execute its duties, which amongst others, include training, providing a meeting venue on site, provide Target Group reports, etc.

It is important to note that in terms of the Conditions of Contract, all Targeted Labour recruitment and employment, and Targeted Enterprises' selection and sub-contracting, as well as its associated risks, shall remain the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

The Contractor shall take cognisance of the Employer's PLC and PLO Forms, attached as Appendix 10, which shall be provided to the Contractor by the Engineer. While the Employer holds its own staff accountable for the deliverables listed in the checklist, the Contractor and the Engineer shall assist the Employer in accomplishing the deliverables.

The Employer's establishment of the PLC, and the Engineer providing a PLO to the Contractor, shall not relieve the Contractor of its obligations under the Contract and shall not attract any liability to the Employer.

D1004.03 Project Liaison Committee (PLC)

The PLC is the official communication channel through which the Employer, Engineer, Contractor and project Stakeholders and affected Communities communicates on project matters. This platform is also used to communicate the impact that the project has or may have on project Stakeholders and the affected Communities. This part of Section D of the Specifications describes the general processes pertaining to the PLC, as well as its role and responsibilities.

a) Establishment of the PLC

A PLC has either been established prior to commencement of the Contract or shall be established as soon as possible by the Employer. The PLC consists of the Employer, Engineer, Contractor and representatives of project Stakeholders and affected Communities.

To ensure that all relevant Stakeholders are represented in the PLC, the Employer did, or will, consult with the Executive Mayor's office, as well as with the LED Department of the Local Municipalities in the Project Area. Once, the PLC has been established, the Employer's further Stakeholder engagement activities shall not prevent the Contractor from continuing with construction.

Typical Stakeholder representation on the PLC may include:

- i) A PLC member from the relevant RRM PLC.
- ii) Local Municipality LED Office.
- iii) Traditional leadership representation.
- iv) Forums representing people with disabilities.

- v) Forums representing women.
- vi) Forums representing youth.
- vii) Forums representing business sector.
- viii) Forums representing transport sector.
- ix) Any other Stakeholder forum/organisation recognised by the Employer and the Local Municipality's LED Office.

Every forum/organisation/constituency shall have one (1) representative on the PLC, which representation shall be confirmed by a duly signed nomination form.

It should be noted that the PLC is not a political platform. While Councillors may be invited to some PLC meetings, they may not be PLC members and hence, will not have voting rights when attending a PLC meeting.

b) Seating Allowance for PLC Members

PLC membership is voluntary and PLC members shall not be remunerated for any time spent or work done associated with representing their constituency on the PLC.

Provision for the cost of liaison, social facilitation and PLC support has been made under pay-item D10.02(a). This pay-item provides for the Contractor's cost incurred in executing his responsibilities w.r.t. Stakeholder and Community liaison.

This pay-item may also be utilised to pay an allowance to PLC members for actual costs incurred in executing their PLC duties (other than time or work done related). The Contractor will determine and table to the PLC a realistic seating allowance which will be substantiated by an outline of the anticipated actual costs envisaged to be incurred by PLC members.

The seating allowance shall be increased annually based on the CPI figure contained in Table B2 of Statistical Release P0141 by StatsSA.

c) Induction of the PLC

The Employer shall conduct an induction meeting with the PLC to acquaint PLC members with the following information:

- i) SANRAL's Horizon 2030 Strategy.
- ii) SANRAL's Fourteen Point Plan.
- iii) The role and responsibilities of PLC members.
- iv) SANRAL's Transformation Policy.
- v) How the Transformation Policy impacts on SMMEs.
- vi) Relevant details of the Contract, e.g.
 - a. Start and end dates
 - b. Important milestones
 - c. CPG targets
 - d. Envisaged Targeted Enterprise packages
 - e. Envisaged work for other SMMEs (non-CPG).

d) Rules of Engagement for the PLC

In the execution of their duties, members of the PLC shall adhere to the undertakings listed below and the Contractor shall inform the Engineer of any transgression of these undertakings.

- i) General Matters and Membership
 - a. A PLC member may not be a politically elected representative and political party representation will not be allowed in the PLC.

- b. Ward Councillors may interact with the project team through the Mayor's Office.
 - c. If required, and in consultation with the Employer, a Political Steering Committee (PSC) may be established to address political matters. A PSC will only be established where the Project Area traverse over more than one municipal area.
- ii) Term of Office for the PLC
- a. The duration of PLC members' participating in the PLC (term of office) shall depend on the duration of the project.
 - b. If the Employer finds the performance of a PLC member to be below expectation or their conduct to be unacceptable, the affected member will be discharged from their obligations and a new nomination process shall commence.
- iii) Targeted Enterprise and Targeted Labour
- PLC members shall:
- a. ensure that they, or companies in which they hold equity, will not tender on the Contract for any work or sub-contract that may be issued. Should they tender, this will be treated as a conflict of interest and the tender proposal submitted will not be evaluated.
 - b. not have private or business interests in any of the sub-contract tenders tabled to the PLC or considered in this Contract.
 - c. shall recuse themselves from discussions that deal with a sub-contract tender if any other member is of the opinion that a member's participation in deliberations, which is rightly or wrongly construed as improper or irregular, may lead to the award of a sub-contract to a tenderer known to the member or to the member itself.
 - d. recuse themselves from the operations of the PLC following a situation as described in paragraphs ii) above and shall cease to be a PLC member for this Contract.
 - e. during the tender and tender evaluation processes, neither deliberately favoured nor prejudiced a person or tenderer, as intended, or contemplated in treasury Regulation 16, A8.3 (a), (b) & (c).
 - f. ensure that no conflict of interest arises from members' involvement in the PLC and potential involvement in targeted labour recruitment and/or targeted enterprises procurement and/or any other supplier/sub-contractor/service provider procurement or involvement in the contract.
- iv) Confidentiality
- a. PLC members shall accept that all information, documentation, and decisions regarding any matter serving before the PLC are confidential and undertake not to communicate decisions or discussions of PLC meetings to external or internal parties unless so directed and approved by the Project Manager.
 - b. Information for public dissemination shall be clearly indicated by the committee to ensure that sensitive information is only disseminated to the correct audience.
- v) Removal from Office
- a. PLC members who violate the provisions of these Rules of Engagement for PLCs will be removed from their role as a PLC member at the sole discretion of the Employer.

- b. The Employer reserves the right to recover any costs from PLC members whose actions can be regarded as detrimental to the Employer or to the execution of the project.
- c. The Employer also reserves the right to recommend criminal prosecution if the offence warrants such action.
- d. The Employer reserves the right to dissolve the entire PLC should it believe that such an action is in its best interest, or that of the project. The Employer will not be obliged to reconstitute the PLC if such a dissolution occurs.

e) Responsibilities and Duties of the PLC

The PLC shall execute specific duties during the design and construction phases of the project.

Some of the PLC's duties during the design and construction stages overlap and hence, for completeness, a description of the PLC's duties in both project stages is provided here.

The PLC shall execute the following duties:

ii) Project Design Stage

- a. Meet as often as required to discuss and resolve the project's design stage matters which are of interest or concern to the parties to the PLC.
- b. Peruse the Project Liaison Committee duties outlined in this Section D of the Specifications and agree on the duties of, and procedures to be followed by, the PLC to fulfil its duties.
Note: The principles outlined in this section shall not be amended, but duties and procedures may be altered to be project specific and to improve the functionality of the PLC.
- c. Act in accordance with the agreed terms of reference for the PLC.
- d. Inform the Employer of any training that project Stakeholder and affected Community representatives of the PLC require to execute their duties.
- e. Assist the Engineer to source suitable candidates, based on the Employer's qualifying criteria, for the position of PLO.
- f. Observe and verify that the qualifying criteria and procedures applied by the Engineer to select and employ the PLO were executed in a fair and transparent manner and were within the prescripts of the relevant labour legislation and regulations.
- g. Assist the Engineer to identify the project's Target and Project Area(s), from which Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises could be employed and sub-contracted respectively.
- h. Assist the Engineer to identify the project's Target Groups for inclusion in the Tender Documents and provide input and support to the identified Target Groups.

ii) Project Construction Stage

- a. Meet formally prior to the Employer's monthly site meeting, or as may be required, to discuss and resolve project matters, which are of interest or concern to the parties to the PLC.
- b. Assist the Contractor to establish the selection criteria and process to employ Targeted Labour.
- c. Assist the Contractor to identify the eligibility, functionality, preference and compliance criteria to select and sub-contract Targeted Enterprises.

- d. Provide input and support for the Databases compiled by the PLO and the Contractor from which Targeted Labour will be selected and employed and Targeted Enterprises will be sub-contracted respectively.
- e. Verify that the criteria and methodologies applied by the Contractor to select and employ Targeted Labour and sub-contract Targeted Enterprises are executed in a fair and transparent manner and are within Government legislation and regulations and the Employer's Policies.
- f. Verify that the conditions of employment and the conditions of sub-contracting, in the employment of Targeted Labour and sub-contracting of Targeted Enterprises are applied in a fair and transparent manner and according to the Employer's employment and sub-contracting requirements.
- g. Make recommendations to the Contractor on the training needs, eligibility criteria and selection criteria for the provision of training to Targeted Labour, Targeted Enterprises, Designated Groups, project Stakeholders and the affected Communities.
- h. Verify that training and skills development programmes, which the Contractor committed to, are implemented and executed as approved and intended.
- i. Inform the entities whom they represent of any project matters which the respective party to the PLC wishes to communicate with each other.
- j. Inform the entities whom they represent of any project matters that are impacting or may impact, either positively or negatively, on the respective parties to the PLC.
- k. Inform the Contractor of Stakeholder and/or Community requests and/or needs which could possibly be addressed within the project's Scope of Work.
- l. Inform the Employer, Engineer and Contractor of any road safety concerns within the Project Area(s) and advise them of possible mitigating measures and/or road safety programs that will be most suitable for acceptance by the affected Communities to promote road safety.
- m. Assist parties to the PLC to agree on a dispute resolution mechanism to resolve any disputes that may arise between the parties to the PLC.
- n. Assist parties to the PLC to liaise with their respective entities to resolve any disputes amongst the parties which may occur due to the project.

f) PLC Meetings

- i) Frequency
 - a. Meetings will be conducted monthly or as required by the Stakeholders or the project matters.
- ii) Notice of Meetings
 - a. The notice of the PLC meeting shall be given at least seven (7) calendar days prior to the meeting date.
 - b. Where meetings have been diarised over a period by the PLC, it shall be the duty of each PLC member to ensure his/her attendance on the set dates.
 - c. Where a PLC member has missed any meeting, he/she bears the onus of establishing the date and venue of the next meeting.
- iii) Venue
 - a. The venue for PLC meetings shall be the project site office or any other venue agreed to by the members of the PLC and approved by the Employer' Project Manager.

- b. During the COVID-19 lockdown, or any other lockdown as announced by government, the meetings shall be held on an online platform such as WhatsApp, MS Teams, Zoom or similar.
- iv) Agenda
 - a. An agenda shall be made available or displayed to all participants at the commencement of such meetings or the minutes of the previous meeting will serve as the agenda of such meetings.
 - b. The agenda shall not be amended without prior approval from the Employer's Project Manager.
- v) Chairperson
 - a. PLC meetings shall be chaired by the Employer which will typically be the Employer's Project Manager, or a SANRAL staff member, with decision--making delegation, or the Engineer. The Chairperson shall:
 - i. chair all meetings of the PLC,
 - ii. co-ordinate all the activities of PLC,
 - iii. ensure that members are fulfilling their tasks as assigned by the PLC,
 - iv. see to the execution of decisions taken by the PLC,
 - v. ensure the validity of members' claim for allowance,
 - vi. ensure compliance of all activities of the PLC with current rules, law and general SANRAL policy, and
 - vii. be a co-signatory to all official documents of the PLC.
- vi) Secretariate
 - a. The Engineer's staff shall provide a secretarial service to take minutes of PLC meetings.
 - b. Secretarial support other than taking minutes at PLC meetings shall be provided by the PLO.
- vii) Quorum
 - a. The quorum for PLC meetings shall be constituted by 50%+1 ratio excluding co- opted members.
- viii) Apologies and Non-attendance
 - a. Apologies shall be in writing except in emergency where the member apologising cannot communicate the apology in writing.
 - b. Apologies may be sent through any media agreed to prior by the PLC for example through SMS or WhatsApp messaging or similar application.
 - c. The organization, represented by a member who fails to attend three (3) consecutive meetings without an apology, will be informed in writing and asked to nominate a replacement member.
- ix) Language
 - a. The meetings will be conducted in English to enable all participants at the meeting to understand the discussions of the meeting.
 - b. However, care and consideration must be given to provide non-English speakers an opportunity to participate. Therefore, where desirable, any of the 11 official languages maybe be used to conduct the meeting. If another language other than English is used, the minutes of the meeting will need to be transcribed, translated, and recorded in English.
- x) Other
 - a. The PMT shall provide a finger lunch for PLC members at PLC meetings.

D1004.04 Project Liaison Officer (PLO)

The PLO facilitates the selection and employment of Targeted Labour and coordinates communication between the members of the PLC to address the day to day project, Stakeholder, and Community matters that impact on the parties represented in the PLC.

a) Appointment of the PLO

The Engineer appoints the PLO in accordance with the Employer's criteria for a PLO. The appointment of the PLO must be acknowledged and supported by the PLC.

Although the PLO provides social facilitation support to the Contractor, the PLO shall report to the Engineer or his delegated representative, e.g. the Resident Engineer.

b) Duties of the PLO

The PLO shall execute specific duties during the design and construction phases of the project. These duties include the following:

- (i) Except for taking the minutes of PLC meetings, which is a duty of the Engineer, the PLO shall provide a secretariat function to the PLC which includes, amongst others, the following:
 - a. Schedule meetings;
 - b. Compile meeting agendas;
 - c. Compile document packages for meetings;
 - d. Distribute minutes of meetings;
 - e. Assist representatives of project Stakeholders and affected Community to formulate their communication to the PLC in writing;
 - f. Distribute written communication between the parties to the PLC;
 - g. Keep records of all PLC correspondence and documentation; and
 - h. Provide any other reasonable secretariat function required by the PLC.
- (ii) Attend all PLC meetings to report on the day to day project, Stakeholder and Community matters that impact on the parties to the PLC.
- (iii) Attend all monthly project site meetings to report on the day to day project, Stakeholder and Community matters that impact on the parties to the PLC.
- (iv) Attend any other meetings related to the project and in which any of the project Stakeholders, affected Communities, Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises are involved.
- (v) Maintain a full-time presence on site to monitor and address the day to day project, Stakeholder and Community matters that impact on the parties to the PLC.
- (vi) Maintain a full-time presence on site to assist the parties to the PLC in the day to day liaison with each other.
- (vii) Assist the Engineer and the Contractor to disseminate information to PLC members such as:
 - a. the basic Scope of the Works and how it will affect the Community;
 - b. the project programme and regular progress updates;
 - c. the anticipated employment and sub-contracting opportunities;
 - d. the project programme as it pertains to the employment of Targeted Labour and sub-contracting of Targeted Enterprises;
 - e. Occupational Health and Safety precautions; and
 - f. any other information relevant to project Stakeholders and the affected Communities.
- (viii) Be well acquainted with the contractual requirements as it pertains to Targeted Labour employment and training.
- (ix) Assist the PLC to establish and agree the criteria to follow when selecting and employing Targeted Labour.
- (x) Assist the Engineer and the Contractor in their resources and skills audits by providing a coordinating function between the Engineer, the Contractor, project Stakeholders, and the affected Communities.

- (xi) Ensure that the Contractor compiles the Targeted Labour databases based on the eligibility and selection criteria and that he updates it as and when required.
- (xii) Coordinate the selection and employment of Targeted Labour based on the agreed eligibility and selection criteria and based on the Contractor's labour and skills requirements.
- (xiii) Ensure that each Targeted Labourer enters an employment contract which adheres to current and relevant Labour legislation.
- (xiv) Ensure that each Targeted Labourer understands the conditions of his/her employment contract with an emphasis on the employment start date, end date and wages payable.
- (xv) Identify and inform the Contractor of any relevant training required by the Targeted Labour.
- (xvi) Attend all disciplinary proceedings to ensure that hearings are fair and conducted in accordance with the current and relevant Labour legislation.
- (xvii) Be proactive in identifying project Stakeholder and affected Communities' (including Targeted Labour and/or Targeted Enterprise Sub-contractor), requirements, disputes, unrest, strikes, etc. and bring it to the attention of the PLC.
- (xviii) Assist the parties to the PLC to resolve any disputes, which may occur due to the project.
- (xix) Other than the document records to be kept as mentioned above, keep record of all other documents and processes pertaining to the employment of Targeted Labour.
- (xx) Produce and submit a monthly report to the PLC on PLC and other meetings attended by the PLO, as well as on Targeted Labour employment, and project Stakeholder, affected Community and any other project matters that impact on the parties to the PLC.

D1005 MOBILISATION PERIOD

The Mobilisation Period is defined in Section D1002 of the Specifications. This Section describes the requirements of the Mobilisation Period.

D1005.01 Purpose of the Mobilisation Period

The Mobilisation Period was introduced as an aid to the Contractor to:

- a) become acquainted with the Stakeholder and Community liaison requirements of the Contract as prescribed in this Section D of the Specifications;
- b) allow for the Contractor's planning to obtain the CPG as required in the Specification Data;
- c) allow for the Contractor's planning to obtain the Contract Skills Development Goals (CSDG) as required in Section D1010 of the Specifications,
- d) follow the processes prescribed in this Section D of the Specifications to employ the initially required Targeted Labour and enter the first sub-contracts with Targeted Enterprises; and
- e) provide the training required by Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises to commence with the construction of the Works.

Access to site for the Commencement of the Works shall thus only be issued once the following deliverables have also been submitted and/or completed by the Contractor:

- i) Submission of the CPG Plan, followed by acceptance of the Engineer.
- ii) Submission and the Training and Skills Development Programme, followed by acceptance of the Engineer.
- iii) Appointment of the initial Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors.

D1005.02 Duties of the Contractor

During the Mobilisation Period, the Contractor shall execute the following duties:

a) Compile a CPG Plan

The Contractor shall compile an acceptable CPG Plan, which sets out how he intends to achieve the various CPG targets as stated in the Specification Data. The Contractor shall distribute and implement the participation targets and Targeted Enterprise work opportunities equally and continuously over the duration of the Contract, i.e. from site establishment to completion of the Works. Where the Contractor deems such an equal and continuous distribution of the participation targets to be unachievable, he shall provide reasons and motivate it clearly in the CPG Plan.

The CPG Plan shall provide the detail of the Targeted Enterprise work programme, as well as the contents and value of the work packages. See Appendix 8 for the CPG Plan format.

The Targeted Enterprise work programme shall be in line with the Works Programme and once the CPG Plan has been accepted by the Engineer, it shall be captured in the Works Programme.

The Mobilisation Period shall only be concluded once the CPG Plan has been accepted by, and all the duties above have been executed to the satisfaction of, the Engineer after consultation with the Employer.

The Employer and the Engineer shall monitor progress and adherence to the CPG Plan in the same manner as they would monitor the Works Programme.

Should the Contractor require an extension of the Mobilisation Period due to a delay not within his control, Contractual Procedure shall be followed, and the Contractor shall submit his Claim for an extension of time through the relevant Contractual Clauses of the Conditions of Contract.

b) Compile a Training and Skills Development Plan

The Contractor shall compile an acceptable Training and Skills Development Plan, which sets out how he intends to achieve the various CSDG targets as per the Section D1010 of the Specification and in line with the CIDB Standard for Developing Skills through Infrastructure Contracts (refer to latest version on www.cidb.org.za).

The Training and Skills Development Plan shall provide the detail of the training methods selected for implementation as described in Section D1010 of the Specifications and shall include an execution programme for acceptance by the Engineer, which shall demonstrate its correlation with the Works Programme.

The Mobilisation Period shall only be concluded once the Training and Skills Development Plan has been accepted by the Engineer after consultation with the Employer.

The Employer and the Engineer shall monitor progress and adherence to the Training and Skills Development Plan in the same manner as they would monitor the Works Programme.

c) Sub-contracting of Targeted Enterprises

During the Mobilisation Period the Contractor shall execute the following duties w.r.t. the sub-contracting of Targeted Enterprises:

- i) Liaise with the Employer, Engineer and the PLC to structure and finalise the work packages to be sub-contracted to Targeted Enterprises.
- ii) Liaise with the Employer, Engineer and PLC to determine the Targeted Enterprise Database criteria for the sub-contracting of Targeted Enterprises.
- iii) Compile the Targeted Enterprise Database(s) for input and support by the PLC.
- iv) Undertake a skills audit of the Targeted Enterprises which appear on the Targeted Enterprise Database(s).
- v) Based on the skills audit, and in consultation with the PLC, identify the pre-tender training requirements of Targeted Enterprises.
- vi) Provide an opportunity to Targeted Enterprises to receive the identified pre-tender training.
- vii) Tender the initial work packages and sub-contract the first group of Targeted Enterprises for commencement of the Works.

d) Employment of Targeted Labour

During the Mobilisation Period the Contractor shall execute the following duties w.r.t. the employment of Targeted Labour:

- i) Liaise with the PLC and the PLO on the compiled Targeted Labour Database(s) for the employment of Targeted Labour.
- ii) Undertake a skills audit of the Targeted Labour which appear on the Targeted Labour Database(s).
- iii) Based on the skills audit, and in consultation with the PLC, identify the training requirements of Targeted Labour to enhance their employability.
- iv) Provide an opportunity to eligible Targeted Labour to receive the identified training to enhance their employability.
- v) Select and appoint the first group of Targeted Labour for commencement of the Works.

e) Training Requirements

The Contractor will not be able to address all the training requirements identified for Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises during the Mobilisation Period and it is accepted that training will take place over the duration of the Contract.

The training provided to both Targeted Enterprises and Targeted Labour during the Mobilisation Period shall focus on the activities and/or skills required for the commencement of the Works and shall include the mandatory Occupational Health and Safety training.

D1006 THE ROLE OF THE ENGINEER

The role and responsibilities of the Engineer are clearly described in the Conditions of Contract. This section elaborates on the Engineer's duties with respect to Stakeholder and Community Liaison, Targeted Labour Employment and Targeted Enterprise sub-contracting.

Together with the Employer and the Contractor, the Engineer is also a party to the PLC and hence, is co-responsible for successful project Stakeholder and Community liaison.

In addition, the Engineer shall play a supporting role to the Contractor in the successful implementation of the Employer's Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprise utilisation and development goals.

D1006.01 Duties During the Design Phase

During the design phase, the Engineer undertook a preliminary skills and resources audit of the Targeted Enterprises in the Project Area. The purpose of the audit was to:

- a) obtain an understanding of the Community's skills, both academically and occupationally;
- b) obtain an understanding of the resources within the Community, i.e. Targeted Enterprise availability and capabilities;
- c) establish the CPG targets for Targeted Enterprises and Targeted Labour for inclusion of the Specification Data; and
- d) identify tender and other relevant training to be offered to Targeted Enterprises and Targeted Labour to prepare them for tendering and to enhance their employability.

D1006.02 Duties During the Construction Phase

To implement the Employer's Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprise goals, the Engineer shall provide support to the Contractor by executing the following duties:

a) Targeted Enterprise Sub-contracting

- i) Make recommendations to the Contractor in identifying and structuring the work packages to be sub-contracted to Targeted Enterprises and approve the scope and extent of the work packages.
- ii) Verify that the Targeted Enterprise Database(s) has been updated prior to the letting of every new set of sub-contracts.
- iii) Approve tender procedures, tender documents, tender submission requirements and adjudication processes for the sub-contracting of Targeted Enterprises.
- iv) Review all tender adjudication reports and monitor that the criteria and procedures applied by the Contractor to sub-contract Targeted Enterprises are executed in a fair and transparent manner and are within the Employer's and Government's Supply Chain Management Policies.
- v) Verify that sub-contract agreements and the conditions of sub-contracting with Targeted Enterprises are fair and transparent and within the prescripts of the Contract requirements.
- vi) Monitor the management of Targeted Enterprise sub-contracts and ensure that conditions such as the application of penalties, the termination of contracts, etc. are applied in a fair and transparent manner and within the prescripts of the agreement.

b) Targeted Labour Employment

- i) Verify that the Labour Database(s) from which Targeted Labour will be employed is updated prior to every new Labour intake.
- ii) Monitor that the criteria and procedures applied by the Contractor to employ Targeted Labour are executed in a fair and transparent manner and is within the Contract requirements.
- iii) Monitor that the conditions of employment of Targeted Labour are applied in a fair and transparent manner and within the prescripts of the current and relevant Labour legislation.

c) Target Group Training Requirements

- i) Make recommendations to the Contractor in identifying the training requirements of Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises and approve the proposed training programmes.
- ii) Monitor that training programmes and support programmes, which the Contractor committed to, are implemented and executed as intended.

D1007 TENDER PROCESS FOR TARGETED ENTERPRISES

While the Contractor may utilise service providers, sub-contractors and suppliers of its choice and selected via its own internal processes, for the sub-contracting of Targeted Enterprises based on the Employer's Contract Participation Goals, the Contractor shall follow the prescripts of this Section D of the Specifications.

D1007.01 Targeted Enterprise (TE) Procurement Coordinator

The Contractor shall appoint a TE Procurement Coordinator to facilitate the sub-contracting of work to Targeted Enterprises as defined in the Specification Data. For Contracts with a value of less than R 100 million the Contractor may appoint a TE Procurement Coordinator from its site staff. For Contracts with a value of more than R 100 million the Contractor shall employ or sub-contract a dedicated TE Procurement Coordinator, whose sole responsibility will be the management of Targeted Enterprise procurement and sub-contracting matters.

The TE Procurement Coordinator shall be knowledgeable of, and have experience in, the management of road construction and ancillary works, National Treasury supply chain management legislation and regulations, and stakeholder relations management.

With the input and support of the PLC, the TE Procurement Coordinator shall conduct the tender processes and procedures for Targeted Enterprise sub-contracting as prescribed in this Section D of the Specifications and shall adhere to the Employer's and Government's Supply Chain Management Policies and requirements.

D1007.02 Procedures for Targeted Enterprises Sub-contracting

The Contractor shall utilise the Employer's proforma tender and contract document for Targeted Enterprise sub-contracting. The proforma sub-contract document is attached as Appendix 11 and an electronic version will be provided to the Contractor on award.

The identification and application of the eligibility and functionality criteria, and conducting the tender processes and procedures for sub-contracting include, amongst others, the following tasks:

a) Tender Preparation

i) Compile preliminary list of sub-contracting work packages

Based on the Specification Data and the Scope of the Works, the Contractor shall compile a preliminary list of the work packages (scope of work and number of packages) that are anticipated to be sub-contracted to Targeted Enterprises.

The Contractor shall refer to the construction activities that have been identified as being suitable for construction by Targeted Enterprises as listed in Section D1009 of these Project Specifications, and to any other construction activities which are required to execute the Works in terms of this Contract, to determine how to unbundle or package subcontracts for Targeted Enterprises.

ii) Conduct a market analysis and resources and skills audit

Based on the preliminary list of work packages, the Contractor shall conduct a market analysis and resources and skills audits to determine the availability of the required resources and skills in the Project Area to execute the anticipated Targeted Enterprise work packages. The Contractor shall consult the following databases as a minimum:

- a. Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB)'s contractor database (not applicable to suppliers and non-construction services).

- b. National Treasury's Central Supplier Database (CSD) to be obtained from the Employer's Supply Chain Management Department.

iii) Call for an expression of interest

In addition to consulting the CIDB contractor database and National Treasury's CSD, the Contractor shall call for an expression of interest, which shall be published in newspapers and at locations as agreed by the PLC.

For each group of work packages, the call for an expression of interest shall outline:

- a. evaluation and selection criteria such as eligibility, preference and functionality.
- b. compliance requirements such as CSD and CIDB registration, tax clearance and COID.
- c. the anticipated scope of the works to be undertaken.

iv) Establish a Targeted Enterprise Helpdesk

Other than informing the Contractor's market analysis and resources and skills audits, the purpose of the call for an expression of interest is to alert Targeted Enterprises of the subcontracting opportunities and inform them of the anticipated eligibility, preference and functionality criteria, as well as of the compliance requirements.

The Contractor shall enhance the readiness of Targeted Enterprises to participate in the subcontracting opportunities by establishing a helpdesk at a suitable and easily accessible location in the Project Area.

The Contractor shall provide guidance to Targeted Enterprises in getting their statutory requirements in order in anticipation of the subcontracting opportunities. The helpdesk shall assist with, or provide guidance in, registering with the CSD and the CIDB, obtaining tax clearance and COID compliance and any other relevant qualifying requirements.

v) Compile Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database

Based on the CPG targets listed in the Specification Data and the information obtained from the activities described in paragraphs ii) and iii) above, the Contractor shall compile a Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database.

In compiling the preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database, the Contractor must bear in mind that the benchmark for an adequate number of tenderers to ensure a competitive tender process is ten (10) tenderers that are able to achieve the functionality threshold during the tender evaluation.

vi) Identify Targeted Enterprises, Target Groups and Project Area(s)

Based on the CPG targets listed in the Specification Data and the Preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database, the Contractor shall identify the:

- a. Targeted Enterprises (CIDB grades and types); and
- b. Designated Groups (woman, youth, etc.) which are anticipated to benefit from the subcontracting opportunities; and
- c. Project Area(s) from which Targeted Enterprises will be given preference for subcontracting opportunities.

vii) Compile a Contract Participation Goal (CPG) Plan

The Contractor shall utilise all the information gathered from the activities described in the paragraphs above to compile an acceptable CPG Plan. The plan shall contain:

- a. a list of work packages (scope of work and number of packages) to be subcontracted to Targeted Enterprises;
- b. procurement, award and execution dates for the work packages, distributed over the duration of the Works Contract (from site establishment to completion of the Works) to ensure continuous work opportunities;
- c. the preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database(s) for each work package;
- d. the Targeted Enterprises (CIDB grades and types) and Designated Groups (woman, youth, etc.) which are to benefit from the subcontracting opportunities;
- e. the Project Area(s) from which Targeted Enterprises will be given preference for subcontracting opportunities; and
- f. the tender evaluation and selection criteria for the respective work packages.

viii) Acceptance of the CPG Plan

The Contractor shall submit the CPG Plan to the Engineer for acceptance after which it shall be tabled to the PLC for their information.

The Contractor shall ensure that the tender requirements and the outcome of different tendering scenarios are explained to the PLC, specifically with respect to the outcomes of evaluating:

- a. Eligibility criteria;
- b. Functionality structuring and scenarios;
- c. Price and Preference;
- d. Compliance requirements; and
- e. Negotiation processes (if applicable).

If required, the Contractor shall make amendments to the CPG Plan based on the Engineer's instructions.

ix) Compile tender documents

The Contractor shall compile the tender documents for each Targeted Enterprise subcontract work package and shall utilise the Employer's proforma document for Targeted Enterprise sub-contracting (see Appendix 11).

In compiling the subcontract tender documents, the Contractor shall include in each tender document relevant Conditions of Tender and the FIDIC subcontract agreement. The Contractor shall compile each subcontract tender document in a manner that facilitates the achievement of all objectives and principles pertaining to the development of the Targeted Enterprises.

The draft subcontract tender documents shall be approved by the Engineer before letting the tender.

b) Tender Process

i) Advertise the subcontract packages

The Contractor shall advertise and invite tenders from Targeted Enterprises for the respective subcontract packages. Advertisements shall be placed in

local newspapers, on community notice boards, on SANRAL's electronic supply development desk portal (<https://sanralesdd.co.za>), and any other place or medium as agreed with the PLC.

If the Employer have a pro-forma Tender Notice available, the Contractor shall use this document.

ii) Conduct a tender briefing and tender training session

For each group of subcontract packages, the Contractor shall conduct a compulsory briefing session to explain the tender process, the evaluation and selection criteria and the scope of the works to the Targeted Enterprises.

An Attendance Register shall be completed by all attendees and Minutes shall be taken during the briefing session. The Minutes of the briefing session shall be distributed to all attendees as an Addendum to the Tender Documents.

The Contractor shall conduct a "how to complete a tender document" training session as a component of the tender briefing to interested Targeted Enterprises. The level of detail and hence the duration of the training session shall be informed by the findings of the resources and skills audit conducted during the Tender Preparation Phase.

The Contractor shall engage with the Employer's Regional Transformation Officer on the Employer's SMME Pre-tender Training and Development Programme and utilise this programme if it is available at the time in the Project Area. The Regional Transformation Officer's contact details shall be provided on award:

Notes of this training session shall be distributed to all attendees of the briefing session as an Addendum to the Tender Documents, irrespective if they have attended the training session or not.

A separate Attendance Register shall be completed for the training session for future reference.

iii) Minimum tender submission documents

It shall be a condition of tender that Targeted Enterprises include in their tender submissions the following documentation (if applicable, based on the subcontract type e.g. construction, supply or services):

- a. Proof of the Tenderer's B-BBEE contributor level.
- b. Proof that the Tenderer is an EME or QSE entity.
- c. Proof that the Tenderer is registered on National Treasury's CSD.
- d. Proof of the Tenderer's locality (address registered with the CIPC).
- e. Proof that the Tenderer is registered with the CIDB in the required grading and class (not applicable to suppliers).
- f. Proof that the Tenderer is compliant with the COID Act.
- g. Proof that the Tenderer is tax compliant.

iv) Tender closure and opening of tenders

Tenders for the subcontract packages shall close at a stipulated time and date. Tenders shall be submitted to the Contractor in the format and at the address prescribed by the Contractor in the subcontract Tender Data.

The tender opening shall be conducted by the Contractor who shall publicly announce and record the names of all bidders and their tender prices.

v) Finalise Targeted Enterprise Database

The purposes of the preliminary Targeted Enterprise Database are described in paragraph (a)(v) of the Tender Preparation phase above of which one is to alert Targeted Enterprises to assess their readiness to participate in the project's subcontractor opportunities.

The period between the Contractor's call for an expression of interest and the date of closure of the relevant subcontract tender allows for prospective Tenderers to become compliant to the database criteria. The preliminary database is thus a "live" database until the date of tender closure.

On the date of tender closure, the Contractor shall request the Employer's Supply Chain Management Department to print out a list from National Treasury's CSD, of entities that adheres to the Targeted Enterprise Database criteria. This list shall become the Final Targeted Enterprise Database for relevant sub-contract tender and shall be disseminated to the PLCr.

c) Tender Evaluation

The Contractor shall evaluate the tenders and it shall be a condition of tender that tenders will only be accepted from Targeted Enterprises that fully comply with the definition of a Targeted Enterprise as described in Section D1002 of the Specifications.

The Contractor shall evaluate the tenders based on (1) Eligibility, (2) Functionality, (3) Price and Preference, and (4) Compliance.

i) Stage 1 – Eligibility

Tenderers shall be checked for their eligibility to tender for the advertised subcontract packages based on the following eligibility criteria:

- a. Proof that the Tenderer is registered with the CIDB (if applicable).
- b. Proof that the Tenderer is registered on National Treasury's CSD
- c. Proof that the Tenderer is registered with the CIPC.
- d. Proof that the Tenderer is a level 1 to 4 B-BBEE contributor;
- e. Proof that the Tenderer is an EME or a QSE.
- f. Proof that the Tenderer falls within one or more of the designated groups as per the Specification Data (if applicable).

Eligible Tenderers shall be further evaluated against the functionality criteria.

ii) Stage 2 – Functionality

No Targeted Enterprise may be prohibited from responding to the invitation to tender, however, preference shall be given to those Targeted Enterprises that adheres to the tender criteria which, amongst others, shall be measured by means of a functionality evaluation.

To ensure Targeted Enterprise participation as it is intended by the Employer and as defined in the Specification Data, Functionality shall be scored based on the type of subcontract package, e.g. construction or the supply of goods or services and at least three (3) or more of the criteria listed below shall be applied.

The points allocated for the listed criteria shall be clearly demonstrated to tenderers as a matrix in the tender document. The functionality matrixes provided in the Employer's proforma document for Targeted Enterprise subcontracting (Appendix 11) shall be applied to evaluate the functionality of Tenderers.

Tenderers must score a minimum of 75% for functionality and Tenderers that do not obtain the threshold shall not be evaluated further.

a. Locality

For lower CIDB grade packages, the points allocated for Locality typically has a higher weighting in the total evaluation points but shall not be more than 65% of the total evaluation points.

Points scored shall be based on the Targeted Enterprise's registered address with the CIPC.

- i. If the Targeted Enterprise is more than twelve (12) months old and the company address:
 - (a) was changed with the CIPC in the twelve (12) months prior to the tender advertisement; or
 - (b) does not correlate with the company address recorded on the CSD,the Targeted Enterprise shall provide additional proof of its address in the twelve (12) months preceding the tender advertisement date and that the address is current by submitting the following:
 - (i) for urban areas:
 1. signed lease agreement confirming occupation in the preceding twelve (12) months; or
 2. mortgage statement confirming ownership in the preceding twelve (12) months; and
 3. a current utility bill (not older than three (3) months) confirming that occupation is current; or
 - (ii) for semi-urban and rural areas
 1. an affidavit from the relevant ward councillor or traditional authority, signed and stamped by a registered commissioner of oaths, which confirms that the business has been operating from the said address in the preceding twelve (12) months.
- ii. If Targeted Enterprise is less than twelve (12) months old and the company address:
 - a. was changed with the CIPC in the twelve (12) months prior to the tender advertisement; or
 - b. does not correlate with the company address recorded on the CSD,the oldest registered address on either the CIPC or the CSD will be accepted as the Targeted Enterprise's address for the purpose of scoring locality points.
- iii. If the Targeted Enterprise intends to operate from a branch office for the purpose of the anticipated subcontract, the same additional proof that the company has been operating from the branch office in the twelve (12) months prior to the tender advertisement date must be provided as listed in the paragraphs above.
- iv. If the above additional proof of address cannot be provided, locality points shall be awarded based on the tenderer's address registered with the CIPC in the twelve months prior to the tender advertisement date.

b. Equipment

For lower CIDB grade packages, the points allocated for Equipment typically has a lower weighting in the total evaluation points.

The combined points allocated for Equipment and Experience shall not be more than 35% of the total evaluation points.

c. Experience

For lower CIDB grade packages, the points allocated for Experience typically has a lower weighting in the total evaluation points.

The combined points allocated for Equipment and Experience shall not be more than 35% of the total evaluation points.

d. CIDB grade and class

The points allocated for CIDB grade and class shall not be more than 35% of the total evaluation points.

CIDB grade and class shall not be used as an evaluation criterion for packages pertaining to the supply of material, goods and/or services.

e. Project Specific Designated Groups; e.g. woman, youth, etc.

In addition to the eligibility criteria for preferential procurement functionality points may also be allocated for the following Designated Groups:

- i. Tenderer is 51%+ owned by black people who are youth.
- ii. Tenderer is 51%+ owned by black people who are women.
- iii. Tenderer is 51%+ owned by black people with disabilities.
- iv. Tenderer is 51%+ owned by black people who are military veterans.

The points allocated for Designated Groups shall not be more than 15% of the total evaluation points.

One, two or three of the Designated Groups listed above may be selected to count towards the score for Designated Groups.

If any one of the Designated Groups listed above is already an eligibility criterion, it must not be included as a functionality criterion as well.

The inclusion of any of the Designated Groups listed above shall be based on the Contractor's Resources and Skills Audit.

Youth and veterans may not be selected together.

iii) Stage 3 – Price and Preference

Tenderers that obtained the minimum threshold for functionality shall be further evaluated on their Price and Preference submissions, i.e.:

- a. Price = 80 / 90 %
- b. Preference = 20 / 10 %

The highest scoring tenderer for each subcontract package shall be checked for compliance.

The Contractor shall state in the tender advertisement and in the tender documents that only one subcontract package shall be awarded to an entity at any one time for this project, meaning that a Targeted Enterprise may be awarded a work package and on conclusion thereof may be awarded a subsequent work package, but more than one work package may not be awarded simultaneously for this project.

If a tenderer tendered for more than one subcontract package and scored the highest points in more than one package, the Contractor shall award to the tenderer the work package that has the most economic benefit to the Employer.

iv) **Stage 4 – Compliance Check**

The highest scoring tenderer for each subcontract package shall be checked for compliance with respect to the following criteria:

- a. Proof that the Tenderer is compliant with the COID Act (excl. CIDB 1 and 2 subcontractors).
- b. Proof that the Tenderer is tax compliant.

If the highest scoring tenderer fails to meet any of the compliance criteria, he will be given seven (7) calendar days to become compliant.

If the highest scoring tenderer fails to submit the requested compliance information in the required timeframe, he shall be deemed non-compliant and the evaluator shall check the second highest tenderer for compliance. This process is repeated until a compliant tenderer has been identified.

d) Appoint successful Targeted Enterprises

i) **Table the Tender Report to the PLC**

The Contractor shall present the Tender Report for each sub-contract package to the Employer and the Engineer and thereafter table it to the PLC prior to award of the sub-contract.

ii) **Negotiating tender sum and/or rates with Targeted Enterprises**

a. **Rates**

If the Contractor choose to include work for which he has tendered rates in the subcontract package and the tenderer who scored the highest points tendered higher rates than that of the Contractor, the Contractor may negotiate rates and the final sum with the tenderer.

If the Contractor fails to negotiate a reasonable tender sum or rates with the tenderer, he may:

- i. approach the second highest points scoring, compliant tenderer for negotiation. This process may be repeated up to the third highest points scoring compliant tenderer, where after the package shall be retendered. The Contractor shall be limited to negotiate down to 25% above his own rates (this process must be clearly explained prior to negotiation, when the tender report is tabled to the PLC); or
- ii. accept the highest points scoring tenderer's higher rates and total sum and remunerate the sub-contractor at the sub-contractor's tendered rates from the Lump Sum which the Contractor has tendered for the fluctuation between the Contractor's rates and that of the Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors.

b. Provisional Sum

If the Employer has provided a Provisional Sum for the work items in the subcontract package, the Contractor shall report on the feasibility of the highest point scoring compliant tenderer's tender rates and tender sum to the Employer and the Engineer.

- i. If the highest points scoring compliant tenderer's rates and tender sum are deemed market related by the Engineer, the Contractor shall obtain the Employer's approval to utilise the Provisional Sum provided for the work items.
- ii. If the highest points scoring compliant tenderer's rates and tender sum are deemed not market related and the Employer does not approve the utilisation of the relevant Provisional Sum, the Contractor may negotiate with the tenderer for market related rates and tender sum.
- iii. If the Contractor fails to negotiate market related rates and a tender sum with the tenderer, he may:
 - (a) approach the next highest point scoring, compliant tenderer for negotiation. This process may be repeated up to the third highest points scoring compliant tenderer, where after the package shall be retendered; or
 - (b) accept the highest points scoring tenderer's rates and total sum and remunerate the sub-contractor from the Lump Sum which the Contractor has tendered for the fluctuation between the Contractor's rates and that of the Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors. The Contractor shall not pay rates or tender sums that is more than 15% higher than what are deemed market related by the Engineer.

iii) Low tender sums submitted by Targeted Enterprises

The Contractor shall report to the Employer and the Engineer on the feasibility of tendered rates, sums or provisional sums of tenderers who tendered exceptionally low. Exceptionally low rates, sums or provisional sums are those that are more than ten percent (10%) less than what the Contractor tendered or, in the case of a Provisional Sum, what is deemed market related by the Engineer.

- a. If the tendered rates, sums or provisional sums of those tenderers who tendered exceptionally low are deemed by the Engineer to still be feasible, the Contractor may continue to include these tenders in his tender evaluation.
- b. If the tendered rates, sums or provisional sums of those tenderers who tendered exceptionally low are deemed by the Engineer to not be feasible, the Contractor may disqualify these tenders from his tender evaluation.

The Employer strongly discourages the appointment of Targeted Enterprises that did not tender feasible rates, sums or provisional sums. If all prices submitted are deemed exceptionally low by the Engineer, the subcontract package shall be retendered.

The consequences of exceptionally low prices must be clearly outlined in the Tender Report and clearly explained to the PLC prior to award or retendering of the subcontract packages.

- iv) Payment to the Contractor
 - a. The Employer shall not remunerate the Contractor, other than what have been provided for in the payment items, for accepting higher tender sums tendered by Targeted Enterprises.
 - b. If the Contractor accepts tender sums that are higher than what have been provided for in the Contractor's tendered rates or the Employer's provisional and/or prime cost sums, the costs shall be paid by the Contractor from the Lump Sum which he tendered for the fluctuation between the Contractor's rates and that of the Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors.
- v) Entering the Subcontract Agreement

The Contractor's TE Procurement Coordinator shall assist successful Targeted Enterprises to enter into a subcontract agreement with the Contractor as described in this Specifications.

D1008 GENERAL RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE CONTRACTOR TOWARDS TARGETED ENTERPRISES

The Contractor shall have the responsibilities described in this Section, D1008 of the Specifications, towards all Targeted Enterprises subcontracted in terms of the CPG as stated in the Specification Data.

a) The Employer's Independent Targeted Enterprise Monitor

The Employer shall, through its Transformation Unit, appoint an independent Targeted Enterprise Monitor, who shall audit the Contractor with respect to his obligations to Targeted Enterprises and who shall report his findings to the Employer's Project Manager, the Engineer, and the Regional Transformation Officer (RTO) monthly.

b) Failure to Comply with Responsibilities Towards Targeted Enterprises

If the Contractor, in the opinion of the Employer's Project Manager or the Engineer, fails to comply with its responsibilities towards Targeted Enterprises, the Engineer shall issue a written warning to the Contractor, stating all the areas of non-compliance. The Contractor's time to correct shall be stated in the letter and shall be in accordance with the relevant specifications for the aspects of non-compliance.

A copy of the letter of warning shall be forwarded to the Employer's Project Manager and the Targeted Enterprise Monitor shall monitor that corrective action is taken by the Contractor.

Failure by the Contractor to comply with a deadline, will be sufficient grounds for the Employer to apply a penalty or institute a claim in accordance with the relevant Conditions of Contract.

D1008.01 Targeted Enterprise (TE) Construction Manager

The Contractor shall appoint a dedicated TE Construction Manager whose sole responsibility shall be to assist the Contractor with the execution of his responsibilities towards Targeted Enterprises and Target Groups as prescribed in this Section D of the Specifications, with an emphasis on D1008 and D1010.

The TE Construction Manager may be appointed from the Contractor's existing staff or may be employed or sub-contracted for the purpose of this Contract. Irrespective of the contractual relationship between the TE Construction Manager and the Contractor, the TE Construction Manager shall not perform any other duties than that of a dedicated TE Construction Manager on a full-time basis for this Contract.

a) TE Construction Manager's Obligations

Amongst others, the TE Construction Manager shall facilitate the training, mentoring, development and support of Targeted Enterprises as per the Contractor's approved Training and Skills Development Programme (see Section D1010 of the Specifications).

The TE Construction Manager shall submit monthly TE Progress Reports in the Employer's reporting format. The report shall be submitted to the Employer's Project Manager and Regional Transformation Officer, the Engineer and the Contractor, at least one week prior to the monthly site progress meeting.

This report shall include, amongst others:

- i) Details of TEs trained, e.g., number, hours, value, modules, credits obtained, etc.
- ii) Details of TEs sub-contracted, e.g., number, packages, values, etc.
- iii) Details of TEs performance on the work packages, and skills gaps to be addressed, etc.
- iv) Details of TEs growth and sustainability, e.g., CIDB grading upgrades, business success, etc.
- v) Details of disputes and the associated interventions and/or resolutions.

b. TE Construction Manager's Qualifications and Experience

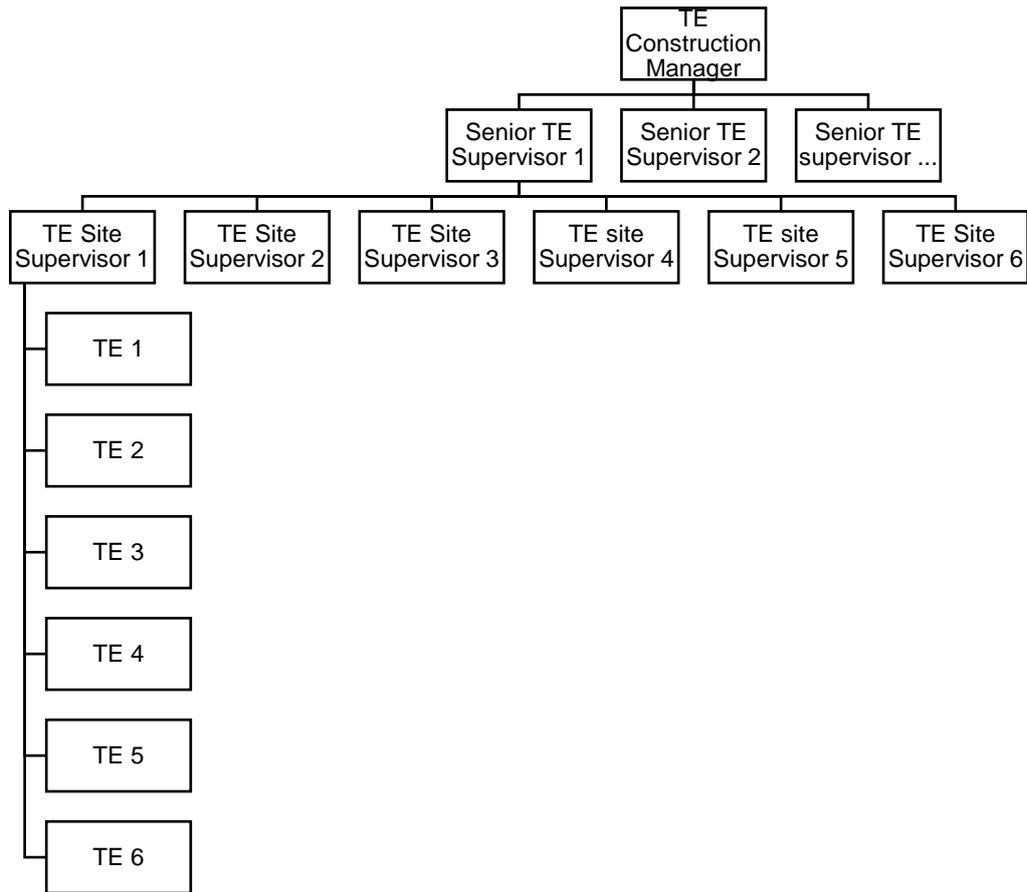
The TE Construction Manager shall have, as a minimum, a National Diploma: Management of Civil Engineering Construction Processes (NQF Level 5) or an equivalent qualification.

He shall have at least 5 years' experience as a Site Agent, managing construction processes in the fields of roads maintenance, new roads construction, roads rehabilitation, roads structures, etc. In addition, he shall have ample knowledge of, and experience in, the requirements of training and mentoring in the road construction environment.

c. TE Construction Manager's Team

The TE Construction Manager shall have on his team one (1) TE Site Supervisor for every six (6) Targeted Enterprises which are in their respective construction phases and one (1) Senior TE Supervisor for every six (6) TE Site Supervisors.

The qualifications and/or experience of TE Site Supervisors and Senior TE Supervisors shall be relevant and of a suitable level to enable them to supervise the level of Targeted Enterprise and the specific works under construction. Below is an indicative organogram of the TE Construction Manager and his team.



D1008.02 General Obligations

The Contractor shall, with the assistance of the TE Construction Manager, comply with the following general obligations:

- a) Assist the Targeted Enterprises in instituting a quality assurance system;
- b) Provide adequate training, coaching, guidance, mentoring and any other identified and approved assistance to Targeted Enterprises and their employees;
- c) Provide support and any other identified and approved assistance to ensure that the Targeted Enterprises meet their obligations and commitments with respect to their sub-contracts,
- d) Assist Targeted Enterprises to monitor and manage the schedules, costs, and cash flows of their sub-contracts.
- e) Endeavour to avoid sub-contract disputes and if disputes do arise, facilitate a process to find an amicable solution.
- f)
- g) Ensure that the CPG objectives are achieved.

D1008.03 Sub-contract Agreements

The Contractor shall conclude subcontract agreements with each subcontracted Targeted Enterprise and shall utilise the Employer’s proforma document for Targeted Enterprise sub-contracting, which is based on the 2011 FIDIC Conditions of Sub-contract for Construction and shall be in accordance with the provisions of amended sub-clause 4.4 of the Conditions of Contract and shall be consistent with the terms and conditions of this Contract.

a) Special Conditions of Contract

The following Special Conditions of Contract forms part of the subcontract agreement:

- i) The Targeted Enterprise's entitlement to receive the training contemplated in this Contract (Part C1, C1.2.1, Part B, clause 6.8);
- ii) The Targeted Enterprise's obligation to participate and co-operate in the training provided for in this Contract (Part C1, C1.2.1, Part B, clause 6.5);
- iii) The allowable sources from which Labour may be drawn in terms of the Contract (Part C1, C1.2.1, Part B, clause 6.8);
- iv) The terms and conditions relating to the recruitment, employment and remuneration of Labour engaged on the Contract (Part C1, C1.2.1, Part B, clause 6.5);
- v) The training to be provided to the Targeted Enterprise's workforce (Part C1, C1.2.1, Part B, clause 6.8);
- vi) The terms and conditions related to payment of the Targeted Enterprise (Part C1, C1.2.1, Part B, clauses 14.6 to 14.8 and 15.3);
- vii) Sanctions in the event of failure by the Targeted Enterprise to comply with the terms and conditions of the subcontract agreement (Part C1, C1.2.1, Part B, clauses 14.6 and 20.4 to 20.7);
- viii) Dispute avoidance and resolution procedures (Part C1, C1.2.1, Part B, clauses 20.4 to 20.7).

Further Special Conditions of Contract required by the Contractor shall only be included into the subcontract agreement once approved by the Employer and the Engineer.

b) Monitoring of Sub-contract Agreements

The proforma subcontract agreement for each group of work packages shall be tabled to the Employer's Independent Targeted Enterprise Monitor for his review and confirmation that sub-contract agreements are in terms of the Employer's requirements and policies.

In addition, the PLC may request proof that subcontract agreements were entered into with the subcontracted Targeted Enterprises. The PLC may also request insight into the Conditions of Subcontract and Subcontract Data.

To protect Targeted Enterprises' competitive advantage and/or tender strategy, only the subcontract agreement shall be available to the PLC for perusal and not the pricing structure and/or Schedule of Quantities.

A copy of each subcontract agreement shall be filed with the Engineer after confirming that it is in accordance with the provisions of this Contract.

D1008.04 Payment of Targeted Enterprises

Targeted Enterprises shall be paid the rates and/or provisional sums which they have tendered, or which have been negotiated as described in this Section D of the Specifications.

a) Payment of Provisional and General Obligations

Provision shall be made in the subcontract agreement for the Targeted Enterprise's preliminary and general obligations (P&Gs), which shall be calculated as a minimum of 15% of the value of the scheduled subcontract work items.

Where the Contractor's subcontract work is not paid from a Provisional Sum, the P&Gs of the Targeted Enterprise shall be paid from the Lump Sum tendered by the Contractor for the P&Gs of Targeted Enterprises.

P&Gs shall be paid to Targeted Enterprises as per Section C1.3.1 of the COTO specification payment items, i.e.:

- i) C1.3.1.1 paid in 3 instalments of 50%, 35% and 15%;
- ii) C1.3.1.2 paid as a percentage of the total value progressively per certificate;
- iii) C1.3.1.3 paid monthly for the sub-contractor's contract duration.

b) Monitoring of Payment of Targeted Enterprises

The Employer's independent Targeted Enterprise Monitor shall audit the Contractor's Payment of Targeted Enterprises to ensure timeous and correct payment in terms of the Employer's requirements and Policies and shall report his findings to the Employer's Project Manager on a regular basis.

D1008.05 Quality of Work and Performance of Targeted Enterprises

a) Ensuring Quality of Work and Performance

The purpose of the Employer's CPG is to, amongst others, enhance the utilisation and development of Targeted Enterprises. Thus, while the Contractor remains responsible for the quality of work and performance of Targeted Enterprises, he may not neglect the developmental requirements in the sub-contracting of Targeted Enterprises.

It is thus emphasised that the Contractor's TE Construction Manager shall closely monitor and supervise all Targeted Enterprises and shall train, coach, guide, mentor and assist each Targeted Enterprise in all aspects of management, execution and completion of its subcontract. This shall typically include assistance with planning of the Works, sourcing and ordering of materials, labour relations, monthly measurements and invoicing procedures. The extent and level of such training, coaching, guidance, mentoring, and assistance to be provided by the Contractor shall be commensurate with the level of subcontract applicable and shall be directed at enabling the Targeted Enterprise to achieve the successful execution and completion of its subcontract.

b) Failure by the Targeted Enterprise to Comply

If the Targeted Enterprise, in the opinion of the Engineer, fails to comply with any of the criteria listed below, the Engineer shall issue a written warning to the Contractor stating all the areas of non-compliance. A copy of the letter of warning shall be forwarded to the Employer's Project Manager and the Employer's independent Targeted Enterprise Monitor. The criteria are as follows:

- i) Deliver acceptable standard of work as set out in the specifications;
- ii) Progress in accordance with the time constraints in the subcontract agreement;
- iii) Punctual and full payment of the workforce and suppliers;
- iv) Site safety;
- v) Accommodation of traffic.

c) Assist the Targeted Enterprise to Make Good

The Contractor shall in terms of the sub-contract agreement (Part C, clause 3.1.12) give reasonable warning to the Targeted Enterprise when any contravention of the terms and conditions of the subcontract agreement has occurred or appears likely to occur.

The Contractor shall, together with the Targeted Enterprise, identify the causes that led to failure to comply and jointly develop a plan to rectify, which plan shall be submitted to the Employer's Project Manager and the Engineer for information purposes.

Based on the plan to rectify, the Contractor shall give the Targeted Enterprise reasonable opportunity to make good any such contravention, or to avoid such contravention, and shall render all reasonable assistance to the Targeted Enterprise in this regard.

d) Monitoring Execution of the Plan to Make Good

The Employer's independent Targeted Enterprise Monitor shall review plans to rectify and monitor the execution thereof to ensure that Targeted Enterprises are given a fair opportunity to rectify within a developmental environment. He shall report his findings to the Employer's Project Manager monthly.

D1008.06 Dispute Avoidance and Resolution Procedures

When any disputes arise, the Contractor shall within seven (7) calendar days inform the Employer's Project Manager, the Employer's Targeted Enterprise Monitor, and the Engineer, in writing, of the details of the dispute.

a) Facilitate Dispute Avoidance

Prior to taking any action, the Contractor shall commence with a facilitation process by arranging a formal meeting with the Targeted Enterprise with the aim to find an amicable solution to the dispute. The meeting shall be attended by the Employer's Project Manager, the Employer's Targeted Enterprise Monitor, and the Engineer to ensure a fair and transparent process in reaching a settlement.

If the parties are unable to find an amicable solution, the Contractor shall explain fully to the Targeted Enterprise the provisions in the sub-contract agreement to address disputes. If action is necessary, it shall be discussed with the Employer's Project Manager and the Engineer prior to any action being taken.

b) Support to Targeted Enterprise during Dispute Resolution Process

While the Employer's Project Manager and the Engineer will observe the dispute resolution process to ensure fairness and transparency, the Targeted Enterprise may request consultation and assistance from the Targeted Enterprise Monitor. The Targeted Enterprise Monitor will assist the Targeted Enterprise with the interpretation of the Conditions of Sub-contract and will guide the Targeted Enterprise during the dispute resolution process.

c) Issuing a Letter of Warning to Targeted Enterprise

The Contractor shall issue a letter of warning to the Targeted Enterprise, whom shall have 21 calendar days from the date of receipt of the letter of warning by the Contractor to address and rectify the issues raised by the Engineer, except for issues pertaining to Site Safety and Accommodation of Traffic, for which the reaction time shall be in accordance with the relevant specifications for those aspects of the Works, but which shall not be longer than 24 hours.

d) Failure by the Targeted Enterprise to Comply

Failure by the Targeted Enterprise to comply with a deadline, will be sufficient grounds for the Contractor to apply a penalty or terminate the subcontract agreement provided that the Employer and the Engineer are satisfied that the Contractor has made every effort to correct the performance of the Targeted Enterprise.

The Targeted Enterprise may dispute any ruling given or deemed to be given by the Contractor or the Engineer, within 21 calendar days after receipt thereof by

submitting a written Dispute Notice to the Contractor, in terms of the relevant Conditions of Sub-contract.

On request by the Targeted Enterprise, the Targeted Enterprise Monitor will assist the Targeted Enterprise with the interpretation of the Conditions of Sub-contract and will guide the Targeted Enterprise during the dispute resolution process.

D1009 WORK SUITABLE FOR EXECUTION BY TARGETED ENTERPRISES

To assist the Contractor in achieving his CPG, the following work items have been identified as being suitable for execution by Targeted Enterprises:

- a) Erection and maintenance of the Contractor's camp site
- b) Works identified for target enterprises includes the works listed below, but may not be limited to this list:
- c) Traffic accommodation
- d) Trenching for services
- e) Earthworks
- f) Prime coat & surfacing
- g) Installation of road signs
- h) Drains
- i) Culverts and wingwalls
- j) Kerbs, channel and concrete lined drains
- k) Stone pitching and erosion protection
- l) Non-Structural Gabions
- m) Guide blocks and Kilometre markers
- n) Road Restraint Systems
- o) Landscaping and planting of plants
- p) Finishing the road and road reserve and treating old roads
- q) Construction of pedestrian walkways and bus bays
- r) Supply and installation of Guardrails

From the above work items, the following have been identified as suitable for execution by CIDB CE1 and CE2 Targeted Enterprises:

- a) Drains
- b) Culverts and wingwalls
- c) Kerbs, channel and concrete lined drains
- d) Stone pitching and erosion protection
- e) Non-Structural Gabions
- f) Guide blocks and Kilometre markers
- g) Road Restraint Systems
- h) Landscaping and planting of plants
- i) Finishing the road and road reserve and treating old roads
- j) Construction of pedestrian walkways and bus bays
- k) Supply and installation of Guardrails

The work to be carried out by Targeted Enterprises is not limited to the work listed above and the Contractor may need to engage Targeted Enterprises on other aspects of the Works to achieve the CPG.

A Provisional Sum for the work by CIDB 1 and 2 Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors is allowed under pay item D10.05.

D1010 TRAINING, COACHING, GUIDANCE, MENTORING AND ASSISTANCE

The Contractor shall with the input and support of the PLC develop a Training and Skills Development Programme which shall be managed by the Contractor's TE Construction Manager.

D1010.01 Purpose of the Training and Skills Development Programme(s)

Skills development forms an integral part of the Employer's Transformation and Community Development Policies and hence, it is important to the Employer that Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises be equipped with skills that can be used to gain meaningful future employment and secure subcontracting opportunities.

It is, therefore, a requirement of this Contract that the Contractor provide adequate training, coaching, guidance, mentoring and assistance to the Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises to ensure skills development within the Construction Industry.

D1010.02 Skills Audit and Analysis

To develop the Training and Skills Development Programme(s), the Contractor shall conduct a skills audit and analysis of Labour on the Targeted Labour database and the Targeted Labour of sub-contracted Targeted Enterprises to determine their levels of education, existing qualifications, and skills sets. The outcome of the skills audit and analysis shall be used to develop a Training and Skills Development Programme(s) that will benefit both the employee and the Construction Industry at large.

Included in the skills audit and analysis shall be a separate section, analysing the education, qualifications and skills sets of the Targeted Enterprise's owners and their supervisors sub-contracted by the Contractor to develop a Training and Skills Development Programme that will develop and improve the ability of small business owners and their supervisory staff to better manage their enterprises.

D1010.03 Developing the Training and Skills Development Programme

The Employer shall be involved in the decision making and quality control pertaining to the development and implementation of the Training and Skills Development Programme facilitated through this Contract.

The Employer has no service agreement or memorandum of understanding with any education and training quality assurance body and, therefore, does not function as the "Employer" as defined under any three-party-agreement between the Trainee, the Training Provider and the Employer.

However, the Employer requires similar outcomes to that of formal learnership programmes and the Contractor shall structure a Training and Skills Development Programme in a manner that permits continued access to further learning and qualifications within a defined programme.

The complete Training and Skills Development Programme shall be developed during the Mobilisation Period, accepted by the Engineer after consultation with the Employer and tabled to the PLC for their information before any training commence.

D1010.04 The Training Service Provider

While the Contractor's TE Construction Manager will manage the Training, Development and Support Programme and mentor Targeted Enterprise subcontractors from a practical point of view, the Contractor shall subcontract a Training Service Provider to implement the theoretical training components of the Programme by applying the Employer's Supply Chain Management Policy for second tier procurement.

a) Accreditation of the Training Service Provider

The Training Service Provider entity shall be accredited, and have in its employ Practitioners, Assessors and Moderators who are registered, with the Construction Education Training Authority (CETA). Proof of accreditation and registration shall be

current, valid and list the NQF levels and Unit Standards for which the entity and its staff are accredited.

b) Qualifications and Experience of the Training Service Provider

The training and competency levels required of the Training Service Provider and his staff are outlined in the table below:

TABLE D1010/1: QUALIFICATIONS FOR TRAINING STAFF

Designation	Title and Unit Standard No.	NQF Level	Credit
Practitioner	Train the trainer; No 7384	4	16
Assessor	Conduct outcome base assessment; No 115753	5	15
Moderator	Conduct moderation of outcome-based assessment; No 115759	6	10

In addition to the above qualifications, and in keeping with current CETA practical experience requirements for registration as a Practitioner, NQF Level 4 Unit Standards shall only be presented by Practitioners with NQF Level 5 (one level up) credentials.

The Employer further requires that Assessors and Moderators shall have at least 5 years' experience as a Site Agent, managing construction processes in the fields of roads maintenance, new roads construction, roads rehabilitation and structures.

Elective Unit Standards are typically more vocational orientated and may require specialist input. It is thus not a requirement that individual Practitioners and Assessors shall have all the necessary skills for all the different categories of Unit Standards. The Training Service Provider may and shall therefore, when necessary, appoint Practitioners and Assessors on an ad hoc basis with the levels of experience which are required for the Unit Standards to be presented.

D1010.05 Training and Skills Development Programme: General Requirements

The Training and Skills Development Programme shall consist of Learnerships that include multiple, but related Unit Standards which are (1) relevant to the Works to be constructed, (2) aimed at achieving the skills development objectives of the Programme, and (3) lead towards a formal qualification in the Construction Industry.

Learnerships shall include both the theoretical and practical components of each Unit Standard and shall be in accordance with the various laws and regulations contained in the South African Qualification Authority (SAQA) statutes.

a) Training Programme: Requirements and Considerations

The Skills Audit and Analysis shall inform the Contractor of every employee's Recognised Prior Learning (RPL) skills and competencies, which shall be taken into consideration in the development of the Training and Skills Development Programme so that the RPL skills and competencies, together with the Training Programme Unit Standards offerings, will lead to a full Learnership outcome and hence a formal qualification.

It is recognised that the Training and Skills Development Programme may consist of several Unit Standards but totalling insufficient credits for a full Learnership qualification. Nevertheless, the competencies and credits achieved in the

Programme shall contribute to a full Learnership by a later acquisition of the outstanding Unit Standards required for the full Learnership.

The Training and Skills Development Programme shall be structured in a manner to prioritise those Unit Standards that will equip Trainees with the minimum skills and competencies required to become economically involved in the execution of the Works as soon as possible.

The Training Service Provider shall apply the SAQA Learnership criteria of which the basic elements are listed below to demonstrate the Employer's requirements:

- i) Minimum credits for qualification;
- ii) Fundamental Unit Standards and credit values;
- iii) Core Unit Standards and credit values;
- iv) Elective Units Standards and credit values;
- v) Assumption that NQF Level 3 literacy, numeracy, and computer competencies exist;
- vi) RPL processes;
- vii) Exit level outcomes.

The above criteria are not exhaustive, and the Training Service Provider shall apply the systems and processes required by the relevant SAQA and other related legislation pertinent to training. The Training Service Provider shall regularly consult the SAQA website (www.saga.org.za) to ensure that the most current Unit Standards are presented. In the event of any conflict, the legislated requirements shall apply.

While structuring the Learnership offerings, the Training Service Provider shall distinguish between the levels of learning required. The bulk of the training shall focus on NQF Levels 4 and 3. NQF Level 5 training is not anticipated but may be suitable for qualifying staff of established small contractors. The qualification titles for the respective NQF Levels are:

- a. NQF Level 3 National Certificate: Construction Roadworks.
- b. NQF Level 4 National Certificate: Supervision of Construction Processes
- c. NQF Level 4 National Certificate: Business Management
- d. NQF Level 5 National Diploma: Management of Civil Engineering Construction Processes

It may be necessary to include additional Core Unit Standards, e.g. "Tendering" or "Entrepreneurship" as an additional Unit Standard for NQF Level 4, to achieve the Contract's development objectives. The identification of any additional Unit Standards shall be discussed with the Engineer and shall not be implemented without prior approval.

Before qualifying, Trainees will be expected to demonstrate competence in a practical situation that integrates the assessment of all specific outcomes, for all Unit Standards in the Learnership Programme.

All training shall take place within normal working hours, or as agreed with the trainees.

b) Selection of Trainees

To complete a Learnership successfully requires minimum literacy and numeracy competencies as defined by SAQA. The Training Service Provider shall utilise the skills audit and analysis and conduct additional skills analysis to benchmark the literacy and numeracy levels of Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises and their employees. This information shall guide the Training Service Provider in formulating the Trainee selection methodology(ies) and process(es). The Training Service Provider shall make provision for:

- i) baseline assessments, e.g. conducting RPL enquiries and tests; and
- ii) a skills gap programme consisting of Fundamental Unit Standards, to facilitate the selection process.

Trainees identified as having already acquired some tertiary training, particularly in the field of Civil Engineering, may be suitable for a specialised Trainee programme or a higher NQF Level programme. The Training and Skills Development Programme shall, therefore, make provision for Trainees with a variety of competency levels and shall make provision for different levels of training.

It should be noted that where this Section D of the Specifications refers to the selection and training of Trainees, any person, employed by any national, provincial or local authority, being it full time or part time, is expressly excluded from being considered for this training.

c) Learning Material

Learning material is required for each Unit Standard. This learning material is the equivalent of prescribed textbooks for other qualifications. Each Trainee shall receive a copy of the learning material to learn the contents and to use it as a reference source after obtaining the qualification.

The SAQA Unit Standard curriculums define the contents of the learning material. The learning material shall not only comply with the SAQA and CETA guidelines but shall be technically and practically aligned to road construction and/or road maintenance. Any input from a subject matter expert required to ensure the appropriateness of learning material contents shall be included in the Training Service Provider's costs.

The requirements to be addressed in learning material as outlined by the SAQA Unit Standard curriculums are, amongst others, the following:

- i) purpose of the Unit Standard;
- ii) specific outcomes (typically 4 per Unit Standard);
- iii) assessment criteria (typically 4 per specific outcome);
- iv) range as is defined for each specific outcome;
- v) critical cross-field outcomes for the Unit Standard;
- vi) Unit Standard essential embedded knowledge.

d) Student Experiential Training or Learnerships or Internships

The Employer may deploy students to the construction site to obtain experiential training. The Contractor shall provide experiential training to these students in accordance with the relevant academic institution's requirements, which is typically a university, a university of technology, or a TVET.

The Contractor shall also provide students with all the tools (including appropriate information technology hardware and software) and site office space necessary to carry out engineering work as if they were the Contractor's own permanent staff.

Reporting on training progress of each student shall be compiled according to the formats and intervals set by the relevant academic institution.

(e) Keeping of Records

The Training Service Provider shall keep comprehensive records of the training provided to each Trainee and shall ensure that Trainees' successful completion of successive Unit Standards are entered onto the national SAQA database. After the successful completion of generic skills courses, each Trainee shall be issued with a certificate indicating the course contents as proof of attendance and completion.

The Contractor shall keep a register of certificates issued. Whenever required, the Contractor shall provide copies of such records to the Engineer.

(f) Skills Development Requirements

i) Contract Skills Development Goals (CSDG)

This section establishes a minimum CSDG which is to be achieved in the performance of a Contract (*as per the CIDB Standard for Developing Skills through Infrastructure Contracts August 2013*) in relation to the provision of different types of workplace opportunities linked to work associated with a Contract which culminates in or leads to:

- a. a part- or full occupational qualification registered on the National Qualification Framework;
- b. a trade qualification leading to a listed trade (GG No. 35625, 31 August 2012);
- c. a national diploma registered on the National Qualification Framework; and
- d. registration in a professional category by one of the professional bodies listed in Table 1 of the Standard.

The Contractor shall achieve or exceed the CSDG in the performance of the Contract. The Contractor may, if need be, devolve their obligations onto Subcontractors.

The CSDG shall not be less than the contract amount multiplied by 0.25 percent (%) for Civil Engineering work (CE). For this reason, the Contractor shall insert the CSDG amount in form C2.3 Summary of Pricing Schedule.

ii) Achieving Contract Skills Development Goal (CSDG)

The Contractor shall achieve the CSDG by providing employment opportunities to Trainees requiring structured workplace learning using one or a combination of any of the following methods in relation to work directly related to the Contract:

Method 1: Structured workplace learning opportunities for Trainees (LoL) towards the attainment of a part or a full occupational qualification.

This training method shall apply to Targeted Enterprises and Targeted Labour.

Method 2: Structured workplace learning opportunities for apprentices or other artisan Trainees (LoA) towards the attainment of a trade qualification leading to a listed trade (GG No. 35625, 31 August 2012) subject to at least 60% of the artisan Trainees being holders of public FET college qualifications.

This training method shall apply to Targeted Enterprises and Targeted Labour.

Method 3: Work integrated learning opportunities for University of Technology or Comprehensive University students (LoUS) completing their national diplomas.

This training method shall apply to P1 and P2 Trainees, or Trainees with a 240 credits qualification. Both the

permanently employed and temporary employed Trainees shall be considered under this training method.

Method 4: Structured workplace learning opportunities for candidates (LoC) toward registration in a professional category by a statutory council listed in Table 1 of the Standards.

This training method shall apply to Candidates with 480 credits qualification. Both the permanently employed and temporary employed Trainees shall be considered under this training method.

No single method shall contribute more than 75 percent of the CSDG. Permanently employed Trainees may not account for more than 33 percent (%) of the CSDG, and not more than one method may be applied to any individual concurrently in the calculation of the CSDG.

iii) CSDG Credits

The CSDG shall be calculated by multiplying the number of people employed by the Contractor and placed for continuous training opportunities in a three-month period by the notional values contained in Table 3 of the Standard, or as revised in a Gazette notice.

The Contractor may source beneficiaries of the CSDG from a Skills Development Agency (SDA) recognised by the CIDB.

All beneficiaries shall be registered with a construction Skills Development Agency (SDA) recognised by the CIDB.

iv) Denial of Credits

Credits towards the CSDG shall be denied should the Contractor not fulfil all the requirements listed in clause 3.4 (a) to (f) of the Standards.

v) Compliance with Requirements

The Contractor shall comply with the requirement as set out in clause 4 of the Standards.

vi) Records

The Contractor shall submit all the documentation required in terms of clause 4 of the Standards, in a timely manner and according to a prescribed format where applicable.

The Engineer shall certify the value of the credits counted towards the CSDG, if any, whenever a claim for payment is issued to the Employer and shall notify the Contractor of this amount.

The Contractor shall, upon termination of the opportunities provided to satisfy the CSDG, certify the quantum and nature of the opportunity and submit the certificate, counter-certified by the relevant individual, to the Engineer for record-keeping purposes.

vii) Sanctions

Failure to achieve the CSDG shall render the Contractor liable for a penalty as prescribed in clause 8.7 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract. Penalties shall be as follows:

- a. $\text{Penalty} = 0.5 \times \{[\text{LoAs} + \text{LoLs} + \text{LoUSs} + \text{LoCs}]\}$
 Where:
 LoLs = Monetary Value of the shortfall for structured workplace learning opportunities for Trainees towards the attainment of a part or a full occupational qualification;
 LoAs = Monetary Value of the shortfall for structured workplace learning opportunities for apprentices or other artisan Trainees towards the attainment of a trade qualification leading to a listed trade (GG No. 35625, 31 August 2012) subject to at least 60% of the artisan Trainees being holders of public FET college qualifications;
 LoUSs = Monetary Value of the shortfall for work integrated learning opportunities for University of Technology or Comprehensive University students completing their national diplomas (LoUS);
 LoCs = Monetary Value of the shortfall for structured workplace learning opportunities for candidates towards registration in a professional category by a statutory council listed in Table 1 of the Standards (LoC), and
- b. Delay the issuing of the Performance Certificate until all the required records described in clause 5 of the Standards are received.

(g) Generic Skills Training

Generic skills shall be taught where the need has been identified and approved by the Employer and the Engineer.

The Contractor shall make representation to the Employer and the Engineer, who shall approve candidates that should attend such courses as they deem appropriate. Those selected shall receive formal generic skills training in a programmed and progressive manner. The PLC may also identify a need for generic skills training.

Typical training programmes could comprise some or all of the following modules:

- i) Basic hygiene and HIV/AIDS awareness;
- ii) Road safety;
- iii) Basic management of the environment;
- iv) Tourism awareness and opportunities;
- v) Managing personal finance;
- vi) Adult Basic Education and Training (ABET);
- vii) Community based training programmes (e.g. knitting, computer skills, plant/machine operator, etc.).

All generic skills training shall be accredited by the relevant Sector Education and Training Authority (SETA) and shall be provided with accredited entities and/or individuals.

(h) Community Training

Community training shall be taught where the need has been identified. Affected Communities may submit their training needs to the PLC for the Contractor's consideration and inclusion into the Training and Skills Development Programme.

While considering the training needs of affected Communities, the Engineer shall inform the PLC of the Contract's training limitations, as well as of the training that could be undertaken through the Contract. Trainees from the Community shall be identified through the Community structures, and with the input and support of the PLC. Trainees selected from the Community shall receive formal skills training in a programmed and progressive manner in compliance with subclause D1010.04.

Priority shall be given to training that will equip Community members with skills that will enhance their employability.

All community skills training shall be accredited by the relevant Sector Education and Training Authority (SETA) and shall be provided with accredited entities and/or individuals.

(i) Training Facilities

The Contractor shall be responsible for providing everything necessary to offer the various training workshops and modules including:

- i) a suitable venue with sufficient furniture, lighting and power,
- ii) all necessary stationery consumables and study material,
- iii) transport for attendees.

D1011 LABOUR ENHANCED CONSTRUCTION

The Contractor's attention is drawn to the fact that it is an objective of the Contract to maximise the labour content of certain operations or portions thereof. In this regard, where the specified work allows for a choice between mechanical or labour-enhanced means, the former should generally be kept to the practical minimum.

Before commencing with any labour enhanced operations the Contractor shall discuss his intentions with the Engineer and shall submit to the Engineer on a monthly basis, daily labour returns indicating the numbers of temporary personnel employed on the Works and the activities on which they were engaged.

It should be noted that activities that are conventionally done by labour methods, e.g. gabions, shall not qualify under this Section D of the Specifications.

D1012 COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT

D1012.01 Corporate Social Investment (CSI)

The Contractor shall demonstrate its willingness to actively participate in the social development initiatives for local Communities affected by the Contract. To this end, the Contractor shall provide details of CSI initiatives it will actively pursue under Form D9: Corporate Social Investment.

D1012.02 Community Development Component

Community Development (CD) components to the Contract are primarily training and skills development programmes to benefit an identified Community and Trainee Targeted Enterprises selected from this Community.

The owners and supervisors of Trainee Targeted Enterprises receive SAQA accredited training towards an accredited qualification which consists of theoretical and practical components.

The theoretical training is conducted by the Contractor's Training Service Provider while the practical training, which is the construction of the CD Works, is undertaken by the Trainee Targeted Enterprises under the mentorship and supervision of the Contractor's dedicated TE Construction Manager.

D1013 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	Unit
-------------	-------------

D10.01 Target Group Participation

(a)	Contract Participation Performance bonus	Prime Cost (PC) Sum
-----	--	---------------------

The prime cost sum for item D10.01(a) shall cover any CPP bonus due as specified in clause D1003.05. The prime cost sum shall be expended in accordance with clause 13.5 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract.

Note:

No separate payment shall be made for any costs incurred by the Contractor, whether direct or indirect, for his efforts in accomplishing the specified requirements, and which are not recoverable from the pay-items allowed. Such costs shall be deemed to have been included in the rate offered under pay sub-item C1.3.1.3 Contractor's Establishment on Site and General Obligations: Time Related Obligations.

Item	Unit
-------------	-------------

D10.02 Stakeholder and Community Liaison and Social Facilitation

(a)	Cost of liaison, social facilitation and PLC support	Prime Cost (PC) Sum
-----	--	---------------------

(b)	Handling cost and profit in respect of sub-item D10.02(a)	Percentage (%)
-----	---	----------------

The prime cost sum for item D10.02(a) shall cover the direct costs incurred by attending members of the PLC. The rate of compensation shall be fair and agreed by the Engineer in accordance with clause 13.5 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract. The tendered percentage for sub-item D10.02(b) shall include full compensation for all handling costs and profit of the Contractor associated with sub-item D10.02(a).

The liaison with, and assistance provided by the Contractor to the PLC to perform its duties shall not be paid from the prime cost sum. The Contractor's costs to liaise with the PLC and render such assistance shall be deemed to have been included in its rate offered for pay sub-item C1.3.1.3 Contractor's Establishment on Site and General Obligations: Time Related Obligations.

Item	Unit
-------------	-------------

D10.03 Tender Process for Targeted Enterprises

(a)	Contractor's charge for the management and execution of the Targeted Enterprise procurement process:	
	(i) Procurement process for the totality of all tenders concluded for the appointment of Targeted Enterprise subcontractors of CIDB 1 and 2 contractor grading	Number (No)
	(ii) Procurement process for the totality of all tenders concluded for the appointment of Targeted Enterprise subcontractors of CIDB 3 and 4 contractor grading	Number (No)
	(iii) Procurement process for the totality of all tenders concluded for the appointment of Targeted Enterprise subcontractors of CIDB 5 and higher contractor grading	Number (No)

(iv)	Procurement process for the totality of all tenders concluded for the appointment of Targeted Enterprise suppliers	Number (No)
------	--	-------------

(b)	Targeted Enterprise Procurement Coordinator	Month
-----	---	-------

The unit of measurement for sub-item D10.03(a) shall be the number of individual subcontract agreements concluded with Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors and suppliers in accordance with the procurement process described in this Section D of the Specifications.

The tendered monthly rate for sub-item D10.03(b) shall include full compensation for the provision of the relevant personnel on a full-time basis to carry out the requirements in terms of sub-item D10.03(a) and the full contents of this Section D of the Specifications.

Each tendered rate shall be in full compensation for the management and execution of the Targeted Enterprise procurement process in the relevant CIDB contractor grading designation scheduled, including for the appointment of a TE Procurement Coordinator (if required), the pre-tender training of eligible Targeted Enterprises, the compilation, printing, binding and issue of the tender documents for each tender, for the advertising of each tender, for the provision of the venue and the conducting of each compulsory briefing session for tenderers, for the conducting of each tender opening process, for the adjudication of the tenders received for each tender, for the preparation of each tender adjudication report and the review thereof in conjunction with the Employer, Engineer and the PLC, for the award of each tender and for the conclusion of the subcontract agreement with each successful Targeted Enterprise tenderer, and any other relevant requirement described in this Section D of the Specifications.

Item	Unit
D10.04 Responsibilities of the Contractor towards Targeted Enterprises	
(a)	Contractor's establishment, management, management support, assistance, coaching, guidance, mentoring and supervision of Targeted Enterprises
(b)	Targeted Enterprise Construction Manager
(c)	Targeted Enterprise Site Supervisors

Month

Person Month

Person Month

The tendered monthly rate for sub-item D10.04(a) shall include full compensation for the registration of all the subcontract agreements and the management of all the Targeted Enterprise subcontracts, including for the provision of the necessary management, support, coaching, guidance, mentoring and supervision of the Targeted Enterprise subcontractors.

The tendered monthly rate for sub-items D10.04(b) and (c) shall include full compensation for the provision of the relevant personnel on a full-time basis to carry out the requirements in terms of sub-item D10.04(a) and the full contents of this Section D of the Specifications.

Item	Unit
D10.05 Construction Works by Targeted Enterprises	
(a) Payments associated with the construction works executed by Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors of CIDB 1 and 2 contractor grading designation appointed in terms of Section D of the Specifications	Provisional (Prov) Sum
(b) Handling costs and profit in respect of payment associated with sub-item D10.05(a)	Percentage (%)
(c) Fluctuation between the main contractor's rates and that of the Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors	Lump Sum (LS)
(d) Preliminary and General Obligations of Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors appointed in terms of Section D of the Specifications	Lump Sum (LS)

Expenditure under sub-items D10.05(a) shall be in accordance with clause 13.5 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract.

The Provisional Sum for sub-item D10.05(a) is provided to cover the cost of the construction works, including preliminary and general obligations carried out by the Targeted Enterprise subcontractors of CIDB 1 and 2 contractor grading designation as certified by the Engineer, in separate payments for each Targeted Enterprise in accordance with Section D of the Specifications. Expenditure under sub-item D10.05(a) shall be limited to the Provisional Sum amount stated in the Pricing Schedule. Construction works by Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors of CIDB 1 and 2 contractor grading designation exceeding the Provisional Sum amount shall be measured for payment from the applicable work items in the Contractor's pricing schedule.

The tendered percentage for sub-item D10.05(b) is the percentage of the amount spent under sub-item D10.05(a) and shall include full compensation for the Contractor's handling costs, profit or any other costs associated with the work conducted by the Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors, which are not provided for in other pay items.

The Lump Sum tendered under item D10.05(c) is for fluctuation of the Targeted Enterprise sub-contractor rates more than the contractor's tendered rates, for work not paid under items D10.05(a). Payment of the Lump Sum shall be on a prorata basis to provide compensation for the fluctuation between the tendered rates of the Main Contractor and that of the Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors until the Lump Sum is depleted. Any costs incurred due to fluctuation in tendered rates more than that tendered for under item D10.05(c) will be for the Contractor's account. Item D10.05(c) is applicable where the Target Enterprise sub-contractor's tender amount is higher than the Main Contractor's tender amount. The Lump Sum will cover the fluctuation for all the tendered rates of the sub-contractors.

The Lump Sum tendered under item D10.05(d) is for the Preliminary and General Obligations of Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors (excluding CIDB 1 and 2 contractor grading designation paid from the Provisional Sum). Payment of the Lump Sum shall be on a prorata basis to provide compensation for the P&Gs of Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors until the Lump Sum is depleted. Any costs incurred for the P&Gs of Targeted Enterprise sub-contractors more than that tendered for under item D10.05(d) will be for the Contractor's account.

Item	Unit
D10.06	Training, coaching, guidance, mentoring and assistance
(a)	Training Costs
	(i) Accredited NQF training
	(ii) Accredited generic skills training
	(iii) Community skills training
	(iv) Handling cost and profit in respect of sub-items D10.06(a)(i), (ii) and (iii)
	Provisional (Prov) Sum
	Provisional (Prov) Sum
	Provisional (Prov) Sum
	Percentage (%)
(b)	Student experiential training
	(i) Student stipends
	(ii) Provision of experiential training
	Prime Cost (PC) Sum
	Person Month
(c)	Other costs during training
	Provisional (Prov) Sum
(d)	Training venue
	Lump Sum (LS)

The Provisional Sums under sub-items D10.06(a) shall be paid in accordance with the provisions of sub-clause 13.5 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract. The Provisional Sums shall include all charges for the provision and delivery of the service including an accredited Training Service Provider (if required), learning material and any other requirement as described in Section D1010 of the Specifications.

The rate tendered under sub-item D10.06(a)(iv) shall be deemed to cover all costs required to organise accredited trainers to provide training and shall include the Contractor's handling cost, profit, record keeping, reporting and all other costs associated with sub-items D10.06(a)(i), (ii), and (iii).

The prime cost sum under sub-item D10.06(b)(i) shall be paid in accordance with the provisions of sub-clause 13.5 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract. The prime cost sum shall cover the monthly stipend as prescribed by the Employer to be paid to students receiving experiential training.

The unit of measurement for sub-item D10.06(b)(ii) shall be the person-month, with pro-rata payments made for partial months for training provided based on 23 workdays per month.

The rate tendered under sub-item D10.06(b)(ii) shall include full compensation for the Contractor to provide training to the students provided by the Employer inclusive of all costs to communicate with the Employer and any other body or organisation in respect of work assigned to the students. The rate tendered shall include telephone calls and charges, stationery and information technology hardware, software, connection or licence costs and lost production, profits and all other incidentals as well as all administrative and overhead costs.

The Provisional Sum under pay item D10.06(c) shall be paid in accordance with the provisions of sub-clause 13.5 of the FIDIC Conditions of Contract. The Provisional Sum shall cover the Contractor's costs for payment of wages of employed trainees attending training courses during working hours, for the provision of meals to trainees, for provision of transport and for all other incidentals required for the trainees and approved by the Engineer. No mark-up is payable to the Contractor under this item.

The unit of measurement for pay item D10.06(d), shall be the Lump Sum. The sum tendered shall include full compensation for the provision of the training venue, for all necessary lighting, power, furniture, stationery, consumables and study material and all other costs necessary to maintain the venue for the duration of the contract. Payment of the Lump Sum shall be made in two instalments as follows:

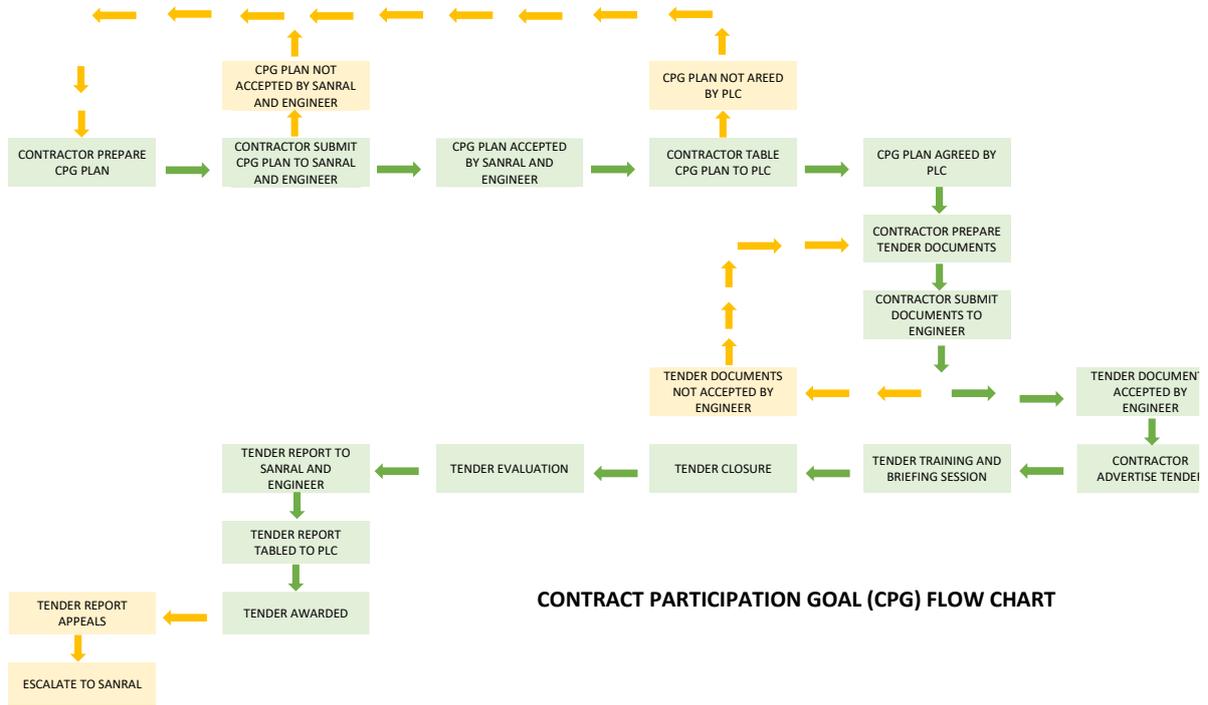
- a) The first instalment, 75% of the Lump Sum, shall be paid after the Contractor has met all his obligations regarding the provision of the training venue as specified.
- b) The second and final instalment, 25% of the Lump Sum, shall be paid after the provision of all the accredited training as specified in the document.

No payment, nor pro-rata payment, shall be made for trainees that, once selected, do not attend or only partially complete structured training courses. The Contractor's own staff may attend the courses provided. However, such attendants from the Contractor's staff shall not be considered for measurement and payment purposes unless they also qualify as Targeted Labour.

C4.13 APPENDICES

Appendix 1:	Locality Plan
Appendix 2:	Weather Data
Appendix 3:	Traffic Data
Appendix 4:	Roughness Data
Appendix 5:	Agreement to Occupy SANRAL's Property
Appendix 6:	Dispute Adjudication Agreement
Appendix 7:	Imported content
Appendix 8:	Contract Participation Goal (CPG) Plan format
Appendix 9:	Project Liaison Committee and Project Liaison Officer Forms
Appendix 10:	Proforma subcontract document
Appendix 11:	Illustrative Programme
Appendix 12:	As-built drawings

APPENDIX 8 – CONTRACT PARTICIPATION GOAL (CPG) PLAN FORMAT



CONTRACT PARTICIPATION GOAL (CPG) FLOW CHART

Contractor Logo and details

Contract Participation Goal Plan

SANRAL Contract Number: XXXX

Contract Name: XXXX

(SANRAL Logo)



Author:
Date:
Version

1.INTRODUCTION

2.OBJECTIVE

3.TARGETED ENTERPRISES

- a. List of Work Packages for Targeted Enterprises
- b. List of Work Packages for Main Contractor

Table 1: CPG Expenditure Breakdown

Project Number				
Project Name				
Designated Groups	Final Contract Value		R	
	Min (TE) CPG Target		%	
	Min (TE CPG Target Amount		R	
Description of CPG Category	CPG Target as per Contract		CPP Planned Achievement	
	Min. Target % as per Contract	Target Amount	Min. Allocated % as per Market Analyses	Expected Amount
Targeted Labour (TL)	Min. xx% of Final Contract Value	R	%	R
Youth				
Women				
Disabled				
Other				
Targeted Enterprise (TE)	Min. xx% of Final Contract Value	R	%	R
Youth				
Women				
Military Veterans				
Disabled				
CIDB 1 and 2				
CIDB 3 and 4				
Other				

- d. Schedule of works and CPG Expenditure Plan
 - i. Schedule of work (Insert Programme)
 - ii. CPG Expenditure Plan

Table 3: Example: CPG Expenditure Plan

Planned CPG Expenditure					
Final Contract Value	R 100 000 000				
CPG (TE) Value	R 30 000 000				
Timeline	2021/2022	2021/2022	2021/2022	2021/2022	Total
Project Expenditure	R 20 000 000	R 30 000 000	R 30 000 000	R 20 000 000	R 100 000 000
Work Packages (CPG %) Expenditure	R 6 000 000	R 9 000 000	R 9 000 000	R 6 000 000	R 30 000 000
Cumulative % Spend	20%	50%	80%	100%	
Cumulative Amount Spend	R 6 000 000	R 6 000 000	R 6 000 000	R 6 000 000	R 6 000 000
Package 1	R 2 000 000				
Package 2	R 2 000 000				
Package 3	R 2 000 000				
Total	R 6 000 000	R	R	R	R

- e. Targeted Enterprises Procurement Program

Table 4: Example: Targeted Enterprise Procurement program

Item	Activity Name	Duration (Days)	Start	Finish

- f. Procedures for Targeted Enterprises Sub-contracting (*As Per Section D1000 of the Specifications*)
 - i. Tender Preparation
 1. Compilation of TE Work Packages
 2. Establishment of a Help Desk
 3. Market Analysis and Resources and Skills Audit
 4. Compilation of Tender Documents
 - ii. Tender Process
 1. Advertising of Works Packages

2. Tender Briefing Sessions
 3. Minimum Tender Submission Documents
 4. Tender Closure and Opening of Tenders
- iii. Tender Evaluation
1. Eligibility
 2. Functionality
 3. Price and Preference
 4. Compliance Check
- iv. Appointment of Successful Targeted Enterprise
1. Price and Rates Discussion
 2. Sub-contract Agreement

4. TARGETED LABOUR

- a. Appointment of Targeted Labour

5. TRAINING DEVELOPMENT AND IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

- a. General Overview
- b. Purpose of the Training Interventions
- c. Proposed Training for Targeted Enterprises and Targeted Labour

The table below depicts the proposed training for the Targeted Enterprises.

Table 5: Proposed Targeted Enterprise Training

Training Summary							
No.	Course Content	Facilitator or Mentor	No. of Participants	Duration of the Course	Training Type	Start Date	Comments
1							
2							
3							
4							
5							
Etc.							

The table below depicts the proposed training for the Targeted Labour.

Table 6: Proposed Targeted Labour Training

Training Summary							
No.	Course Content	Facilitator or Mentor	No. of Participants	Duration of the Course	Training Type	Start Date	Comments
1							
2							
3							
4							
5							
Etc.							

- d. Training Methodology
- e. Selection of Participants
- f. Targeted Participants
- g. Training Materials
- h. Training Times
- i. Training Implementation Plan
- j. Supporting Documents

APPENDIX 9 – SANRAL PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE AND PROJECT LIAISON OFFICER FORMS

FORM A1: PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE – MEMBER NOMINATION FORM

Notes to Nominators and Nominees:

- a) General Principles of Membership:
 - i) Membership is open to any person residing within the boundaries of the Project Area and that are duly nominated by their constituency.
 - ii) Persons nominated as co-opted members do not necessarily have to reside within the boundaries of the Project Area (see explanation in c) below).
 - iii) The nomination process will be conducted in consultation with the Local Municipalities within the Project Area.

- b) Nominations for Membership
 - i) Nominators will submit this prescribed nomination form and include the following information:
 - a. Name of the nominee,
 - b. Name of the proposer and five (5) seconders,
 - c. Residential address of the nominee,
 - d. Constituency whom the nominee will represent, and
 - e. Acceptance of nomination by the nominee.

- c) Co-opted Members
 - i) Co-opted members are members that the PLC chooses to add in addition to PLC members selected through the representative nomination process.
 - ii) Co-opted members may include a PLC member from the RRM PLC within the Project Area, Councillors, and specialists such as environmental specialists, etc.
 - iii) Co-opted members will have limited participation rights in PLC meetings, will not have voting rights and will not receive any seating allowance for participating in the PLC meeting.

- d) Duration of Membership
 - i) The duration of a nominee’s membership of the PLC will depend on the duration of the project or the duration of the PLC, whichever occurs first.
 - ii) A nominee’s membership will end with immediate effect in terms of the Rules of Engagement for PLC members.

1. Details of individual or organisation making the nomination:

I,, representing

hereby nominate

to be a member of the PLC for Project

.....

Signature Date

2. Details of the seconders (individuals supporting the nomination):

	Name	Surname	Organisation	Signature
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				

3. Details of the individual accepting the nomination (nominee):

Name and Surname	
Organisation	
Residential Address	
Ward Number	
Municipality	

I,, I.D. number

hereby accept the nomination to be a member of the PLC for Project

I further accept to be bound by the rules, responsibilities and duties prescribed for the Project Liaison Committee Members and the Project Liaison Officers and will always act in good faith.

Signature Date

Witnesses:

Name and Surname Signature

Name and Surname Signature

FORM A2: PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE – RULES, RESPONSIBILITIES AND DUTIES (Derived from D1004.03)

The PLC is the official communication channel through which SANRAL, the Engineer, Contractor and project Stakeholders and affected Communities communicates on project matters. This platform is also used to communicate the impact that the project has or may have on project Stakeholders and the affected Communities. This part of Section D of the Specifications describes the general processes pertaining to the PLC, as well as its role and responsibilities.

1. Establishment of the PLC

The PLC will be established prior to commencement of the Contract or as soon as possible by SANRAL. The PLC consists of SANRAL, the Engineer, Contractor and representatives of project Stakeholders and affected Communities. To ensure that all relevant Stakeholders are represented in the PLC, SANRAL did, or will, consult with the Executive Mayor's office, as well as with the LED Department of the Local Municipalities in the Project Area. Once the PLC has been established, the Employer's further Stakeholder engagement activities shall not prevent the Contractor from continuing with construction.

Typical Stakeholder representation on the PLC may include:

- a) A PLC member from the relevant RRM PLC.
- b) Local Municipality LED Office.
- c) Traditional leadership representation.
- d) Forums representing people with disabilities.
- e) Forums representing women.
- f) Forums representing youth.
- g) Forums representing business sector.
- h) Forums representing transport sector.
- i) Any other Stakeholder forum/organisation recognised by SANRAL and the Local Municipality's LED Office.

Every forum/organisation/constituency may have one (1) representative on the PLC, which representation will be confirmed by a duly signed nomination form.

It should be noted that the PLC is not a political platform. While Councillors may be invited to some PLC meetings, they may not be PLC members and hence, will not have voting rights when attending a PLC meeting.

2. Seating Allowance for PLC Members

PLC membership is voluntary and PLC members will not be remunerated for any time spent or work done associated with representing their constituency on the PLC.

Provision has been made in the Contract for a seating allowance (stipend) to PLC members for actual costs incurred in executing their PLC duties (other than time or work related). The Contractor will determine and table to the PLC a realistic seating allowance which will be substantiated by an outline of the anticipated actual costs envisaged to be incurred by PLC members.

The seating allowance will be increased annually based on the CPI figure contained in Table B2 of Statistical Release P0141 by StatsSA.

3. Induction of the PLC

SANRAL will conduct an induction meeting with the PLC to acquaint PLC members with the following information:

- a) SANRAL's Horizon 2030 Strategy.

- b) SANRAL's Fourteen Point Plan.
- c) The role and responsibilities of PLC members.
- d) SANRAL's Transformation Policy.
- e) How the Transformation Policy impacts on SMMEs.
- f) Relevant details of the Contract, e.g.
 - i) Start and end dates
 - ii) Important milestones
 - iii) CPG targets
 - iv) Envisaged Targeted Enterprise packages
 - v) Envisaged work for other SMMEs (non-CPG).

2. Rules of Engagement for the PLC

In the execution of their duties, members of the PLC shall adhere to the undertakings listed below and the Contractor shall inform the Engineer of any transgression of these undertakings.

a) General Matters and Membership

- i) A PLC member may not be a politically elected representative, and political party representation will not be allowed in the PLC.
- ii) Ward Councillors may interact with the project team through the Mayor's Office.
- iii) If required, and in consultation with SANRAL, a Political Steering Committee (PSC) may be established to address political matters. A PSC will only be established where the Project Area traverse over more than one municipal area.

b) Term of Office for the PLC

- i) The duration of PLC members' participating in the PLC (term of office) shall depend on the duration of the project.
- ii) If SANRAL finds the performance of a PLC member to be below expectation or their conduct to be unacceptable, the affected member will be discharged from their obligations and a new nomination process shall commence.

c) Targeted Enterprise and Targeted Labour

PLC members shall:

- i) ensure that they, or companies in which they hold equity, will not tender on the Contract for any work or sub-contract that may be issued. Should they tender, this will be treated as a conflict of interest and the tender proposal submitted will not be evaluated.
- ii) not have private or business interests in any of the sub-contract tenders tabled to the PLC or considered in this Contract.
- iii) shall recuse themselves from discussions that deal with a sub-contract tender if any other member is of the opinion that a member's participation in deliberations, which is rightly or wrongly construed as improper or irregular, may lead to the award of a sub-contract to a tenderer known to the member or to the member itself.
- iv) recuse themselves from the operations of the PLC following a situation as described in paragraphs ii) above and shall cease to be a PLC member for this Contract.
- v) during the tender and tender evaluation processes, neither deliberately favoured nor prejudiced a person or tenderer, as intended, or contemplated in treasury Regulation 16, A8.3 (a), (b) & (c).
- vi) ensure that no conflict of interest arises from members' involvement in the PLC and potential involvement in targeted labour recruitment and/or targeted enterprises procurement and/or any other supplier/sub-contractor/service provider procurement or involvement in the contract.

d) Confidentiality

- i) PLC members shall accept that all information, documentation, and decisions regarding any matter serving before the PLC are confidential and undertake not to communicate decisions or discussions of PLC meetings to external or internal parties unless so directed and approved by the Project Manager.
 - ii) Information for public dissemination shall be clearly indicated by the committee to ensure that sensitive information is only disseminated to the correct audience.
- e) Removal from Office
- i) PLC members who violate the provisions of these Rules of Engagement for PLCs will be removed from their role as a PLC member at the sole discretion of SANRAL.
 - ii) SANRAL reserves the right to recover any costs from PLC members whose actions can be regarded as detrimental to SANRAL or to the execution of the project.
 - iii) SANRAL also reserves the right to recommend criminal prosecution if the offence warrants such action.
 - iv) SANRAL reserves the right to dissolve the entire PLC should it believe that such an action is in its best interest, or that of the project. SANRAL will not be obliged to reconstitute the PLC if such a dissolution occurs.

3. Responsibilities and Duties of the PLC

The PLC will execute specific duties during the design and construction phases of the project.

Some of the PLC's duties during the design and construction stages overlap and hence, for completeness, a description of the PLC's duties in both project stages is provided here.

The PLC will execute the following duties:

- a) Project Design Stage
- i) Meet as often as required to discuss and resolve the project's design stage matters which are of interest or concern to the parties to the PLC.
 - ii) Peruse the Project Liaison Committee rules, responsibilities and duties outlined in this Form and agree on the rules, responsibilities, and duties of, and procedures to be followed by, the PLC to fulfil its duties.
Note: The principles outlined in this Form shall not be amended, but duties and procedures may be altered to be project specific and to improve the functionality of the PLC.
 - iii) Act in accordance with the agreed terms of reference for the PLC.
 - iv) Inform SANRAL of any training that project Stakeholder and affected Community representatives of the PLC require to execute their duties.
 - v) Assist the Engineer to source suitable candidates, based on SANRAL's qualifying criteria, for the position of PLO.
 - vi) Observe and verify that the qualifying criteria and procedures applied by the Engineer to select and employ the PLO were executed in a fair and transparent manner and were within the prescripts of the relevant labour legislation and regulations.
 - vii) Assist the Engineer to identify the project's Target and Project Area(s) from which Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises could be employed and sub-contracted, respectively.
 - viii) Assist the Engineer to identify the project's Target Groups for inclusion in the Tender Documents and agree to and support the identified Target Groups.
- b) Project Construction Stage
- i) Meet formally prior to SANRAL's monthly site meeting, or as may be required, to discuss and resolve project matters which are of interest or concern to the parties to the PLC.

- ii) Assist the Contractor to establish the selection criteria and process to employ Targeted Labour
- iii) Assist the Contractor to identify the eligibility, functionality, preference, and compliance criteria to select and sub-contract Targeted Enterprises.
- iv) Agree to and support the Databases compiled by the PLO and the Contractor from which Targeted Labour will be selected and employed and Targeted Enterprises will be sub-contracted, respectively.
- v) Verify that the criteria and methodologies applied by the Contractor to select and employ Targeted Labour and sub-contract Targeted Enterprises are executed in a fair and transparent manner and are within Government legislation and regulations and SANRAL's Policies.
- vi) Verify that the conditions of employment and the conditions of sub-contracting, in the employment of Targeted Labour and sub-contracting of Targeted Enterprises are applied in a fair and transparent manner and according to SANRAL's employment and sub-contracting requirements.
- vii) Make recommendations to the Contractor on the training needs, eligibility criteria and selection criteria for the provision of training to Targeted Labour, Targeted Enterprises, Designated Groups, project Stakeholders and the affected Communities.
- viii) Verify that training and skills development programmes, which the Contractor committed to, are implemented, and executed as approved and intended.
- ix) Inform the entities whom they represent of any project matters which the respective party to the PLC wishes to communicate with each other.
- x) Inform the entities whom they represent of any project matters that are impacting or may impact, either positively or negatively, on the respective parties to the PLC.
- xi) Inform the Contractor of Stakeholder and/or Community requests and/or needs, which could possibly be addressed within the project's Scope of Work.
- xii) Inform the SANRAL, the Engineer and Contractor of any road safety concerns within the Project Area(s) and advise them of possible mitigating measures and/or road safety programs that will be most suitable for acceptance by the affected Communities to promote road safety.
- xiii) Agree on a dispute resolution mechanism to resolve any disputes that may arise between the parties to the PLC.
- xiv) Assist parties to the PLC to liaise with their respective entities to resolve any disputes amongst the parties which may occur due to the project.

4. PLC Meetings

- a) Frequency
 - i) Meetings will be conducted monthly or as required by the Stakeholders or the project matters.
- b) Notice of meetings
 - i) The notice of the PLC meeting shall be given at least seven (7) calendar days prior to the meeting date.
 - ii) Where meetings have been diarised over a period by the PLC, it shall be the duty of each PLC member to ensure his/her attendance on the set dates.
 - iii) Where a PLC member has missed any meeting, he/she bears the onus of establishing the date and venue of the next meeting.
- c) Venue
 - i) The venue for PLC meetings shall be the project site office or any other venue agreed to by the members of the PLC and approved by SANRAL.
 - ii) During the Covid 19 lockdown, or any other lockdown as announced by government, the meetings shall be held on an online platform such as WhatsApp, Teams, Zoom or similar.

- d) Agenda
 - i) An agenda shall be made available or displayed to all participants at the commencement of such meetings or the minutes of the previous meeting will serve as the agenda of such meetings.
 - ii) The agenda shall not be amended without prior approval from SANRAL.
- e) Chairperson
 - i) PLC meetings shall be chaired by SANRAL which will typically be the SANRAL's Project Manager, or a SANRAL staff member with decision--making delegation, or the Engineer.
 - ii) The Chairperson shall:
 - a. chair all meetings of the PLC,
 - b. co-ordinate all the activities of PLC,
 - c. ensure that members are fulfilling their tasks as assigned by the PLC,
 - d. see to the execution of decisions taken by the PLC,
 - e. ensure the validity of members' claim for allowance,
 - f. ensure compliance of all activities of the PLC with current rules, law and general SANRAL policy, and
 - g. be a co-signatory to all official documents of the PLC.
- f) Secretariate
 - i) The Engineer's staff shall provide a secretarial service to take minutes of PLC meetings.
 - ii) Secretarial support other than taking minutes at PLC meetings shall be provided by the PLO.
- g) Quorum
 - i) The quorum for PLC meetings shall be constituted by 50%+1 ratio excluding co-opted members.
- h) Apologies and Non-attendance
 - i) Apologies shall be in writing except in emergency where the member apologising cannot communicate the apology in writing.
 - ii) Apologies may be sent through any media agreed to prior by the PLC for example through SMS or WhatsApp messaging or similar application.
 - iii) The organization, represented by a member who fails to attend three (3) consecutive meetings without an apology, will be informed in writing and asked to nominate a replacement member.
- i) Language
 - i) The meetings will be conducted in English to enable all participants at the meeting to understand the discussions of the meeting.
 - ii) However, care and consideration must be given to provide non-English speakers an opportunity to participate. Therefore, where desirable, any of the 11 official languages maybe be used to conduct the meeting. If another language other than English is used, the minutes of the meeting will need to be transcribed, translated, and recorded in English.
- j) Other
 - i) The PMT shall provide a finger lunch for PLC members at PLC meetings.

FORM A3: CHECKLIST – PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE – MEMBER APPOINTMENT

Notes:

- a) The checklist consists of several sections. Only print the relevant sections.
- b) Indicate what has been completed and sign off at the end.
- c) While other individuals can assist in this process, the Project Manager (PM) remains accountable for all deliverables.
- d) All forms/records to be kept by the PM and availed to line management upon request.

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check	Responsibility	Complete (Yes/No or N/A)
A3.1	PLC Member Appointment:			
1	Nomination forms completed.	a)	Form must indicate the nominee and the individual or organisation making the nomination.	Stakeholder Coordinator (SC) /Contracts Engineer (CE)
		b)	Forms circulated with the assistance of Municipality's LED office.	SC/CE
		c)	All completed forms collected from the Municipality's LED office.	SC/CE
2	Members selected.	a)	Confirm the membership of the PLC.	SC/Project Management Team (PMT)
		b)	Where there are multiple entries, the team can select the member with the highest number of nominations.	SC/PMT
		c)	Where there is an equal number of nominations, the team will request the nominating organisation to confirm the member who should join the PLC.	SC/PMT
		d)	The last alternative is to allow for a snap election in a community meeting.	SC/PMT
		e)	Communicate the PLC membership to the affected stakeholders.	SC/PMT
3	Formal appointment to PLC signed.	a)	Ensure that the PLC membership is confirmed in line with Form A3.2	SC/Project Manager (PM)

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check		Responsibility	Complete (Yes/No or N/A)
		b)	All members must be provided with a copy of the PLC Duties and Responsibilities (extract from D1004.03). The signed duties and responsibilities must be scanned and shared with all members. The PM retains a copy for future reference.	SC/PMT	
		c)	Document must be signed again when the membership changes. The PM must add the version of the document to ensure that the various versions can be tracked.	PM	
Stakeholder Coordinator:					
Name		Sign		Date	
Project Manager:					
Name		Sign		Date	

FORM A3.2: PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE – MEMBER LIST

No.	Sector/Entity/Forum	Name and Surname	Signature
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			

FORM A4: CHECKLIST – PROJECT LIAISON OFFICER – APPOINTMENT

Notes:

- The checklist consists of several sections. Only print relevant sections.
- Indicate what has been completed and sign off at the end.
- While other individuals can assist in this process, the Project Manager (PM) remains accountable for all deliverables.
- All forms/records to be kept by the PM and availed to line management upon request.

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check	Responsibility	Complete (Yes/No or N/A)
A4	PLO Appointment:			
1	Post advertised in local media.	a) Job profile prepared.	CE/PMT	
		b) Post advertised in the media.	CE/PMT	
		c) Copy of advert kept on file.	CE/PMT	
2	Shortlisting completed.	a) All CVs received collated.	CE/PMT	
		b) Shortlisting done by the PMT.	CE/PMT	
		c) PLC provided with the final shortlist.	CE/PMT	
3	Interviews held.	a) Candidates invited.	CE/PMT	
		b) Interview grid prepared.	CE/PMT	
		c) The PLC can nominate a member to sit on the interview panel as an observer to ensure transparency in the process.	CE/PMT	
		d) Formal interviews carried out.	CE/PMT	
		e) Interview scores collated.	CE/PMT	
4	Formal appointment of PLO.	a) PLO appointment letter issued.	CE	
		b) PLO employment contract signed.	CE	
		c) PLO performance agreement signed.	CE	
Stakeholder Coordinator:				

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check		Responsibility		Complete (Yes/No or N/A)
Name		Sign		Date		
Project Manager:						
Name		Sign		Date		

FORM A5: CHECKLIST – PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE – MEETINGS

Notes:

- The checklist consists of several sections. Only print relevant sections.
- Indicate what has been completed and sign off at the end.
- While other individuals can assist in this process, the Project Manager (PM) remains accountable for all deliverables.
- All forms/records to be kept by the PM and availed to line management upon request.

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check	Responsibility	Complete (Yes/No or N/A)
A5	PLC Meeting Checklist:			
1	Attendance register completed.	a)	All members of the PLC to sign the attendance register in ink.	PLO/PM
		b)	Where meetings are on an online platform such as MS Teams, the attendance list must be downloaded from that platform.	PLO/PM
2	Quorum met.	a)	The quorum for PLC meetings shall be constituted by 50% + 1 ratio excluding co-opted members.	PLO/PM
3	Agenda approved.	a)		PM
4	Previous minutes approved.	a)	Minutes must be prepared, signed off and dated by the Chairperson at the following meeting.	PLO/PM
5	Minutes and resolutions captured.	a)		RE/PLO
6	Declaration of interest completed.	a)	All members of the PLC to sign the DoL in ink.	PLO/PM
Stakeholder Coordinator:				
Name		Sign		Date
Project Manager:				
Name		Sign		Date

FORM B: CHECKLIST – TARGETED ENTERPRISE TENDERING PROCESS

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check	Responsibility	Complete (Yes/No or N/A)	Source Document
B1	Target Area:				
1	Target Area Defined by PLC.	a)	Target Area for Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises identified and disseminated to the PLC.	PLO/PM	
		b)	Target Groups identified and disseminated to the PLC.	PLO/PM	
2	Database of Contractors and Suppliers.	a)	Database criteria setup and disseminated to the PLC.	PLO/PM	
		b)	Signed off database criteria handed over to PLC.	PLO/PM	
B2	Tender Phase:				
1	Tender Advert.	a)	Copy of advert on file.	Contractor	
		b)	Proof of publication in selected local publications.	Contractor	
		c)	Proof of publication on SANRAL website.	Contractor	
2	Tender Document.	a)	Copy of specification available on file, copy of the Tender CD, or printed.	Contractor	
3	Clarification Meeting Attendance register.	a)	Attendance register signed by all attendees of the clarification meeting	Contractor	
4	Clarification Meeting Minutes.	a)	Minutes must be prepared, signed off and dated by the Chairperson	Contractor	

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check		Responsibility	Complete (Yes/No or N/A)	Source Document
			within 14 days of the date of the meeting			
5	Clarification Meeting Presentation.	a)	Copy of the presentation on file.	Contractor		
6	Addenda	a)	All addenda issued must be recorded on the file.	Contractor		
		b)	Proof (e-mail) of those persons that the addenda was sent to (if applicable).	Contractor		
7	Register of tenders issued (if applicable).	a)	Record the names of persons / companies that collected tender documents (website/by hand).	Contractor		
B3	Tender Opening:					
1	Register of Tenders Received.	a)	Record the names of persons / companies that submitted tender offers.	Contractor		
2	Tender Opening, Declaration of Interest.	a)	Declaration by SANRAL officials at the opening.	Contractor		
3	Tender Opening, Attendance Register.	a)	Record the names of persons present at the opening of tenders.	Contractor		
4	Register for late tenders received.	a)	Record names and time of late tenders received.	Contractor		
5	Tender Opening, Opening Data.	a)	Register of the opening of the Technical Offer on the Tender Data sheet.	Contractor		
B4	Tender Evaluation:					
1	Extension of validity period.	a)	Confirmation of issue of letters of extension of validity period.	Contractor		

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check		Responsibility	Complete (Yes/No or N/A)	Source Document
		b)	Confirmation of response on extension of validity period by the bidders.	Contractor		
2	Declaration of Interest.	a)	All members of the Bid Evaluation Committee to sign the Dol in ink.	Contractor		
3	Attendance Register.	a)	All members of the BEC to sign the attendance register in ink.	Contractor		
4	Minutes	a)	Minutes must be prepared, signed off and dated by the Chairperson within 14 days of the date of the meeting.	Contractor		
5	Signed evaluation report.	a)	Report signed by the Chairperson of the BEC detailing deliberations and discussions of the BEC meeting.	Contractor		
6	PPPFA Scoring sheet	a)	Scoring sheet detailing the scores of all tenders evaluated as per the PPPFA.	Contractor		
7	CSD Compliance Report.	a)	Printout of the CSD Report for compliance verification for the successful tenderer.	Contractor		
8	CIDB grade confirmation (if applicable).	a)	Verification of active status.	Contractor		
		b)	JV calculator for Joint Ventures.	Contractor		
9	B-BBEE Certificate.	a)	B-BBEE Certificate of winning tenderer on file for verification of preference points.	Contractor		
10	SANRAL List of Restricted Bidders.	a)	Verification that the winning tenderer is not restricted from doing business with SANRAL.	Contractor		

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check		Responsibility	Complete (Yes/No or N/A)	Source Document
11	Clarification correspondence after tender closing (individual tenderers or all).	a)	All correspondence relating to RFT correction of arithmetic errors/balancing of rates etc.	Contractor		
12	Report for the award of the contract.	a)	Report detailing information from tender phase to evaluation phase, and a recommendation with motivation for the approval of the winning tenderer.	Contractor		
13	Review Report.	a)	Receive high level reports and ensure transparency in the appointment of Targeted Enterprises. The reports must exclude sensitive evaluation information.	PLC /PLO/PM	Report not to be supplied to PLC*.	
B5	Award of Contract:					
1	BAC Declaration of Interest.	a)	All members of the BAC to sign the Dol in ink.	Project Bid Adjudication Committee Secretariat (PBAC)		
2	BAC Attendance Register.	a)	All members of the BAC to sign the attendance register in ink.	PBAC Secretariat		
3	BAC Minutes.	a)	Minutes must be prepared, signed off and dated by the Chairperson within 14 days of the date of the meeting.	PBAC Secretariat		

FORM C: CHECKLIST – TARGETED ENTERPRISE CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION

Form No.	Item	Explanatory Note for Compliance Check	Responsibility	Complete (Yes/No or N/A)	Source Document
C	Contract Administration Phase				
1	Letter of award / Letter of Acceptance.	a)	Copy of letter issued to the successful bidder.	Contractor	
2	Letters to unsuccessful bidder(s).	a)	Standard letter informing unsuccessful bidders of the tender outcome with proof of emails.	Contractor	
3	Publication of award, within 7 working days from date of award.	a)	Proof of publication on SANRAL website.	Contractor / PLO / Project Manager	
4	Contract document.	a)	Original signed contract on file.	End-User / Contractor	
5	Closure of contract.	a)	Copy of close-out report (SIPDM).	End-User / Contractor	
6	Performance report (for Engineering contracts).	a)	Copy of contractor performance report.	End-User / Contractor	
Project Manager:					
Name		Sign		Date	

APPENDIX 10 – PROFORMA SUBCONTRACT DOCUMENT FOR TARGETED ENTERPRISES

To be provided at award stage

SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL ROADS AGENCY SOC LIMITED

CONTRACT SANRAL S.004-005-2020/1
FOR ISANDLWANA ROADS UPGRADE – PACKAGE 1 (UPGRADE OF PROVINCIAL ROAD P372)

SECTION E: REQUIREMENTS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT AND REGULATIONS

Note to tenderer:

Wherever reference is made in this section of the Scope of Works to contractor this is the equivalent of the *principal contractor* in the Occupational Health and Safety Act and Regulations. Similarly, reference to subcontractors is equivalent to *other contractors*.

SECTION E: REQUIREMENTS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT AND REGULATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS		PAGE
E1001	SCOPE	C3-218
E1002	DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS	C3-218
E1003	HEALTH AND SAFETY POLICY.....	C3-221
E1004	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES.....	C3-221
E1005	HSE TRAINING AND COMPETENCE	C3-221
E1006	APPLICATION FOR CONSTRUCTION WORK PERMIT	C3-222
E1007	DUTIES.....	C3-222
E1008	MANAGEMENT AND SUPERVISION	C3-222
E1009	RISK MANAGEMENT	C3-223
E1010	LEGAL COMPLIANCE AND DOCUMENT CONTROL	C3-224
E1011	OPERATIONAL INTEGRITY.....	C3-227
E1012	OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND HYGIENE	C3-228
E1013	WASTE MANAGEMENT	C3-229
E1014	HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCE MANAGEMENT	C3-229
E1015	CONTRACTORS.....	C3-229
E1016	DESIGNING FOR HEALTH, SAFETY AND THE ENVIRONMENT	C3-233
E1017	INCIDENT MANAGEMENT.....	C3-233
E1018	PROJECT SPECIFIC CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS	C3-234

E1001 SCOPE

The Occupational Health and Safety Act, Act 85 of 1993 (OHS Act) and its Regulations together with SANS Codes set out minimum standards with regards to Occupational Health and Safety. The South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited (SANRAL), has developed this Occupational Health and Safety Specifications with these minimum standards in mind and in certain aspects the requirements of SANRAL exceeds the minimum legal requirements to follow best practices and to ensure a healthy and safe workplace for all.

SANRAL in no way assumes The Principal Contractors legal liabilities and responsibilities. The Principal Contractor is and remains accountable for the quality and execution of his health and safety program for his employees. This Health and Safety Specification reflects minimum legal and SANRAL requirements and should not be construed as all encompassing.

It is realized that The Principal Contractor have its own Health and Safety Management system and safe work practices. The intention of this Health and Safety Specification is not to change The Principal Contractors Health and Safety management system, but for The Principal Contractor to use its current Health and Safety management system to draw up a project specific Health and Safety plan according to these specifications as well as to legally comply with the any applicable Regulations under the OHS Act and incorporated Standards.

It is the responsibility of the Principal Contractor and other Contractors to make themselves conversant and comply with the requirements and conditions contained in the various legislation pertaining to their profession and scope of works at all times.

This specification is not exhaustive of all duties imposed by the OHS Act and its Regulations, governing the duties and obligations, of a Designer, Principal Contractor and Contractor performing duties in terms of an agreement with the client (SANRAL). These duties are fully described in the OHS Act and its Regulations and it is the duty of every Designer, Principal Contractor and Contractor to acquaint themselves therewith before commencing work.

This specification is compiled to ensure that the Principal Contractor and any other Contractors working for SANRAL directly or through a Principal Contractor, are aware of the Occupational Health and Safety requirements when working on a SANRAL contract, as well as to make them aware of their legal liabilities and responsibilities as per the Occupational Health & Safety Act, Act 85 of 1993, and its Regulations.

Words used herein in the singular shall be deemed to include the plural and male shall include female and vice versa unless the context otherwise requires.

E1002 DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Assessment – An opinion or a judgment about someone or something that has been thought about very carefully.

At-risk behavior – Conduct that unnecessarily increases the likelihood of an injury or incident.

Audit – A systematic and documented review of the effectiveness of implementation of processes, programs and procedures, based on general process criteria.

Baseline risk assessment: This is the initial assessment of risk in a workplace. It is a broad assessment and includes all activities taking place on site but does not include risk control measures or safeguards.

Client – Any organization or person for whom construction work is performed. For the purpose of this document, the client is the South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited, also identified in the contract document as the Employer.

Competence – A combination of attributes such as knowledge, training, experience and qualifications to assure successful performance.

Competent Person – Means a person who has in respect of the work or task to be performed the required knowledge, training and experience and, where applicable, qualifications, specific to that work or task: Provided that where appropriate qualifications and training are registered in terms of the provisions of the National Qualification Framework Act, 2000 (Act No. 67 of 2000), those qualifications and that training must be regarded as the required qualifications and training; and is familiar with the Act and with the applicable regulations made under the Act.

Consequence – Outcome or impact of an event.

Continual Improvement – A recurring process of enhancing performance to achieve consistent improvements in overall performance.

Contractor – An employer as defined in section 1 of the OHS Act, who performs construction work and includes Principal Contractors and Sub-Contractors.

Construction Work – any work in connection with:

- The construction, erection, alteration, renovation, repair, demolition or dismantling of or addition to a building or any similar structure; or
- The construction, erection, maintenance, demolition or dismantling of any bridge, dam, canal, road, railway, runway, sewer or water reticulation system; or the moving of earth, clearing of land, the making of excavation, piling, or any similar civil engineering structure or type of work.

Corrective Action – An action taken to eliminate the cause of a detected non-conformity or other undesirable situation.

Construction Regulations (CR) – Construction Regulations, GNR. 84 of 2014

Critical equipment – A piece of equipment or a structure whose failure to perform to design specification, has the potential to result in a major accident event.

Design – in relation to any structure, includes drawings, calculations, design details and specifications.

Designer –

- a) competent person who:
 - Prepares a design;
 - Checks and approves a design;
 - Arranges for a person at work under his or her control to prepare a design, including an employee of that person where he or she is the employer; or
 - Designs temporary work, including its components;
- b) an architect or engineer contributing to, or having overall responsibility for a design;
- c) a building services engineer designing details for fixed plant;
- d) a surveyor specifying articles or drawing up specifications;
- e) a contractor carrying out design work as part of a design and building project; or
- f) an interior designer, shop fitter or landscape architect.

DMR – Driven Machinery Regulations, GNR. 295 of 26 February 1988

Documents – Structured units of recorded information and its supporting medium (paper or electronic). Most records are documents, but not all documents are records. A document becomes a record when it is part of a business transaction, is kept as evidence of that transaction and is managed within a record-keeping system.

EIR – Electrical Installation Regulations, GNR. 242 of 6 March 2009

Emergency – An abnormal occurrence that pose a threat to the safety or health of employees, customers, or local communities, or which can cause damage to assets or the environment.

Employee – An individual who is employed by or works for an Employer and who receives or is entitled to receive any remuneration or who works under the direction or supervision of an employer or any other person.

Employer – Any person who employs or provides work for any person and remunerates that person or expressly or tacitly undertakes to remunerates him but excludes a labour broker as defined in section 1(1) of the Labour Relations Act, 1956 (Act No. 28 of 1956). The South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited, also identified in the contract document as the Employer.

EMR – Electrical Machinery Regulations, GNR. 250 of 25 March 2011

Environment – The surroundings or conditions in which a person, animal or plant lives or operates, including air, water, land, natural resources and habitats.

Epidemic Disease - An *epidemic* disease is one affecting many persons at the same time and spreading from person to person in a locality where the disease is not permanently prevalent. The World Health Organization (WHO) further specifies *epidemic* as occurring at the level of a region or community.

Excavation work – The making of any man-made cavity, trench, pit or depression formed by cutting, digging or scooping

GAR – General Administrative Regulations, GNR. 929 of 25 June 2003

GMR – General Machinery Regulations, GNR. 1521 of 5 August 1988

GSR – General Safety Regulations, GNR. 1031 of 30 May 1986

Harm – A significant and or long-lasting adverse effect on people, the environment or the community.

Hazard – A source, situation or act with a potential for harm in terms of human injury or ill health.

Health and Safety File – Means a file, or other record in permanent form, containing the information in writing as required by the Construction Regulations, GNR. 84 of 7 February 2014, Section 7(1)(b).

Health and Safety Plan – Means a project specific documented plan in accordance with the client's health and safety specifications, as required by the Construction Regulations, GNR. 84 of 7 February 2014, Section 7(1)(a).

Health and Safety Specification – Means a project specific document prepared by the client pertaining to all health and safety requirements related to construction work, as required by the Construction Regulations, GNR. 84 of 7 February 2014, Section 5(1)(b).

HSE – Health, Safety and Environment. Commonly used in the format HSE.

Incident – Work-related events (including accidents which give rise to injury, ill health, fatality or emergencies) that have resulted in, or has the potential to result in adverse consequences to people, the environment, property, reputation or a combination of these.

Likelihood – A description of probability or frequency, in relation to the chance that something will occur.

Lost Time Injury (LTI) – When a person is injured during the execution of his/her duties and as a result of the injury is unable to perform his/her regular duties for one full shift or more on the day following the day on which the injury has incurred, whether a scheduled work day or not(weekend).

Management System – Management processes and documentation that collectively provide a systematic framework for ensuring that tasks are performed safely, correctly, consistently and effectively to achieve a specified outcome and to drive continual improvement in performance.

Mandatory – An agent, contractor or sub-contractor for work, but without derogating from his status in his own right as an employer or a user.

MSDS – Material Safety Data Sheet

Near Hit / Near Miss – Any occurrence or situation which had the potential for adverse consequences to people, the environment, property, reputation or a combination of these.

Non-conformance – Any deviation from work standards, practices, procedures, regulations that could either directly or indirectly lead to injury or illness, property damage, damage to the environment or a combination of these.

OHS Act – Occupational Health & Safety Act, 85 of 1993

Pandemic Disease - a *pandemic* disease is an *epidemic* disease that has spread over a large area, that is, it is prevalent throughout an entire country, continent, or the whole world.

Policy – Statement by an organization of its intentions and principles in relation to its overall performance which provides a framework for action and for the setting of its objectives and targets.

PPE – Personal Protective Equipment

Preventive Action – An action implemented to eliminate the cause of a potential non-conformity or other undesirable potential situation.

Principal Contractor – An employer appointed by the client to perform construction work and who is in overall control and management of a part of or the whole construction site.

Procedure – A specific documented way to carry out an activity or a process.

Records – Recorded information, in any form that is kept as evidence. Records include monitoring results, evidence of training, audits, inspections and calibration reports.

Risk Assessment – A process of evaluating the risk(s) arising from hazards taking into account the adequacy of any existing controls and deciding whether or not the risk(s) is acceptable.

Risk Management – The ongoing treatment of risks through the application of management policies, processes, procedures and risk control measures.

Risk – A combination of the likelihood of an occurrence of a hazardous event or exposure and the severity of injury or ill health that can be caused by the event or exposure.

Root Cause – The cause of the incident that, when rectified, will prevent the recurrence of not just incidents with those exact circumstances, but others with similar causes.

SACPCMP – South African Council for Project and Construction Management Professions

SANRAL S.004-005-2020/1: Isandlwana Roads Upgrade – Package 1 [Upgrade of Provincial Road P372]

(Based on EDMS#6462666v3)

SANRAL - South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited

Supplier – A person or company that supplies material or equipment to a contractor on a construction site but does not physically carry out construction work on the construction site.

The Act – The Occupational Health and Safety Act No. 85 of 1993

The Site – The area where work is carried out for SANRAL as defined on the front page of this document.

WAH – Acronym for Working at Heights.

E1003 HEALTH AND SAFETY POLICY

Contractors are expected to have their own written Health and Safety Policy. The policy should declare their attitude and approach to the health, safety and welfare of their employees and others. The policy should include a description of the company and provision must be made to review the policy annually and the CEO or Managing Director must sign and date the policy to indicate his commitment to ensuring the health and safety of his employees, as per Section 7 of the OHS Act.

E1004 ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

Every Contractor is considered to be an employer in his own right and shall comply with all legal requirements pertaining to an employer, which include the responsibility to provide as far as reasonably practicable a safe and healthy working environment for his employees, as per Section 8 of the OHS Act.

In conjunction with Section 8 of the OHS Act, all employees on the project are responsible for their own health and safety as well as the safety of persons who may be affected by their acts, as per Section 14 of the OHS Act. It is the responsibility of each employee to ensure that he acts in a safe manner before and during work is carried out.

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that where required by the OHS Act and Regulations, competent employees are appointed in writing. These appointments must be project/contract specific and specific to the tasks that will be performed. Every appointment must display the duties of the person appointed and training certificates from a registered training provider must be attached to such appointment (where applicable). A list of possible appointments can be found in clause E1010 below.

E1005 HSE TRAINING AND COMPETENCE

Where appropriate qualifications and training are registered in terms of the provisions of the National Qualifications Framework Act, 2000 (Act No. 67 of 2000), those qualifications and training must be regarded as the required qualifications and training and employees must have attended courses of the aforementioned nature to be considered competent in the task.

All employees that forms part of the construction work must be trained and competent. Employees formally appointed to perform a certain duty must be in possession of a training certificate (where applicable), received from a registered training provider. All employees must as a minimum have received site specific safety induction training and must receive daily safe task instruction training (DSTI) before any work commences and thereafter on a daily basis.

a) Training Needs

There shall be a system in place to determine the training requirements of each individual, based on the tasks that the employee will perform as well as to ensure the health and safety of fellow employees and the public. Special attention should be given to employees who are new hires, new to the task or have combined responsibilities.

b) Basic Safe Work Training (Induction Training)

Every contractor shall ensure that his employees are inducted into his own company Health and Safety System as well as basic safe work training (HSE Induction Training). The Principal Contractor shall ensure that his, all his Contractor's employees and visitors are inducted on the specific site safety procedures.

A Daily Safe Task Instruction (DSTI) must be conducted on site with all employees involved in the project. The DSTI must be carried out each day before work commences and proof thereof must be available on site. Each work crew may conduct their own specific DSTI to discuss the hazards, risks and control measures associated with their task for the day.

Where two or more contractors or work crews work in the same area, they should have a combined DSTI to ensure they know of the additional hazards the other contractor or work crew will introduce to their operations and what precautions to put in place.

The Principal Contractor shall have evidence that employees have been trained on the relevant procedures prior to and during the project duration. The evidence will be in a form of attendance register.

c) Formal Training

All qualifications for which there are SAQA registered training courses, must be regarded as the minimum required qualifications and training. To be deemed "competent" an employee must have received training at a registered training provider, the training course must be registered and if there is an assessment, the employee must have been found competent after the assessment. A person cannot be deemed competent after awareness training only.

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that his employees, as well as the employees of any contractors that may be used, have received appropriate training for the type of work that will be performed, e.g. First Aid, Flag Man, Mobile Plant Operator, Working at Heights, Risk Assessment training etc.

d) Records

Record of all training shall be kept by the employer and shall be readily available. Records shall make provision for refresher training where applicable. Where an employee is legally appointed with certain duties and responsibilities a copy of the training certificate must be attached to the appointment.

E1006 APPLICATION FOR CONSTRUCTION WORK PERMIT

Construction Regulation, 2014 Section 3 requires that the client apply for a construction work permit at least 30 days before construction work is started, if the intended construction work will:

- exceed 365 days AND will involve more than 3 600 person days of construction work; or
- if the tender value limit is a CIDB grade 7, 8 or 9.

If approved, the provincial director will issue a construction work permit in writing to perform construction work within 30 days of receiving the application and assign a site-specific number for the construction site. It is the intention of SANRAL to apply for a construction work permit as soon as The Principal Contractor is appointed and his Health and Safety Plan is received, in order to minimize construction delays.

The site-specific construction work permit number must be displayed at the main entrance to the site and a copy of the construction work permit must be kept in the principal contractor's health and safety file for inspection purposes.

E1007 DUTIES

Various duties are imposed on the client, designer, principal contractor and other contractors by the Construction Regulation, 2014, Sections 5, 6 & 7. SANRAL will comply and carry out the required duties as contemplated in Section 5 of the Construction Regulations, 2014 and it is expected from the designer and every contractor to make themselves conversant with the requirements and duties imposed on them and to ensure that they comply with the requirements of section 6 & 7 at all times.

E1008 MANAGEMENT AND SUPERVISION

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that the project is managed safely, and legal compliance is ensured at all times.

A full-time competent person must be appointed as a Construction Manager to manage all construction work, including health and safety compliance. The construction manager may not be appointed to manage more than one single construction site. An Alternate Construction Manager must be appointed, to carry out the duties in the absence of the Construction Manager.

The construction manager must appoint construction supervisors responsible for construction activities and ensuring occupation health and safety on the construction site.

The Principal Contractor must appoint a full-time construction health and safety officer, who is registered with the SACPCMP, to assist in the control of health and safety aspects on site.

E1009 RISK MANAGEMENT

The Principal Contractor must follow a formal risk-based approach to ensure hazard control measures are implemented to an acceptable reasonable practical level. The Principal Contractor and his employees shall be responsible to ensure all hazards pertaining to his scope of activity are proactively identified, the risks assessed and appropriately eliminated or minimized and managed on an ongoing basis. Risk assessments shall also identify possible and potential environmental, health and hygiene issues pertaining to each hazard with potential exposures and limits.

a) Risk Assessment

i) Hazard Identification and Risk Assessment (Construction Regulation 9)

The Principal Contractor shall, before the commencement of any construction work or work associated with the aforesaid construction work and during such work, conduct a risk assessment by a competent person, appointed in writing and the risk assessment so produced shall form part of the OH&S plan and be implemented and maintained as contemplated in Construction Regulation 9(1). Competence is a factor of training, knowledge, experience and/or appropriate qualifications.

The risk assessment shall include, as far as is reasonably practicable, at least:

- The task or task step
- the identification hazards to which persons may be exposed to during the task or task step;
- The analysis and evaluation of the risks associated to the hazards identified, inclusive of a residual risk rating methodology. The method to be used is not prescribed;
- a documented plan of safe work procedures, to mitigate, reduce or control those residual risks that have been identified as unacceptably high, by means of the rating system;
- a monitoring plan;
- a review plan, inclusive of dates to be adhered to; and
- Ergonomic related risks are to be analysed, evaluated and addressed as part of the process.

Based on the risk assessments, The Principal Contractor shall develop a set of site-specific OH&S rules that shall be applied to regulate the OH&S aspects of the construction. The risk assessments, together with the site-specific OH&S rules shall be submitted to the Employer before construction on site commences. SANRAL has conducted a Baseline Risk Assessment as per clause E1009 (b) below, which must be used by The Principal Contractor to develop task specific risk assessments before work commences. This does not mean that all possible Risk Assessments must be attended to before work commences, but that all relevant Risk Assessments receive the necessary attention as the contract progresses, and this is the responsibility of The Principal Contractor.

All variations to the scope of work shall similarly be subjected to a risk assessment process.

ii) Risk Assessment Monitoring

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that a monitoring plan for all risk assessments are in place. Risk assessments must be monitored to ensure effectiveness and employee

understanding. The monitoring of risk assessments shall be formal, and records thereof shall be available for audit purposes.

iii) **Review of Risk Assessment**

The Principal Contractor shall review the hazard identification, risk assessments and standard safe working procedures:

- prior to any work activity commencement,
- where changes are affected to the design and construction that result in a change to the risk profile,
- when an incident has occurred, or
- at least quarterly.

The Principal Contractor shall provide the Employer, sub-contractors and all other concerned parties with copies of any changes, alterations or amendments as contemplated above.

Activities carried out without conducting a risk assessment or found to be non-compliant with the risk assessment, will be stopped until such time a risk assessment is compiled, and work is carried out according to the risk assessment.

Risk assessments must be fully communicated to all relevant personnel and must be considered when establishing training, awareness and competency requirements. Records of risk assessment communications must be kept for inspection purposes.

b) **Baseline Risk Assessment**

SANRAL prepared a Baseline Risk Assessment from which the Health and Safety Specifications for this project was prepared. The Baseline Risk Assessment highlights all work for which The Principal Contractor must prepare safe work procedures and or work method statements. It must be noted that the Baseline Risk Assessment is not exhaustive and Principal Contractors are required to identify risks and come up with control measures, this must be identified by Principal Contractor when preparing the Issue Based Risk Assessments.

The Baseline Risk Assessment for this Project can be found in clause E1018.

c) **Continuous Risk Assessment**

The Principal Contractor shall continuously assess the risks of the activities that are carried out. Risk assessments must be in writing, site specific and must be reviewed continuously as per E1009 a(iii) to ensure it is current and it address all the relevant hazards and risks associated with the specific activity at the specific site.

The Risk assessment must be discussed with the whole work crew before the activity starts and the work crew must acknowledge in writing having discussed the risk assessment and that they understand it. This acknowledgement must be on site and must be available to the client for audit purposes.

E1010 LEGAL COMPLIANCE AND DOCUMENT CONTROL

The Principal Contractor is required to implement systems and procedures to ensure legal compliance through:

- Identification of all relevant HSE legislation, standards and codes applicable to its operations.
- Have available copies of all relevant HSE legislation, standards and codes for reference purposes.
- Update systems and procedures with changed/updated legislation, standards and codes.
- Communicate to all employees any changes that may affect their accountabilities and conformances
- Incorporate any legal requirements into their HSE management system
- Monitor and review their HSE management system for effectiveness.

The Principal Contractor shall, as a minimum, comply with:

- The Occupational Health and Safety Act and Regulations (Act 85 of 1993), an up-to-date copy of which shall be available on site at all times.
- The Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act (Act 130 of 1993), an up-to-date copy of which shall be available on site at all times.
- Where work is being carried out on a quarry/borrow pit/“mine”, The Principal Contractor shall comply with the Mines Health and Safety Act and Regulations (Act 29 of 1960) and any other OH&S requirements that the mine may specify. An up-to-date copy of the Mines Health and Safety Act and Regulations shall be available on site at all times.

Wherever in the Construction Regulations or this specification there is reference to other regulations (e.g. Construction Regulation 24: Electrical Installations and Machinery on Construction Sites) The Principal Contractor shall be conversant with and shall comply with these regulations.

All legal appointments of The Principal Contractor regarding the Health and Safety of his employees who are to work on the project are addressed and governed by the OHS Act and applicable Regulations. Legal appointments must be in place and must reflect in the project safety file before work commences.

a) Overall Supervision and Responsibility for OH&S

SANRAL will appoint the Principal Contractor in terms of Construction Regulation 5(1)(k). A Mandatory agreement as per Section 37.2 of the OHS Act, shall be signed between SANRAL and the Principal Contractor.

It is a requirement that the Principal Contractor, when he appoints other contractors in terms of Construction Regulations 7(1)(c), 7(1)(d), 7(1)(f) and 7(3) includes in his agreement with such Contractors the following:

- OH&S Act (85 of 1993), Section 37(2) agreement: “Agreement with Mandatory”.
- OH&S Act (85 of 1993), Section 16(2) appointee(s) as detailed in his/her/their respective appointment forms. (Where applicable).

The signed Mandatory agreements shall be placed in the project file for reference and for audit trail purposes.

b) Specific Supervision Responsibilities for OH&S

The Principal Contractor shall appoint designated competent employees and/or other competent persons as required by the OHS Act and Regulations, as well as this specification. Appointments shall be in writing and the responsibilities clearly stated together with the period for which the appointment is made. This information shall be communicated to and agreed with the appointees. Where applicable, the training certificate must be attached to the appointment. Notice of appointments shall be submitted to the Employer. All changes shall also be communicated to the Employer.

Below is a list of possible appointments for the project, which is not an all-inclusive list, but for reference purposes only:

Appointment	Legal Reference
Assistant to CEO	OHS Act 16(2)
Health and Safety Representative	OHS Act 17(1)
Nominated Health and Safety Committee Member	OHS Act 19(3)
Contractor (Sub-contractor)	CR 7(1)(c)(v)
Construction Manager	CR 8(1)
Alternate Construction Manager	CR 8(1)
Assistant Construction Manager	CR 8(2)
Health and Safety Officer	CR 8(5)
Construction Supervisor	CR 8(7)
Assistant Construction Supervisor	CR 8(8)
Risk Assessor	CR 9(1)

Appointment	Legal Reference
Fall Protection Plan Developer	CR 10(1)(a)
Structure Inspector	CR 11(2)(a)
Temporary Works Designer	CR 12(1)
Temporary Works Supervisor	CR 12(2)
Excavation Supervisor	CR 13(1)(a)
Demolition Supervisor	CR 14(1)
Competent Person in the use of Explosives	CR 14(11)
Scaffold Supervisor	CR 16(1)
Suspended Platform Supervisor	CR 17(1)
Rope Access Supervisor	CR 18(1)(a)
Material Hoist Inspector	CR 19(8)(a)
Bulk Mixing Plant Supervisor	CR 20(1)
Explosive actuated fastening device Inspector	CR 21(2)(b)
Explosive actuated fastening device cartridge Controller	CR 21(2)(g)(i)
Construction Vehicle & Mobile Plant Operator Authorised	CR 23(1)(d)(i)
Temporary Electrical Installation Controller	CR 24(c)
Stacking and Storage Supervisor	CR 28(a)
Fire Equipment Inspector	CR 29(h)
Incident investigator	GAR 9(2)
Lifting tackle inspector	DMR 18(10)(e)
Ladder inspector	GSR 13(a)
Certified Explosives Manager	ER 12(1)
First Aider GSR	GSR 3(4)
Lifting machine Operator	DMR 18(11)

In addition to the above, the Employer requires that a Traffic Safety Officer be appointed.

It is a requirement that The Principal Contractor shall provide the Employer with an organogram of all sub-contractors that he/she has appointed or intends to appoint and keep this list updated and prominently displayed on site.

c) Designation of OH&S Representatives (Section 17 of the OH&S Act)

Where the Principal Contractor employs more than 20 persons (including the employees of sub-contractors) he has to appoint 1 (one) OH&S representative for every 50 employees or part thereof. This is a minimum (legal) requirement. The Principal Contractor may at his own discretion appoint more OH&S representatives according to site specific requirements. General Administrative Regulation 6 requires that the appointment or election of the OH&S representatives be conducted in consultation with employee representatives or employees (Section 17 of the Act and General Administrative Regulation 6 & 7). OH&S representatives shall be designated in writing and the designation shall include the area of responsibility of the person and term of the designation. OH&S representatives must be experienced, permanently employed by The Principal Contractor or his sub-contractors, trained and able to move freely within their designated area of responsibility.

d) **Duties and Functions of the OH&S Representatives (Section 18 of the OH&S Act)**

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that the designated OH&S representatives perform their functions in respect of the workplace or section of the workplace for which they have been appointed. These functions include to conduct continuous monitoring and monthly inspections of their respective areas of responsibility, focusing on unsafe acts and unsafe conditions and report thereon to The Principal Contractor and OH&S Committee. OH&S representatives shall participate in accident or incident investigations. OH&S representatives shall attend all OH&S committee meetings. The complete list of functions can be found in Section 18 of the OHS Act.

e) **Appointment of OH&S Committee (Sections 19 and 20 of the OH&S Act)**

The Principal Contractor shall establish an OH&S committee, which shall meet at least once a month, where two or more Health and Safety Representatives have been appointed. OH&S representatives must be appointed as OH&S committee members. The number of members nominated by management may not exceed the number of OH&S representatives on the committee and must be appointed in writing.

E1011 OPERATIONAL INTEGRITY

The operational integrity of plant, equipment, structures and protective systems must be monitored and assured on an ongoing basis throughout the project cycle. Hazards must be identified, risks assessed and as far as reasonably practicable, eliminated or the risks treated to as low as reasonably practicable (ALARP).

a) **Construction Plant & Equipment**

The Principal Contractor shall maintain all items of plant and equipment necessary to perform the work in a safe condition.

SANRAL reserves the right to inspect items of plant and equipment brought to site and used on site by The Principal Contractor. Should it be found that any item is inadequate, faulty, unsafe or in any other way unsuitable for the safe and satisfactory execution of the work for which it is intended, The Principal Contractor will be advised of such observation/inspection, and The Principal Contractor shall be required to repair, make safe or remove such item from operation and replace it with a safe and adequate substitute.

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that all plant, equipment, and power tools that are brought onto and used on site are:

- Appropriate for the type of work to be performed
- Placed on a register and inspected by a competent person and/or the authorized operator before use, daily or monthly dependent on Legislation.
- Record inspection findings on a register that must be kept on site.
- The inspection register shall reflect the serial number of the plant, equipment or power tool.
- Maintained and used in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations
- Have adequate machine guarding fitted to all exposed rotating or moving parts, as reasonably practicable, that have the potential to cause harm
- All electrical power supply units are protected with operational earth leakage devices.
- Any defective, damaged or sub-standard equipment must be marked as unsafe for use and removed from operation as soon as possible

b) **Standards and Registers**

As standard project procedures, The Principal Contractor is expected to:

- Set up an initial set of registers as per the requirements of the OHS Act and Regulations.
- Complete the registers for each piece of plant, tool and equipment brought on and used on site
- Maintain a complete, continuous and comprehensive inspection and service history in these registers or checklists
- Ensure daily, weekly, monthly inspections are done and recorded for all plant, tools & equipment by a competent person and/or authorized operator as required by the OHS Act and Regulations.

- Have the inspection and maintenance records available for audit purposes.

E1012 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND HYGIENE

a) Medical Fitness for Duty

All contractor employees shall undergo medical examinations and be certified fit for duty by an Occupational Health Practitioner before they are allowed to work on site.

The medical certificate must be in the form of Annexure 3 of the Construction Regulations and stipulate the possible exposures the employee might be exposed to during the execution of the project.

It is recommended and in the best interest of The Principal Contractor to implement pre-employment, periodic, as well as exit medical surveillance, especially with regards to Section 8 of the Noise Induced Hearing Loss Regulation.

b) First Aid

According to GSR 3(4), where more than 10 employees are employed at a workplace/worksite, The Principal Contractor shall ensure that there is at least one trained first aider for every group of 50 employees at the workplace/site. First Aid boxes must be provided where more than 5 employees are employed and must be readily available and accessible for the treatment of injured persons at the workplace.

To ensure immediate treatment of an injured person, it is recommended that all work crews have at least one trained first aider, with a fully stocked first aid box, irrespective of the number of people in the work crew. This is especially important when contractors work at great distances from the nearest emergency facility or town. These persons shall be appointed in writing as the first aiders with their certificates attached as proof of competency.

The minimum contents of the first aid box shall be as per the supplied list in the General Safety Regulations.

All treatments done must be recorded on a register and kept with the first aid box. A trained and appointed first aider must be responsible for the first aid box and its content. Used content must be replenished as soon as possible.

In order to ensure prompt response at the emergency facility it is recommended that the W.Cl 2 forms be partially completed with the Employers' details.

c) Hygiene Facilities

The Principal Contractor and his contractors shall ensure compliance to Section 30 of the Construction Regulations with regards to facilities on the construction site as well as where accommodation is provided to employees on remote sites. The Principal Contractor shall ensure that the facilities are kept clean at all times, either through a service provider or self-employed persons. The Principal Contractor shall provide employees with at least one sanitary facility for each sex and for every 30 workers, changing facilities for each sex and sheltered eating areas.

d) Health related Epidemics and Pandemics

The contractor shall, as far as reasonably practicable describe in his health and safety plan how health related epidemics and pandemics will be dealt with. The Employer is aware that this section in the health and safety plan will not speak to specifics, but generic procedures. The Contractor must ensure that the requirements stipulated in the Hazardous Biological Agents (HBA) Regulation are addressed in his health and safety plan, training and information given to staff and procedures implemented on site to prevent health risks on site.

Once the nature and scale of the epidemic or pandemic is known, the Contractor must update his health and safety plan with the relevant information and send the updated plan to the relevant

appointed OHS Agent for approval. Once approved, the Contractor must implement the updated health and safety plan and maintain the updated plan on site.

E1013 WASTE MANAGEMENT

The Principal Contractor shall comply with all applicable and relevant Waste management legislation, as well as municipal bylaws applicable to waste management.

The Principal Contractor shall remove all waste generated at the construction site as soon as possible after generation to ensure good housekeeping at all times. The Principal Contractor shall have a waste management plan which must be implemented on the construction site and which will have the objective to ensure that waste is managed according to the Waste Management Hierarchy:

- Reduce what you can. If you cannot reduce then,
- Re-use what you can. If you cannot re-use then,
- Recycle what you can. What you cannot recycle,
- Convert into energy sources. If it cannot be converted to an energy source,
- Dispose of in a landfill – this is only to be done as a last resort and disposed without endangering human health and without using processes or methods which could harm the environment.

E1014 HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCE MANAGEMENT

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that hazardous substances brought onto site are easily identifiable and stored according to the requirements of the General Safety Regulations, GNR. 1031 of 1986, Section 4.

Where flammable liquids are being used or stored, this must be done in a manner which would not cause a fire or explosion hazard.

The Principal Contractor shall have Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) readily available for flammable, hazardous and toxic chemical substances and materials brought onto site and shall ensure that his employees are trained in these MSDS's.

Flammable, hazardous or toxic chemical substances may not be stored in empty food or drink containers. Empty flammable, hazardous and toxic containers must be disposed of in a safe manner, which will prevent further use of such a container.

A survey of the construction site must be done during site establishment, to locate any asbestos. Should asbestos be located, the conditions of the Asbestos Regulations, GNR. 155 of 2002 must be followed and complied with.

E1015 CONTRACTORS

a) Consultations, Communications and Liaison

OH&S liaison between the Employer, The Principal Contractor, The Contractors, the designer and other concerned parties will be through the OH&S committee. In addition to the above, communication may be directly to the Employer or his appointed agent, verbally or in writing, as and when the need arises.

Consultation with the workforce on OH&S matters will be through their construction managers and supervisors, OH&S representatives and the OH&S committee. The Principal Contractor shall be responsible for the dissemination of all relevant OH&S information to The Contractors e.g. design changes agreed with the Employer and the designer, instructions by the Employer and/or his/her agent, exchange of information between subcontractors, the reporting of hazardous/dangerous conditions/situations etc. The Principal Contractors' most senior manager on site shall be required to attend all OH&S meetings.

b) Operational Procedures

Each construction activity shall be assessed by The Principal Contractor so as to identify operational procedures that will mitigate against the occurrence of an incident during the execution of each activity. This specification requires The Principal Contractor:

- to be conversant with all relevant Regulations;
- to comply with their provisions;
- to include them in his OH&S plan where relevant

c) **Checking, Reporting and Corrective Actions**

i) Monthly Audit by Employer (Construction Regulation 5(1)(o))

The Employer will conduct monthly health and safety and document verification audits in compliance with Construction Regulation 5(1)(o) in order to ensure that The Principal Contractor has implemented and is maintaining the agreed and approved OH&S plan.

The Principal Contractor will be provided with a copy of the Health and Safety audit report within seven days after the audit. The Employer or his representative may stop any Principal Contractor from executing a construction activity which poses a threat to the health and safety of persons which is not in accordance with the client's health and safety specification and the Principal contractor's health and safety plan for the specific site.

ii) Other Audits and Inspections by the Employer

The Employer reserves the right to conduct other ad hoc audits and inspections as deemed necessary. This will include site safety walks.

iii) Principal Contractor's Audits and Inspections

The Principal Contractor must conduct his own regular internal audits to verify compliance with his own OH&S management system, as well as with this specification.

The Principal Contractor shall furthermore ensure that each contractor's health & safety plan is being implemented and maintained. The Principal Contractor will ensure that periodic health and safety audits and document verification are conducted at intervals mutually agreed upon between the Principal Contractor and any contractor, but at least once every 30 days.

iv) Inspections by OH&S Representatives and other Appointees

OH&S representatives shall conduct monthly inspections of their areas of responsibility and report thereon to their foreman or supervisor, as well as the OH&S Committee, whilst other appointees shall conduct inspections and report thereon as specified in their appointments e.g. vehicle, plant and machinery drivers, operators and users must conduct daily inspections before start-up.

v) Recording and Review of Inspection Results

All the results of the abovementioned inspections shall be in writing, reviewed at OH&S committee meetings, endorsed by the chairman of the meeting and placed on the OH&S File.

d) **Project Health and Safety Management Plan**

As per Section 5(1) (l) and Section 7(1) (a) of the Construction Regulations of 2014, The Principal Contractor shall develop, implement and administer a Health and Safety Management Plan. The plan shall be in writing and shall be negotiated between The Principal Contractor and SANRAL or designated OHS Agent and must be approved by SANRAL or the designated OHS Agent prior to the commencement of work on site. The plan shall demonstrate management's commitment to ensure employee health and safety as their primary objective during the contract. The H&S plan shall be site and project specific and must address all aspects of the project H&S specification.

e) **Project Health and Safety File**

The Principal Contractor shall compile a project specific Health and Safety File that consist of all the relevant project specific documentation. The Health and Safety file may consist of multiple files, which when combined should contain all the required documentation.

It is recommended that the project specific Health and Safety file contain at least the following:

- Scope and summary of the project as well as any scope changes.
- Notification of Construction Work to DoL / Copy of Work Permit
- Proof of COID registration (Letter of Good Standing)
- Contractor Health and Safety Policy statement signed by management
- Appointment of Principal Contractor
- Mandatory Agreement – OH&S Act 37.2 (Between Employer and Principal Contractor)
- Client Health and Safety specification
- Latest copy of the OHS Act and Regulations
- Company Organogram depicting Health and Safety Responsibilities, including sub-contractors
- Employee list including copy of IDs and medicals
- Project specific Health and Safety Management Plan agreed with the Employer – See E1015(d) above
- Relevant OH&S Legal appointments which includes duties and responsibilities as well as competencies (training certificate)
- Copies of minutes of meetings – OH&S committee and other relevant OH&S meeting minutes
- Site specific Fall Protection Plan (if applicable)
- Risk Assessments
- Contractor Induction material
- Waste management Plan
- Emergency preparedness (first aid, firefighting, emergency plan, etc.)
- Emergency Contact Telephone numbers
- List of hazardous chemical substances used on site
- Material Safety Data Sheets of hazardous chemicals on site
- List of plant & equipment to be used on site
- Inspection Checklists/Registers of plant & equipment and emergency equipment
- List of Sub-contractors including type of work
- Sub-contractor 37.2 Mandatory Agreements
- Sub-contractor appointments which shall include the type of work The Principal Contractor is appointed for.

f) **Contracting Philosophy**

Any site-specific hazards and safety management expectations will be made known to the Principal Contractor prior to the work commencing on site. This will be done through the OH&S Specification for the project. SANRAL as the Employer/Client may specify requirements that are stricter than Legislative requirements in this OH&S Specification. Legal OHS requirements contained in the OHS Act and Regulations, SANS Codes and the project OH&S Specifications are the minimum requirements the Principal Contractor must apply during this contract with regards to Occupational Health and Safety. The Principal Contractor shall implement the minimum OH&S requirements and ensure conformance to these at all times.

g) **Workers Compensation Registration**

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that his employees are covered for any occupational injuries and illnesses in terms of the Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act 130 of 1993, which cover shall remain in place and up to date for the duration of the project.

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that his sub-contractor employees are covered for any occupational injuries and illnesses in terms of the Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act 130 of 1993, which cover shall remain in place and up to date for the duration of the project.

h) **HSE Non-Compliance**

It is a legal duty of the client according to the Construction Regulation 5(1)(q) that a Principal Contractor is stopped from executing any activity which poses a threat to the health and safety of persons. Depending on the seriousness of the non-compliance only the specific activity may be stopped until the non-compliance is rectified or the whole operation may be stopped.

It is also the duty of every employee to take reasonable care of his own health and safety and of other persons who may be affected by his acts as per OHS Act, Section 14(a). Keeping this in mind, it is required of The Principal Contractor to ensure his employees has the right to remove themselves from any unsafe situation or work activity, without any negative consequence to them until such time as The Principal Contractor has made the unsafe situation or activity as safe as practicable possible.

i) Indemnity by Contractor

The Principal Contractor shall indemnify the Employer against and from all damages, losses and expenses (including legal fees and expenses) resulting from:

- i) the loss of output and delay caused by the slowing down or partial or total stoppage of work caused by:
 - all or any of The Principal Contractor's workforce as a result of a dispute between all or any of the Principal Contractor's workforce and The Principal Contractor; or
 - all or any of the Principal Contractor's suppliers' difficulty or impossibility to deliver goods or materials needed to perform the Works;
- ii) Any unlawful, riotous or disorderly conduct by or amongst the Principal Contractor's personnel."

j) The Principal Contractor Conduct

Guidelines to the most important rules that shall be implemented and maintained by the Principal Contractor:

- Complete compliance to the OH&S Act 85 of 1993 and Regulations,
- Hazard identification and Risk Assessments for all activities,
- Daily communication of DSTI's before work commences, even if it is a repetitive task,
- Safe access and egress to and from work areas,
- Compulsory use of lifelines, Safety Harnesses and Fall Arrestors (Lanyards to be attached at all times), when working in elevated positions,
- Scaffold shall comply with Legal and SANS standards at all times,
- Good housekeeping and stacking practices,
- Safe lifting, rigging and slinging practices,
- Complying to Legal standards for lifting machinery & equipment,
- No lifting in wind conditions exceeding 30km/h (This is a guide and is dependent on risk assessments),
- Securing of tools, equipment and material at heights,
- Wearing of appropriate personal protective equipment as identified in the risk assessment.

Supervisors in charge are responsible for ensuring that the employees are aware of the hazards/risks involved in the work they will be doing/are doing and shall ensure the safety rules are obeyed.

No person shall act in a manner that endangers or is likely to endanger, the safety of any other person, or cause harm to any other person.

An employee who observes any dangerous situation, shall as soon as possible inform the person who is responsible for that section of the site.

Any employee who becomes aware of any person disregarding any safety rules, shall remind that person of the rules. If he persists in disregarding the rules, the matter must be reported to his supervisor.

No person shall damage, alter, remove, render ineffective or interfere with anything that has been provided for the protection of the site, or for the health and safety of persons.

No person shall interfere with or use firefighting equipment without authority and training.

No person in a state of intoxication or condition that render him incapable of controlling himself shall enter or be allowed to enter the site.

No alcohol or illegal drugs shall be taken onto the site.

All safety and warning signs shall be obeyed.

Always be alert of construction vehicles as well as traffic. Never turn your back to oncoming traffic, always have a line of sight.

k) Principal Contractor and Contractor Management

The Principal Contractor shall establish, maintain and ensure that all his contractors establish and maintain OH&S standards and systems as necessary and to comply with the Legal requirements as well as these OH&S specifications.

The Principal Contractor shall be solely responsible for carrying out work on the project, having the highest regard for the health and safety of his employees and people in the vicinity of his work area.

l) Public Health and Safety

The Principal Contractor shall, as far as is reasonably practicable, be responsible for ensuring that non-employees affected by the construction work are made aware of the dangers likely to arise from said construction work as well as the precautionary measures to be observed to avoid or minimise those dangers.

This includes:

- Non- employees entering the site for whatever reason
- The surrounding community
- Passers-by to the site.

E1016 DESIGNING FOR HEALTH, SAFETY AND THE ENVIRONMENT

Designing for safety is a process aimed at minimizing injury, death, property damage or destruction and harm to the environment, by utilizing an approach to identify and eliminate or control hazardous conditions and material during the design process. The Principal Contractor is responsible for appointing the temporary works Designer and shall ensure that the temporary works Designer implement a process and designs the temporary works in such a way that ensure the safety of employees during the erection, use and dismantling of the temporary works. The temporary work designer shall comply with the duties of the Temporary Work Designer as per the Construction Regulations, 2014 Section 6(2).

The Principal Contractor must communicate the anticipated risks and hazards resulting from the design to his employees and establish safe work procedures for the temporary works.

E1017 INCIDENT MANAGEMENT

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that a culture exists within his company that promotes the recognition, response, reporting and investigation of incidents, including near misses (near hits). The Principal Contractor must implement a procedure for reporting and investigating accidents, incidents and near misses. The Principal Contractor should have a clear objective and target to obtain zero injuries for the duration of the project and such an objective must be communicated to all employees.

Appropriate corrective actions must be implemented, and the applicable learnings must be shared within The Principal Contractors business to prevent a recurrence of the incident or to prevent the near miss from becoming an incident in future.

(a) Incidents and Accidents

The Principal Contractor and his contractors shall coordinate their investigation of all accidents/incidents where employees and non-employees were injured to the extent that he had to be referred for medical treatment by a doctor, hospital or clinic. The results of the investigation shall be entered into an accident/incident register, which must be updated with each accident/incident.

The Principal Contractor shall notify the relevant SANRAL Project Manager and or SANRAL OHS Specialist of any incident/accident within the Principal Contractors or his Contractors area of responsibility in writing as soon as possible.

Although the accident/incident is reported to the client, the Principal Contractor has a responsibility and is required by law to report any Section 24 accidents and incidents to the Department of Labour. Any road traffic accident must be reported to the relevant authorities.

It is essential that the Principal Contractor demonstrate that corrective and preventative action has been taken to prevent a similar incident in future and that it is communicated to all the Principal Contractors affected staff. A copy of the investigation, corrective and preventative action taken as well as the attendance register of the employees who attended the discussion of the incident and the action implemented to prevent a similar incident, must be forwarded to the SANRAL Project Manager and or the SANRAL OHS Specialist.

Investigations must be completed for:

- Near Miss Incidents (To prevent it from becoming an incident)
- First Aid case Incidents
- Medical treatment case Incidents
- Fatalities

(b) Incident Reporting

The Principal Contractor shall provide the Employer with copies of all statutory reports required in terms of the Act within 7 days of the incident occurring. In addition, The Principal Contractor shall update monthly the Disabling Injury Frequency Ratio (DIFR) and display this information on a signboard at the site office.

The Principal Contractor is responsible for collecting, recording, calculating and reporting his and his sub-contractors Health & Safety statistics to the SANRAL OHS Specialist.

The statistics should contain at least the following for all employees of all contractors working on the project:

- Total Number of workers
- Total Number of hours worked (on the SANRAL project)
- Total Number of Near Miss Incidents
- Total Number of First Aid case Incidents
- Total Number of Medical Treatment case Incidents (Excluding Section 24 type incidents)
- Total Number of Section 24 type Incidents
- Preventative actions taken on incidents that have occurred
- Communication to employees and contractors of incidents and preventative actions.

E1018 PROJECT SPECIFIC CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

The clause contains specific requirements for Contract SANRAL S004-005-2020/1, which must be adhered to in addition to minimum legislative requirements.

a) Baseline Risk Assessment

The following is a list of activities, hazards and risks identified which forms the Baseline Risk Assessment for the project prepared by the Client in terms of Construction Regulation 5(1) (a):

Risks associated for identified activities and hazards:

<u>Activity</u>	<u>Associated Hazards</u>	<u>Associated Risks</u>	<u>Risk Rating</u> High Medium Low
Site establishment	Extreme temperatures; Pesticides, herbicides, dust. Snakes, bees, spiders, vermin (rats & mice);	Heat exhaustion; Dehydration; Poisoning; Fatality / Serious health effect;	M

<u>Activity</u>	<u>Associated Hazards</u>	<u>Associated Risks</u>	Risk Rating High Medium Low
	Portable electrical equipment; Electrical hand tools; Lifting equipment; Aggrieved members of the public.	Silicosis; Electrical shock; Personal Injuries; Falling objects; Strikes / riots	
Security	Aggrieved members of the public; Uncontrolled people	Protest Riots Theft	M
Loading / Unloading of materials / plant & equipment from trucks	Lifting equipment; Inexperience operators; Inexperienced workers;	Material / plant falling from height; Operator losing control; Employees under/close to suspended loads.	M
Transportation of personnel / materials	Overloaded vehicles; Transportation of workers in vehicles not designed to transport people; Transporting vehicle defective / not roadworthy	Operator losing control of vehicle; Vehicle overturning; Vehicle accidents; Fatality; Serious injuries	H
Erection of temporary site offices / Laboratory	Extreme temperatures; Pesticides, herbicides, dust, cement; Snakes, bees, spiders, vermin (rats & mice); Portable electrical equipment; Electrical hand tools; Lifting equipment; Temporary works; Aggrieved members of the public.	Heat exhaustion; Poisoning; Fatality / Serious health effect; Silicosis; Electrical shock; Personal Injuries; Falling objects; Strikes / riots	M
Working with and handling of hazardous / flammable / toxic materials	Hazardous, flammable and toxic substances	Chemical burns; Fire; Serious injuries; Fatalities	M
Disposal of waste materials	Hazardous waste	Environmental pollution Re-use of containers can have serious health effect on people or fatal.	H
Traffic accommodation / calming	Public vehicles; Extreme temperatures Stop & Go	Employees run over by public vehicles – serious injuries / fatalities Heat exhaustion Public not adhering to stop & go signals / try to bypass stop & go – fatality / serious injuries / vehicle accidents.	H
Working in elevated positions - Working at heights, on slopes, next to excavations, on trucks.	Defective / Inadequate equipment; Improper use or non-use of fall protection equipment;	Inadequate protection of employees against falls; Electrical Shock; Electrical arching; Slippery work surfaces;	H

<u>Activity</u>	<u>Associated Hazards</u>	<u>Associated Risks</u>	<u>Risk Rating</u> High Medium Low
	Environmental conditions – rain / strong wind, lightning; Live electrical power lines; Suspension trauma.	Fatality / serious injuries;	
Stockpiling	Material falling from stockpile	Serious personal injuries; Material damage	M
Operations involving Noise	Noise	Noise induced hearing loss	M
Operations involving Vibration	Vibration	Damage to joints, muscles, circulation and sensory nerves.	M
Working above / near water environments	Working at heights Water environment	Drowning	M
Working near existing services – overhead/underground power cables; telecommunication cables	Electricity	Electrical Shock; Electrical arcing; Fire; Burns Fatality Serious injury	H
Working with portable electrical equipment – grinders, circular saws, generators	Electricity Electrical tools Portable electrical equipment	Electrical shock Cuts Personal injuries	M
Lifting / Lowering operations	Elevated objects Lifting machines Improper rigging Electrical cables	Lifting machine / crane overturning; Falling objects Dropped loads Strong winds Loads striking personnel, vehicles or equipment. People working underneath High voltage power lines may arch onto crane boom.	H
Driving and operation of construction vehicles and mobile plant	Distracted drivers; Recklessness; Impaired driving; Poor visibility; Poor road conditions; Unsecured loads; Uncontrolled vehicle entry; Equipment failure; Public vehicles; Uneven ground surfaces	Fatalities; Serious injuries; Crashes; Vehicles, plant and equipment damage; Workers not seen by operators; Workers working too close to mobile plant and vehicles; Construction vehicles & mobile plant not road worthy / defective; Roll over of construction vehicles / plant.	H
Excavation work	Unstable ground Underground electrical cables; Underground pipelines;	Cave-ins; People falling into excavation; Workers buried in excavation due to cave-ins;	H

<u>Activity</u>	<u>Associated Hazards</u>	<u>Associated Risks</u>	<u>Risk Rating</u> High Medium Low
	Excavation equipment, construction vehicles & plant.	Construction vehicles / plant falling into excavation; Fatalities; Serious injuries	
Use of explosives	Explosives; Flying debris	Fatality; Serious Injuries	M
Gabion work	Manual handling Slopes Slippery Rocks	Personal injuries Trips, Slips & Falls	M
Work adjacent or in proximity of railway lines	Trains	Working too close to railway track can cause train draft to suck workers under trains. People falling onto or in front of trains while working above railway track.	H
Work adjacent or near traffic	Public vehicles	Workers not attentive to approaching vehicles. Drivers not slowing down to indicated speed limit. Drivers losing control of their vehicles.	H
Temporary works – Form work & support work	Temporary works	Falls from height; Collapse of temporary work overloading	H
Demolition work	Demolition equipment Flying debris Explosives;	Fatality; Serious Injuries; Damage to equipment; Damage to public assets	H
Work adjacent to public property	Construction plant and equipment; Excavation activities; Demolition activities;	Injury to public persons; Damage to public property and assets;	H
Protection of public H&S	Unprotected temporary works; Stockpiles; Incomplete structures.	Public persons accessing construction area, stockpiles and incomplete structures. Fatality / Serious injury to public persons	H
Welfare facilities – drinking water; eating facilities; sanitary facilities	Water not suitable for human consumption; Shortage of water; Hazardous substances; Environmental impact.	Serious health effects; Dehydration Environmental pollution	M
Working in the environment	Bees Snakes Spiders Lighting Strong winds Heavy rain Hot/cold conditions	Poisoning; Fatality / Serious health effect; Electrical shock / burns; Personal Injuries; Slips; Drowning; Heat exhaustion; Dehydration;	M

<u>Activity</u>	<u>Associated Hazards</u>	<u>Associated Risks</u>	<u>Risk Rating</u> High Medium Low
	Hazardous biological agents	Serious health effects; Fatality; Pandemic; Epidemic	H

b) **Daily Site Attendance Register**

The Principal Contractor shall keep a daily site register so as to be able to identify the entire Contractors personnel on site in case of an emergency or evacuation situation. The attendance register must include permanent as well as temporary workers working on the site.

All contractors shall report to security/reception upon arrival at site. The Principal Contractor will only grant first time access to work on the site if all required documentation has been provided by the contractor and has been approved by the Principal Contractor.

All site visitors, suppliers and any new contractors shall report to security/reception upon arrival at site. All visitors need to sign an attendance register when visiting the site. Visitors include all persons which are not permanently working on the site but excludes temporary site workers. Visitors must undergo site induction training before they are allowed on site to make them aware of the site dangers.

c) **Emergency Numbers / Emergency Evacuation**

A list with emergency numbers must be readily available to first aiders and supervisors. Emergency numbers must be site specific and must display the nearest emergency facilities.

The Principal Contractor shall identify and formulate emergency procedures in the event an incident does occur. The emergency procedures thus identified shall also be included in The Principal Contractor's OH&S plan and communicated as part of induction training. It is the responsibility of the first aid worker, together with the construction supervisor, to make an assessment regarding the severity of injuries and which actions are appropriate. For example: transfer to a medical facility by ambulance or helicopter.

The Principal Contractor must implement an emergency evacuation procedure on site to ensure that in case of an emergency, all staff will leave their place of work when the emergency siren is sound and proceed to the designated emergency assembly point. The emergency assembly point at the site office must display the sign "Emergency Assembly Point".

An evacuation route diagram must be displayed and visible at strategic points in the site office buildings and on notice boards.

All staff working on site must be given awareness training on the emergency evacuation procedure and evacuation drills must be exercised to ensure all staff know the correct procedure to follow in case of an emergency.

d) **Site Security**

Certain areas where work must be carried out, is recognized unsafe areas and certain other areas may from time to time become unsafe, due to 3rd party actions. The Principal Contractor must, as far as reasonably possible, anticipate unsafe areas and must ensure that his site staff is safe from 3rd party actions, which include but is not limited to:

- Unrests,
- Violent Demonstrations,
- Theft,
- Injury to staff due to 3rd party actions.

The Principal Contractor must, when work is to be carried out in the above-mentioned areas, make provision for security services to accompany site staff during the execution of their work, as The Principal Contractor is responsible for the Health, Safety and Security of his own staff. The provision for security services must form part of The Principal Contractors tender.

e) **Personal Protective Equipment**

Comply with General Safety Regulations, Section 2

The Principal Contractor shall identify the hazards in the workplace and follow the hierarchy of controls to prevent incidents. Where possible, hazards must be eliminated or, where impracticable, mitigate the hazards through implementing control measures. Where mitigated hazards still pose a risk to the health and safety of workers, take steps to protect workers and make it possible for them to work safely and without risk to their health under the hazardous conditions, by wearing personal protective equipment and clothing.

Personal protective equipment (PPE) should, however, be the last resort and there should always first be an attempt to apply engineering and other solutions to mitigate hazardous situations before the wearing of PPE is considered. The hierarchy of hazard control must be followed before the option of personal protective equipment is considered. The following hierarchy of controls must be followed:

- Elimination
- Passive Controls
 - Substitution – Using a cherry picker or man-lift instead of a ladder.
 - Engineering Controls – Installing barrier railings; Installing stairs instead of using vertical ladders.
- Active Controls
 - Administrative policies and procedures
 - Personal protective equipment

Where it is not possible to create an absolutely safe and healthy workplace, the Principal Contractor shall inform employees regarding this and issue, free of charge, suitable equipment to protect them from any hazards being present and that allows them to work safely and without risk to health in the hazardous environment.

It is a further requirement that the Principal Contractor maintain the said equipment, that he instructs and trains the employees in the use of the equipment and ensures that the prescribed equipment is used by the employee/s.

Employees do not have the right to refuse to use/wear the equipment prescribed by the Employer and, if it is impossible for an employee to use or wear prescribed protective equipment through health or any other reason, the employee cannot be allowed to continue working under the hazardous condition/s for which the equipment was prescribed but an alternative solution has to be found that may include relocating the employee.

The Principal Contractor shall include in his OH&S plan the PPE he intends issuing to his employees for use during construction and the sanctions he intends to apply in cases of non-conformance by his employees. Conformance to the wearing of PPE shall be discussed at the DSTI and Toolbox Talk meetings.

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that all his personnel, excluding those who are permanently office bound, are equipped with reflective safety jackets and that these are worn at all times when working on site. Any person found not wearing a reflective jacket on site must be removed from the site until such time as he is in possession of and wearing a reflective jacket. Reflective safety jackets shall be kept in good condition and any jackets that are ineffective must immediately be replaced by The Principal Contractor.

f) **Site Supervision**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 8.

The Principal Contractor shall appoint a competent Construction Manager who shall be responsible for the construction activities and for ensuring occupational health and safety compliance on the construction site.

g) **Working in Elevated Positions**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 10

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that a fall protection plan, developed by a competent person who is designated as the Fall Protection Plan Developer, is available on site and understood by all employees who will be working in elevated positions.

All employees working in elevated positions shall protect themselves from falls by wearing a full body harness and the lanyard shall be attached as far as possible above the head of the worker to a life-line or other approved and anchor point indicated in the fall protection plan.

In addition to obvious elevated work activities, work activities which include:

- Working on the edge of an excavation where there is a risk of falling into the excavation; or
- Work on the edge of a vertical drop where there is a risk of falling;

shall be considered work in elevated positions and Section 10 of the Construction Regulations must be adhered to at all times. The hierarchy of controls must be implemented when such activities are carried out. As a minimum the employee must wear PPE as identified in the risk assessment, which shall include a full body harness.

h) **Structures**

Comply with Construction Regulations, Section 11.

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that all practicable measures are taken to prevent the uncontrolled collapse of new or existing structures or any part thereof, which may become unstable or is in a temporary state of weakness or instability due to the carrying out of construction work. No structure may be loaded in a manner which would render it unsafe.

When a structure is of temporary nature, all conditions as required by the Construction Regulations Section 12 - Temporary Works, must also be complied with.

i) **Excavations**

Comply with Construction Regulations, Section 13

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that all excavations are carried out under the supervision of a competent person who has been appointed in writing as Excavation Supervisor.

The Principal Contractor must evaluate the stability of the ground before excavation work begins as well as during excavation work.

Excavations must be barricaded to prevent unauthorized access.

Material removed from excavations, as well as heavy machinery and construction vehicles, must not be closer than 1 meter to the edge of the excavation, to prevent additional loads on the excavation edge, which could cause cave-ins, to prevent construction vehicles from falling into the excavation and to prevent the accumulation of carbon monoxide gas inside the excavation.

The principal contractor and its contractors must cause every excavation which is accessible to the public or which is adjacent to the public roads or thoroughfares, or whereby the safety of persons may be endangered, to be –

- Adequately protected by a barrier or fence and as close to the excavation as is practicable; and
- Provided with warning illuminants or any other boundary indicators that are clearly visible at night or when visibility is poor.

People working in the excavation must be adequately protected from cave-ins, by means of protection systems such as trench boxed and shielding and must have a safe means of access into the excavation and egress from the excavation.

j) **Scaffolding**

Comply with Construction Regulations, Section 16, General Safety Regulations, Section 6 and SANS 10085 – The Design, erection, use and inspection of access scaffolding

The Principal Contractor shall appoint a competent person in writing as scaffolding Supervisor. Scaffolding Inspectors and Scaffolding Erectors must be trained and found competent to carry out scaffolding work. It is important to note that only competent scaffold erectors are allowed to build the scaffolding. The scaffold inspector is not allowed to build the scaffold with the scaffold erector team.

Scaffolding shall be erected according to SANS 10085 and shall be tagged “Unsafe for use” while it is being build and “Safe for Use” after inspection indicated that the scaffold is safe to use. The inspection of the scaffold shall be in writing and proof thereof shall be available for any user of the scaffold as well as for audit purposes.

Scaffold left erected while The Principal Contractor is not in attendance, must be tagged with a “Not Safe for Use” tag and all reasonably practicable measures must be taken to prevent unauthorised access to the scaffold.

Scaffold must be inspected by the competent scaffold inspector on completion of the scaffold build, weekly thereafter or following severe weather conditions.

Hazards such as overhead power lines must be identified before the scaffold is build and must be reflected in the risk assessment.

When using mobile scaffold, employees and materials must be removed from scaffold before moving the mobile scaffold. Hazards such as overhead power lines must be identified before moving mobile scaffold and must reflect in the risk assessment.

k) **Suspended Platforms**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 17, SANS 10295-2 - Suspended access equipment Part 2: Temporary suspended platforms (TSPs)

All suspended platform work must be carried out under the supervision of a competent appointed Suspended Platform Supervisor. Suspended platform erectors, operators and inspectors must be competent.

The Principal Contractor must be in possession of a certificate of design for the use of the suspended platform system.

l) **Cranes**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 22, Driven Machinery Regulation, Section 18.

Crane operators must be trained and found competent to operate the particular type of lifting machine and have a valid operator's card. The crane operator must be in possession of a valid medical certificate of fitness, issued by an occupational health practitioner.

The wind factor should always be taken into consideration when operating cranes and a wind speed device must be fitted so that it provides the operator with an audible warning when the speed exceeds the safe lifting speed. Upon noticing that the wind speed is equal or more than the specified speed limit, the operator should stop immediately.

m) **Construction Vehicles & Mobile Equipment**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 23, National Road Traffic Act, 1996

Construction vehicle operators must have received training to operate the class of construction vehicle or mobile equipment and must be in possession of an operator's card as proof of competency. Construction vehicle operators must be authorised in writing and have a medical certificate of fitness issued by an occupational health practitioner to operate the construction vehicle and/or mobile equipment.

All construction vehicles operating on a public road, must be roadworthy, licenced and when operated on a public road, comply with the National Road traffic Act.

n) **Electrical Equipment**

Comply with Construction Regulations, Section 24.

The Principal Contractor shall take adequate steps to ascertain the presence of and guard against danger to workers from electrical cables or apparatus which is under, over or on the site.

The exact location of underground electric power cables must be determined before any excavators are used for excavation purposes.

The location of overhead electrical cables must be assessed when working with cranes and lifting equipment. Injury may be possible from touching the electrical cables with the crane boom, or from arching when the crane boom comes too close to the electrical cable.

All temporary electrical installations must be inspected at least once a week by a competent person and the records of the inspections must be recorded in a register which must be kept on site.

Electrical machinery and extension cords must be in a serviceable condition and must be inspected on a daily basis before use on a construction site by the authorised operator and the inspection checklist must be kept on the construction site.

Comply with Electrical Installation Regulations.

All electrical installations shall be inspected and approved by an accredited electrical inspector and a valid Certificate of Compliance must be issued for the installation.

All electrical installations carried out on site (permanent and temporary) must be in accordance and comply with the Electrical Installation Regulations.

All power supplies and generating units must be fitted with a functional earth leakage device.

o) **Temporary Storage of Flammable Liquids**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 25 and General Safety Regulations, Section 4

The Principal Contractor must ensure storage areas of flammable liquids are well ventilated and "No Smoking" signs are placed at the entrances and ventilation ducts of the storage areas. Firefighting equipment must be available in suitable positions around the storage areas.

The Principal Contractor must ensure that good housekeeping is practiced in and around the flammable storage areas.

p) **Water Environments**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 26.

The Principal Contractor must ensure that a lifejacket forms part of the employees PPE and is worn when the employee is exposed to the risk of drowning, by falling into water.

The risk assessment must make provision for the rescuing of persons in danger of drowning and for preventing employees from falling into the water.

When working next to a river, the Principal Contractor shall put a system in place to monitor the river water level in order to evacuate employee in case of a flood.

When working over water environments, Section 10 of the Construction Regulations – Fall Protection will also apply.

q) **Housekeeping**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 27, Environmental Regulations for Workplaces, Section 6(3).

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that suitable and acceptable housekeeping is continuously implemented and maintained on the construction site. Off-cuts and waste must be removed as soon as practicable.

r) **Stacking & Storage of Material, Plant & Equipment**

Comply with Construction Regulations, Section 28 and General Safety Regulations, Section 8.

The Principal Contractor shall appoint a competent person in writing with the duty of supervising all stacking and storage operations on site.

Stacking shall only take place in areas specifically demarcated for this purpose. Circular items must be secured with wedges or chocks.

Items removed from a stack shall only take place from the topmost layer of the stack.

Stacks shall not obstruct any fire extinguishing equipment, first aid equipment, electrical switchgear (DB Boxes) and ventilation or lighting installations.

Unstable stacks must be broken down immediately.

s) **Fire Precautions**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 29.

The Principal Contractor must provide his own firefighting equipment that is within the service date and safe for use. Firefighting equipment must be on a register and inspected by a competent person who has been appointed in writing.

Suitable and sufficient fire extinguishing equipment must be placed at strategic locations and a sufficient number of firefighters must be available, which must be trained in the use of it.

t) **Intoxicating Liquor and Drugs**

Comply with General Safety Regulations, Section 2A.

The principal Contractor must compile a Substance Abuse Policy, which must be communicated to all employees. This policy should form part of the induction material for employees as well as visitors.

The Substance Abuse Policy should set the limit for intoxication to zero in order to complement a vision of zero tolerance.

Any person found to be intoxicated, or consuming intoxicating liquor or illegal drugs, shall not be allowed onto the premises and/or must be removed from the premises.

The Principal Contractor has the right to test any person entering the premises for intoxicating liquor or illegal drugs and may refuse entrance on the basis of the outcome of the test.

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that employees taking prescription medicine informs the Principal Contractor of such and shall ensure that the side effect of such medicine does not constitute a hazard to the employee himself or people working with, or in close proximity to the employee.

u) **Confined Space Work & Tunnelling**

Comply with Construction Regulation, Section 15 and General Safety Regulations, Section 5.

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that only authorized persons enter confined spaces.

An entrance log must be kept to ensure people are not left inside the confined space. Adequate air monitoring must be carried out before entering the confined space. When air monitoring indicated the oxygen to be less than 20% by volume, the confined space must be purged and ventilated to obtain a safe atmosphere or self-contained breathing apparatus must be used.

v) **Site Services**

The Principal Contractor shall provide and maintain on the site adequate facilities for employees to use, which must be serviced and kept sanitary and hygienic at all. The following site services should be taken not of:

i) Drinking Water

The Principal Contractor must ensure that an adequate supply of potable drinking water is available for all persons engaged in managing and working on the construction site and, if necessary, similar facilities elsewhere for such personnel off the site. Employees working in hot conditions must consume enough water per hour to prevent dehydration.

Where water is unsafe for human consumption, it must be so indicated by means of adequate signage.

ii) Accommodation

The Principal Contractor shall comply with the requirements of Construction Regulation 30 with regards to employee's accommodation. Reasonable and suitable living accommodation must be provided to employees who are far removed from their homes.

iii) Sanitary Facilities

The Principal Contractor shall comply with the requirements of Construction Regulation 30 with regards to employee's sanitary facilities. Sanitary facilities must be positioned in close proximity of the work area. Sanitary facilities must be serviced regularly and kept in a clean and hygienic condition.

w) **Traffic Accommodation**

The Principal Contractor must develop a clear Traffic Management Plan, which must be approved by the Engineer. Traffic must be organized and controlled in accordance to the Traffic Management Plan and any work area must have adequate signage, signaling or other control arrangements to guard against the dangers relating to the movement of vehicles. Where reasonably practicable, solid barriers must be placed between workers and traffic passing by.

When the Principal Contractor is executing night work, permission should be obtained from the Engineer. The Principal Contractor must put in place visible or reflective signs that can be seen by motorist at a distance. If a stop and go method is used flag persons must be properly trained on how to control the traffic.

PART C4: PROJECT INFORMATION

PART C4: PROJECT INFORMATION

TABLE OF CONTENTS		PAGE
C4.1	DESCRIPTION OF THE WORKS	C3-247
C4.2	DRAWINGS	C3-251
C4.3	CAMP ESTABLISHMENT, POWER SUPPLY AND OTHER SERVICES	C3-252
C4.4	CONSTRUCTION IN CONFINED AREAS	C3-252
C4.5	MANAGEMENT OF THE ENVIRONMENT	C3-252
C4.6	TRAFFIC.....	C3-252
C4.7	SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT, TRAINING AND COMMUNITY LIAISON	C3-253
C4.8	CLIMATE	C3-254
C4.9	REQUIREMENTS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT AND REGULATIONS 2014.....	C3-257
C4.10	SAFETY PROCEDURES	C3-257
C4.11	OTHER INFORMATION	C3-257
C4.12	AGREEMENT TO OCCUPY SANRAL'S PROPERTY	C3-257
C4.13	APPENDICES.....	C3-257
APPENDIX 1:	LOCALITY PLAN.....	C3-259
APPENDIX 2:	WEATHER DATA	C3-260
APPENDIX 3:	TRAFFIC DATA	C3-263
APPENDIX 4:	ROUGHNESS DATA.....	C3-265
APPENDIX 5:	AGREEMENT TO OCCUPY SANRAL'S PROPERTY.....	C3-272
APPENDIX 5.1:	PLAN OF THE PROPERTY	C3-277
APPENDIX 5.2:	PRE-OCCUPATION INSPECTION FORM	C3-277
APPENDIX 5.3:	PRE-TERMINATION INSPECTION	C3-280
APPENDIX 6:	DISPUTE ADJUDICATION AGREEMENT	C3-281
APPENDIX 7:	IMPORTED CONTENT DECLARATION	C3-296
APPENDIX 8 –	CONTRACT PARTICIPATION GOAL (CPG) PLAN FORMAT	C3-17
APPENDIX 9 –	SANRAL PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE GUIDELINES.....	C3-5
APPENDIX 10 –	CHECKLIST FOR PLCS AND PLOS	C3-22
APPENDIX 11 –	PROFORMA SUBCONTRACT DOCUMENT FOR TARGETED ENTERPRISES	C3-23
APPENDIX 12 –	GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS.....	C3-23

All data and descriptions contained in this section of the contract documents are given for information purposes only and cannot be interpreted as prescriptive or as an instruction despite the fact that the text may give the opposite perspective. If any conflict arises between the content of this section and other sections of the contract documents, the latter take precedence.

C4.1 DESCRIPTION OF THE WORKS

C4.1.1 ROADWORKS

Project Road

The current route is a gravel road starting from km 0.000 to km 31.000. The project road is a single carriageway two-lane inter-urban road. There are no slow lanes to be introduced. The road will be upgraded to a Surfaced Standard Road, having 2 x 3.5m lanes and 2 x 1m shoulders.

The project will comprise of the construction of a new NME4 pavement structure and drainage system upgrade implemented as required along the route. There are no plans to upgrade the road to a dual carriageway.

Project Location

The proposed project is located at the Isandlwana area which is within the jurisdiction of the Nquthu Local Municipality and uMzinyathi District Municipality in the province of KwaZulu-Natal. The Isandlwana roads upgrade – Package 1 aims to upgrade the provincial road P372 that traverses through the Isandlwana Battlefield Heritage Area.

Project Limits

Provincial Route P372 starts from the P372 / R68 intersection – km 0.00 (at Luvisi Village) with latitude and longitude coordinates of 28°12'53"S & 30°39'40"E respectively. The road then goes in a south westerly direction through to Isandlwana Battlefield with latitude and longitude coordinates of 28°21'20"S & 30°39'15"E respectively. From Isandlwana Battlefield the road continues in a south easterly direction to ends at P372 & R68 intersection – km 31.00 (at Ngwebeni Village) with latitude and longitude coordinates of 28°18'57"S & 30°43'43"E respectively. See **APPENDIX 1 – LOCALITY PLAN**

Built Up Areas

The road goes through built-up areas (Villages/Townships) as per the list below:

- P372 (P372 & R68 intersection at Ngwebeni Village as km 0.00)
- K Section @ km 2,
- KwaNyoni @ km 6.8,
- Isandlwana @ km 9.3,
- Ncepheni @ km 11.36,
- Ngedla @ km 17.47,
- Pollock @ km 21.11,
- Ngwetshana @ km 25.24,
- Luvisi @ km 28.89

Connecting Roads / Intersections

The list of roads connecting to are P372 **as tabulated below:**

Table C4-1 – Road Intersections

Road Name	Intersections	Latitude Coordinate	Longitude Coordinate
D2286	3.620km RHS	28°20'25.07"S	30°41'38.09"E
L1190	4.880km LHS	28°20'47.83"S	30°40'59.12"E
P148	5.320km LHS	28°20'52.86"S	30°40'44.31"E

Road Name	Intersections	Latitude Coordinate	Longitude Coordinate
Unnamed Road 1	6.960km RHS	28°20'37.16"S	30°39'53.55"E
L1333	7.420km LHS	28°20'40.20"S	30°39'36.98"E
Road to Isandlwana Lodge	7.520km RHS	28°20'40.65"S	30°39'33.87"E
Road to Isandlwana PS	7.760km RHS	28°20'44.42"S	30°39'25.54"E
Road to Battlefield	7.970km RHS	28°20'49.90"S	30°39'21.62"E
Unnamed Road 2	11.640km LHS	28°21'20.40"S	30°37'21.15"E
Road to Mahlazane PS	12.390km LHS	28°21'01.54"S	30°37'04.93"E
Unnamed Road 3 (Ncepheni)	12.640km RHS	28°20'54.41"S	30°37'00.98"E
Road to Ntalantala SS	13.780km RHS	28°20'22.25"S	30°36'41.52"E
Unnamed Road 4 (Ncepheni)	14.025km LHS	28°20'16.00"S	30°36'35.93"E
Ndodekhling-Shayiwe Road	14.490km LHS	28°20'10.41"S	30°36'19.33"E
Unnamed Road 5 (Ncepheni)	14.700km RHS	28°20'07.46"S	30°36'12.42"E
D30	14.950km LHS	28°20'01.06"S	30°36'08.47"E
Unnamed Road 6 (Pollock)	20.380km RHS	28°17'26.95"S	30°37'05.15"E
Unnamed Road 7 (Ntanyandlovu)	22.010km RHS	28°16'35.65"S	30°37'29.30"E
Unnamed Road 8 (Ntanyandlovu)	23.005km RHS	28°16'05.58"S	28°16'05.58"S
Ngwetshana WTW Road	23.510km LHS	28°14'53.48"S	30°37'55.93"E
Unnamed Road 9 (Ngwetshana)	23.860km RHS	28°14'31.77"S	30°38'11.62"E
Unnamed Road 10 (Ngwetshana)	25.250km RHS	28°13'49.10"S	30°38'46.15"E
Unnamed Road 11 (Luvisi)	26.030km LHS	28°13'32.47"S	30°39'10.33"E
Unnamed Road 12 (Luvisi)	29.855km LHS	28°13'25.03"S	30°39'29.58"E
Unnamed Road 13 (Luvisi)	30.140km RHS	28°13'21.94"S	30°39'39.42"E
Unnamed Road 14 (Luvisi)	30.300km RHS	28°13'18.88"S	30°39'44.70"E
Unnamed Road 15 (Luvisi)	30.490km RHS	28°13'13.17"S	30°39'43.36"E
Unnamed Road 16 (Luvisi)	30.740km LHS	28°13'05.16"S	30°39'41.99"E

Major Intersections

These are the two (2) points where road P372 intersects with arterial road R68. The 2 major intersections namely; P372 & R68 intersection (at Luvisi Village) and P372 & R68 intersection (at Ngwebeni Village) where the intersections will be re-surfaced with asphalt. Regional road R68 will be rehabilitated at 200m approaches for both intersections.

Roads Ancillaries

The road shall include traffic calming measures at Pedestrian Crossings, Pedestrian Walkways, Gabions at Stormwater Crossings, Road Markings, Road Signage, Bus Stops, Fencing and Guard Rails (where required).

Existing Services

Construction constraints due to existing services is not envisaged however, the Contractor is expected to expose existing service and be liable for protection thereof during construction.

Traffic Accommodation

Temporary traffic management measures must be in place during road construction. The method of construction to be adopted for this project will be construction in half/partial widths and temporary deviations/detours where possible, with the use of STOP/GO systems manned by an adequate number of traffic controllers, flagmen and all appropriate signage as per the South African Roads Traffic Signs Manual (SARTSM) standards.

The construction in half widths will be adopted for a total length of 27km of the road where the Contractor will only be allowed to be working on a 4km section at a time. The total length of 27km is between CH0+000 up to CH23+000 and CH27+000 up to CH31+000. Construction in full widths will only be applicable for a total length of 4km, where temporary detours are as follows:

- motorised traffic between CH23+000 up to CH 25+750 will be temporarily deviated through roads D2286, P148 and L1333; and

- between CH25+750 up to CH 27+000 will be temporarily deviated through roads D2286 and L1190.

C4.1.2 PAVEMENT DESIGN FOR ALL PARTS OF THE VARIOUS ROADS

Existing Pavement Design and Pavement History

The existing route is a gravel road. No as built pavement structure information for P372 was available. However, visual assessments and geotechnical investigations have been conducted.

5 high level test pits were conducted to determine the underlain material of the road and identify material uniformity section). This allowed for full assessment of the pavement layer profiles in accordance with the SAPEM Chapter 6 requirements. The existing pavement was found to be of a poor (G<9 or poorer) shale material in all layers that were subjected to material classifications.

Further investigations were conducted for the purpose of adopting NME mix design. The investigations involved conducting Dynamic Cone-Penetrometer (DCP) and X-Ray Diffraction (XRD) analysis. A total number of 159 DCPs were conducted where four (4) uniform material sections were determined. The uniform section are as follows:

- km 00.00 – km 10.45
- km 10.45 – km 15.90
- km 15.90 – km 22.40
- km 22.40 – km 31.40

The pavement structure identified by the test pits is summarised in the below Table C4-2.

Table C4-2 – Test Pits Results

Test Pit	Chainage	TRH 14 CLASSIFICATION					
		Layer 1		Layer 2		Layer 3	
		Type	Thickness (mm)	Type	Thickness (mm)	Type	Thickness (mm)
1	0 + 130 (RHS)	<G10	400	<G10	600	N/A	N/A
2	6 + 790 (LHS)	G9	500	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
3	8 + 910 (RHS)	G9	1000	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
4	14 + 250 (LHS)	G10	150	G9	250	<G10	600
5	27 + 200 (RHS)	G9	1000	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

A total number of 49 material samples were scanned preparing for XRD analysis using a backloading preparation method. Additionally, the -75-micron fraction was scanned. Diffractograms were obtained using a Malvern Panalytical Aeris diffractometer with a PIXcel detector and fixed slits with Fe-filtered Co-K α radiation.

Pavement Design

The design parameters (TRH 24) used in the pavement design are as follows:

- Road Category: Category E
- Structural design life: 15 years
- Design traffic loading: 0,5 MESA
- Climatic region: Wet

Following consideration of climatic conditions, labour intensive construction requirements, recent best practice, maintenance strategies and client preference the following pavement structural layer were designed

- Overlay: Cape Seal Labour
- Base Layer: 150mm NME4 (Insitu / Blended 80% G5A & 20% Insitu)
- Roadbed/Lower Layer: 150mm G9 (Insitu Material)

NME4 base layer (Insitu / Blended 80% G5A & 20% Insitu) will be constructed in conventional methods using Plant (Yellow Machinery).

Cape Seal Surfacing will be constructed using labour enhanced methods which would assist in the upliftment of the local communities in the form of local labour.

The labour enhanced construction methods will be line with the CIDB Guide to Best Practice, Implementing employment intensive road works, Manual 4 Bituminous pavement seal, Module 5 – Construction of Cape Seal.

Materials for Construction

Materials for construction to be supplied by the Contractor from contractor own established commercial sources.

C4.1.3 STRUCTURAL WORKS

The structures located along the route P372 are listed below:

- a) 1 Bridges
- b) 5 Major Culverts
- c) 14 Lesser Culverts/Pipe Crossings

The visual assessments illustrated that, some pipe culverts are silting up due to flat culvert slopes and outlets getting blocked, restricting the flow of water. These culverts were fairly big culverts (more than 600mm), therefore it could be attributed to sizing.

Nine (9) of the culverts were identified as Armco Steel Pipes in a poor condition and will be replaced with adequate pipe culverts as per the hydrological analysis.

A list of the structures assessed is represented on Table C4-4 below:

Table C4-4 - List of Structures Assessed

BRIDGES

Summarise the repairs and upgrades needed for the bridges.

Table C4-5 – Bridges Summarized Repairs and Upgrades Needed

Catchment No.	Existing Drainage Structures	Km	Required Upgrade	New Design BMS Classification
1	Low level River Crossing (Drift)	30.81	2 x (1.5m x 1.5m) Portal Culvert	Lesser Culvert
2	2 x 0.85 m dia. Pipe Culvert	26.310	2 x 1.2 m dia. Portal Culvert	Lesser Culvert
3	3 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	24.308	4 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
4	3 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	23.845	3 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
5	2.2 m dia. Armco pipe	21.295	3 x 1.5 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
6	Bridge	20.500	-	-
7	1 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	17.610	2 x 1.5 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
8	1 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	17.085	1 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
9	None	16.995	1 x 0.6 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert

Catchment No.	Existing Drainage Structures	Km	Required Upgrade	New Design BMS Classification
10	1 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	16.880	2 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
11	1 x 1.7 m dia. Armco Pipes	15.590	1 x (1.5m x 1.5m) Portal Culvert	Lesser Culvert
12	1 x 2.3 m dia. Armco Pipes	15.435	1 x (1.5m x 1.5m) Portal Culvert	Lesser Culvert
13	2 x 1.2 m dia. Armco Pipes	14.245	2 x (1.5m x 1.5m) Portal Culvert	Lesser Culvert
14	2 x 0.85 m dia. Pipe Culvert	14.903	2 x 1.5 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
15	1 x 2.5 m dia. Armco Pipe	13.657	1 x (3m x 3m). Portal Culvert	Major Culvert
16	1 x 0.6 m dia. Pipe Culvert	13.657	2 x 0.6 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
17	2 x 1,15 m dia. Pipe Culvert	12.755	2 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
18	2 x 0.85 m dia. Pipe Culvert	12.207	2 x 1.5 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
19	2 x 0.85 m dia. Pipe Culvert	12.072	2 x 1.2m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
20	1 x 0.85 m dia. Pipe Culvert	11.953	2 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
21	2 x 1.2 m dia. Armco Pipes	11.580	1 x (2.4m x 2.4m) Portal Culvert	Major Culvert
22	1 x 2.3 m dia. Armco Pipes	10.224	1 x (2.4m x 2.4m) Portal Culvert	Major Culvert
23	1 x 1.1 m dia. Concrete Pipe	9.850	2 x (1.5m x 1.5m) Portal Culvert	Lesser Culvert
24	1 x 2.2 m dia. Armco Pipe	9.020	2 x (2.4m x 2.4m) Portal Culvert	Major Culvert
25	2 x 5.75 m dia. Armco Pipe	7.838	3 x (4m x3m) Portal Culvert	Bridge
26	2 x 0.85 m dia. Pipe Culvert	7.075	2 x 1.5 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
27	1 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	2.950	2 x 1.2 m dia. Pipe Culvert	Lesser Culvert
28	3 x 0.6 m dia. Pipe Culvert	0.462	2 x (1.5m x 1.5m) Portal Culvert	Lesser Culvert

C4.1.4 MAINTENANCE WORKS

N/A

C4.2 DRAWINGS

The drawings that form part of the tender document are issued for tender purposes only.

The contractor will be supplied with one set of paper prints plus a CD containing all the construction documentation.

Only figured dimensions may be used and drawings may not be scaled unless so instructed by the engineer. The engineer will supply all figured dimensions omitted from the drawings.

The levels given on bridge drawings are subject to confirmation on site, and the contractor shall submit all levels to the engineer for confirmation before he commences any structural

construction work. It is the contractor's responsibility to check all clearances given on the drawings and to inform the engineer of any discrepancies.

C4.3 CAMP ESTABLISHMENT, POWER SUPPLY AND OTHER SERVICES

The contractor is to make his own arrangements concerning the supply of electrical power and all other services.

No direct payment will be made for the provision of electrical and other services. The cost thereof is deemed to be included in the rates and amounts tendered for the various items of work for which these services are required.

C4.4 CONSTRUCTION IN CONFINED AREAS

It will be necessary for the contractor to work within confined areas. In certain places the width of the fill material and pavement layers may decrease to zero and the working space may be confined. The method of construction in these confined areas largely depends on the contractor's constructional plant.

Regardless, measurement and payment will be in accordance with the specified cross-sections and dimensions only, irrespective of the method used for achieving these cross-sections and dimensions. It is deemed that the rates tendered in the Pricing Schedule include full compensation for all special equipment and construction methods and for all difficulties encountered when working in confined areas and narrow widths, and at or around obstructions. No extra payment will be made nor will any claim for additional payment be considered in such cases. (Refer to standard specification sub-clause C1.1.3.2(b)).

C4.5 MANAGEMENT OF THE ENVIRONMENT

The contractor will be responsible for construction according to an environmental management plan in terms of Section C1000 Scope of Works.

The contractor must take the utmost care to minimise the impact of his establishment and other construction activities on the environment and must adhere to the requirements as set out in Section C of the Scope of Works. Where the contractor fails to adhere to these requirements the specifications in Section C of the Scope of Works provide the methodology and cost liability of remedy.

C4.6 TRAFFIC

Traffic Counts Conducted

Based on information received from SANRAL, electronic loop traffic counts were conducted. The traffic analysis was done at a high level for the purpose of an in-situ, gravel to surfaced upgrade.

No intersection or level of service capacity analysis was conducted. Electronic traffic counts were conducted on **R68** and **P36/1** between 2021/06/03 and 2021/06/11.

The traffic counts were completed over 7 days, 24 hours per day. The data was classified into light traffic and heavy traffic. The heavy vehicles were classified as short, medium, and long.

The Traffic counts were initially initiated **at two (2) stations** as follows

- Station 1 @ P36/1 & P372 Intersection
- Station 2 @ R68 & P372 Intersection

The traffic counts are attached in **APPENDIX 3 – TRAFFIC DATA** for information purposes.

Exclusion for Traffic Surveys

The traffic surveys are excluded for loading computations for P372 and included in the report for information purposes only due to:

- The survey was conducted on adjacent roads **R68** and **P36/1**



Figure C4.6.1: Traffic Counting Stations 1 and 2

Traffic Analysis

The traffic count data and TRH 4 table 6 with 5% overloading was used to estimate the weighted E80/HV of 1.37 E80/HV. 1.37 E80/HV is indicative of the type of heavy vehicles utilising the road, which is mostly 2 and 3 axle short heavies as indicated in the traffic count data. This was visually confirmed on site.

The Average daily equivalent axles were determined using the average daily number of trucks as per the traffic counts with 1.37 E80 per truck. The average Daily equivalent axles are 34.

Vehicle	AADT/Direction	E80/HV	Total E80/Day
Light	N/A	0	
Minibus	N/A	0	
Bus	N/A	0	
Truck	25	1,37	34
		ADE Total	34

C4.7 SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT, TRAINING AND COMMUNITY LIAISON

The South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited is committed to the implementation of Government's policies and in turn expects the same from its contractors. Accordingly, it is a requirement of this project that tenderers are familiar with the specifications that relate to the transformation of the construction industry through the following:

- adherence to the policies of the Reconstruction and Development Programme and other similar Government initiatives,
- employment and/or creation of Targeted Enterprises,
- arrangement of generic skills, engineering skills and entrepreneurial skills training programmes for which provision has been made in the Pricing Schedule,
- construction using labour maximisation principles and,
- active participation with community-based structures.

Tenderers should note that liaison with Community Stakeholders via active participation with the Project Liaison Committee, as well as employment of people from within the community, are essential parts of the project. A provisional sum to cover costs incurred by members of the community in the liaison process has also been included in the Pricing Schedule.

Section D of the Scope of Works covers the contractor's requirements in detail, as well as defining the targets that comprise the Contract Participation Goal (CPG).

C4.8 CLIMATE

Temperature

The Isandlwana area currently has a climate that is moderate. The highest average maximum temperature occurs in December and January at 19°C while the lowest average maximum temperature is 9°C during the month of June and July. (Refer to figure C4.8.1).

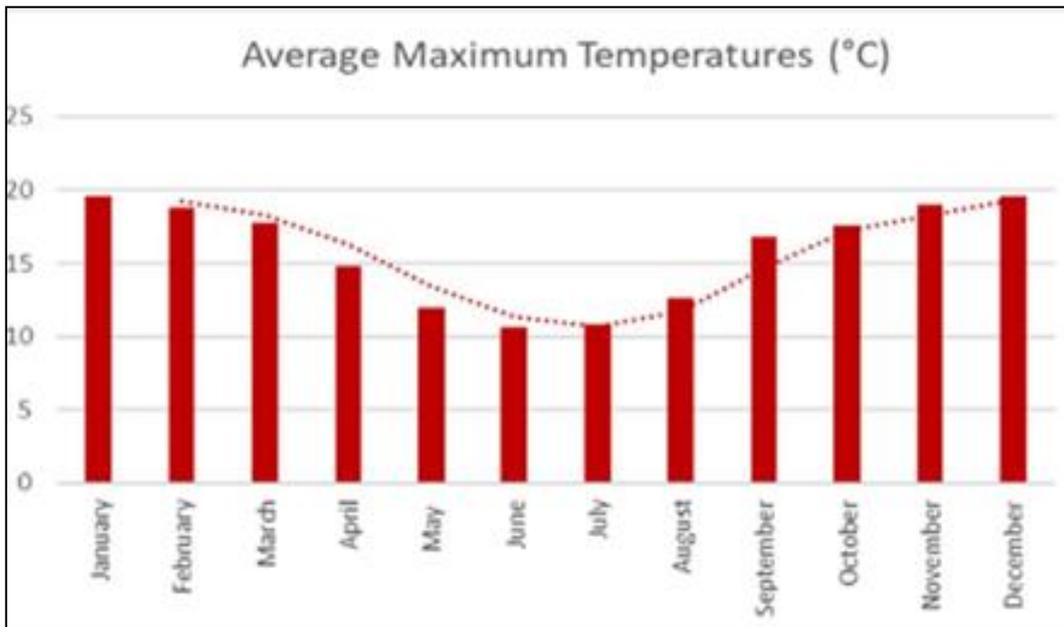


Figure C4.8.1: Average Maximum Temperature (Source: World Weather Online)

The highest average minimum temperature occurs in January and February at 8.8°C while the lowest average minimum temperature is -1.4°C during the months of July (Refer to figure C4.8.2). The minimum and average minimum temperatures are low. This needs to be taken into consideration in the tender stage in order for the contractor to plan accordingly.

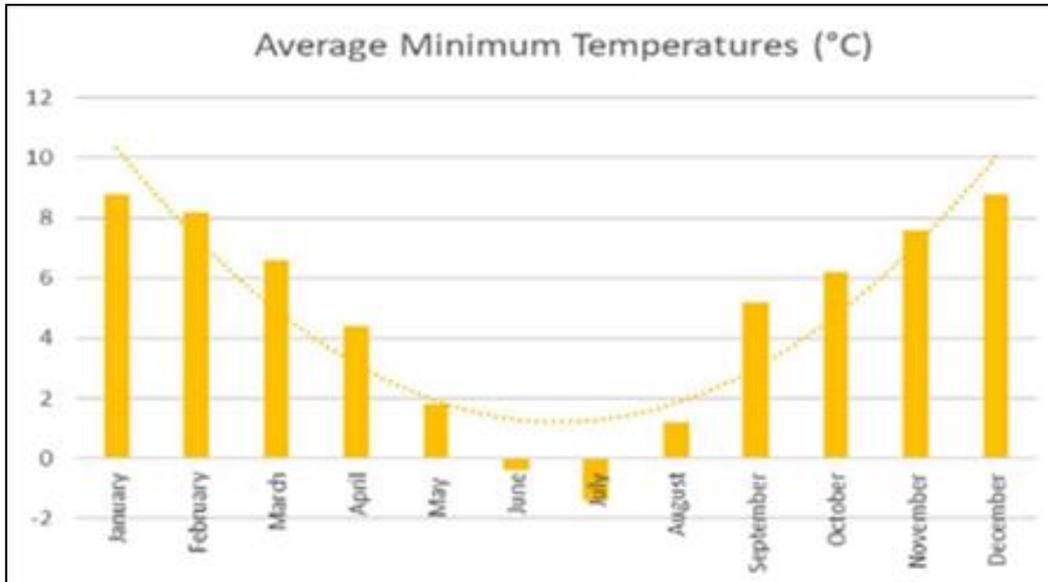


Figure C4.8.2: Average Night-time Temperature (Source: World Weather Online)

Table C4.8.1 below indicates the average monthly rainfall and average monthly temperatures at the Isandlwana Battlefield Heritage site to provide the Contractor with recent climatic conditions in the area of the site, to assess the element of risk to be accommodated in the programme of works

Table C4.8.1: Isandlwana Weather Averages

Month	Average Monthly Temperature	
	Minimum °C	Maximum °C
January	19	9
February	18	8
March	17	7
April	14	4
May	12	2
June	9	-1
July	9	-1
August	12	2
September	15	5
October	17	7
November	18	7
December	19	9

Rainfall

The rainfall data is obtained from the South African Weather Service, Station [0300454 3] – Ladysmith, within 100km radius from the Site.

Isandlwana receives on average 730mm of rain per year, with most rainfall occurring during the summer period. Figure 2.2.1 below shows the average monthly rainfall for

Isandlwana. The lowest rainfall (0mm) occurs in July with the highest occurring (180.1mm) in February.

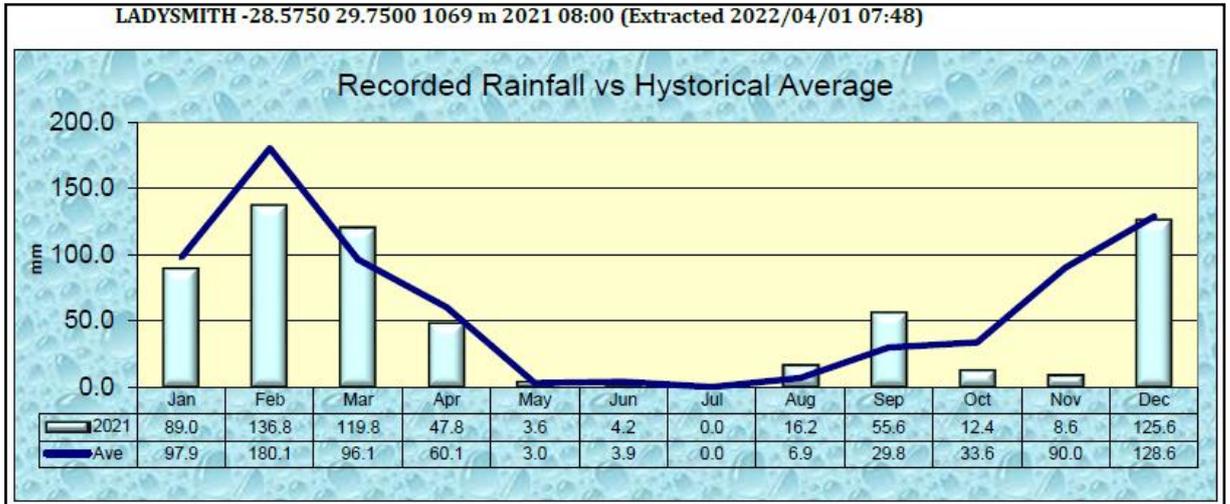


Figure C4.8.2: Average Monthly Rainfall (Source: South African Weather Service)

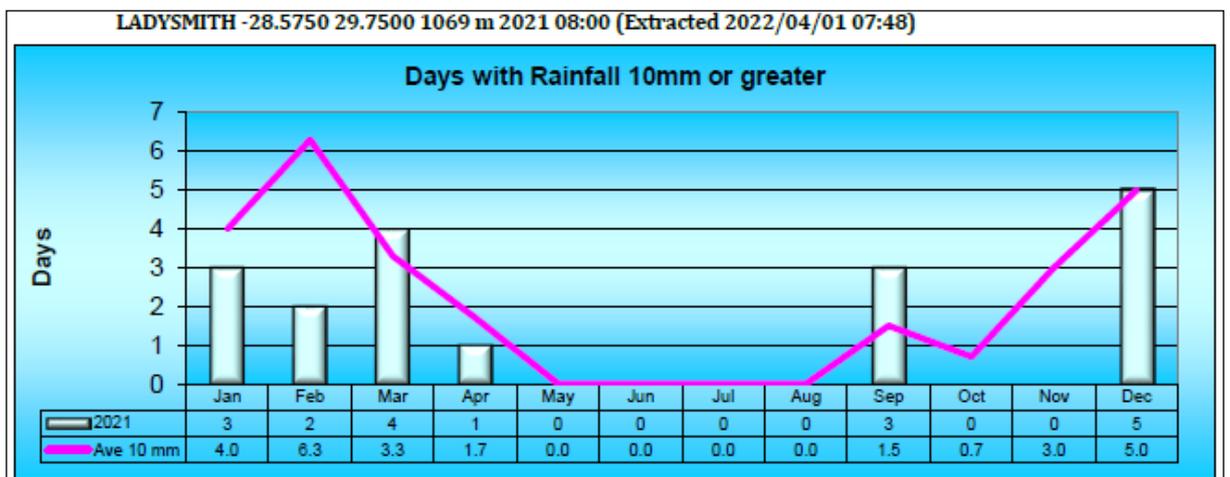


Figure C4.8.3: Days with Rainfall 10mm or Greater (Source: South African Weather Service)

The area falls within the Weinert's Macro-Climature "Wet" zone with a Weinert's N value of less than 2 which indicates that the weathering of the parent rock types will be through mechanical deterioration. The site has a Thornwaites Moisture Index of 0 - 20.

Table C4.8.2 below indicates the average monthly rainfall and average monthly temperatures at the Isandlwana Battlefield Heritage site to provide the Contractor with recent climatic conditions in the area of the site, to assess the element of risk to be accommodated in the programme of works. This information was obtained from South African Weather Services referred to under **APPENDIX 2 – WEATHER DATA**

Table C4.8.2: Isandlwana Rainfall Averages

Month	Average Monthly Rainfall (mm)	Average number of days with <=5mm	Average number of days between 5mm and 10mm	Average number of days with >= 10 mm	Highest 24hour rainfall (mm)
January	97.9	5.3	1.3	2.7	33.0
February	180.1	2.7	1.7	2.7	87.6

March	96.1	3.3	1.7	2.0	42.2
April	60.1	2.7	1.7	1.0	39.2
May	3.0	0.3	0.3	0.0	5.4
June	3.9	1.0	0.3	0.0	6.4
July	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
August	6.9	2.3	0.0	0.0	5.0
September	29.8	1.5	0.5	1.0	24.0
October	33.6	2.0	1.0	0.0	29.8
November	90.0	3.5	1.5	1.5	49.8
December	128.6	4.0	4.0	4.0	27.4

The ideal period for construction is between April and November where the least amount of rain is experienced.

C4.9 REQUIREMENTS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT AND REGULATIONS 2014

Refer to Section E of the Scope of Works for general requirements in terms of the OH&S requirements.

C4.10 SAFETY PROCEDURES

The tenderer is reminded of his responsibility to provide guards and fences for the protection of the public i.t.o. clause 4.8 of the conditions of contract.

C4.11 OTHER INFORMATION

Services identified on site during the initial site inspection included overhead electricity cables and water pipes.

C4.12 AGREEMENT TO OCCUPY SANRAL'S PROPERTY

In the event that SANRAL-owned land will be made available for the use of the contractor for his construction camps, offices, stores, workshops and/or testing facilities, the use of such land will not be treated as a lease but will form part of the contract. In this regard the contractor shall complete the prescribed agreement and comply with all the conditions thereof as if it is part of the contract.

The Employer's appointed service provider who administers and manages SANRAL owned land, will facilitate the process and the contractor shall liaise and co-operate with the service provider in this regard.

C4.13 APPENDICES

- Appendix 1: Locality Plan
- Appendix 2: Weather Data
- Appendix 3: Traffic Data
- Appendix 4: Geotechnical Information
- Appendix 5: Agreement to Occupy SANRAL's Property

Appendix 6:	Dispute Adjudication Agreement
Appendix 7:	Imported content
Appendix 8:	CPG Plan
Appendix 9:	SANRAL Project Liaison Committee Guidelines
Appendix 10:	Checklist for PLC and PLO
Appendix 11:	Proforma subcontract document

APPENDIX 1: LOCALITY PLAN

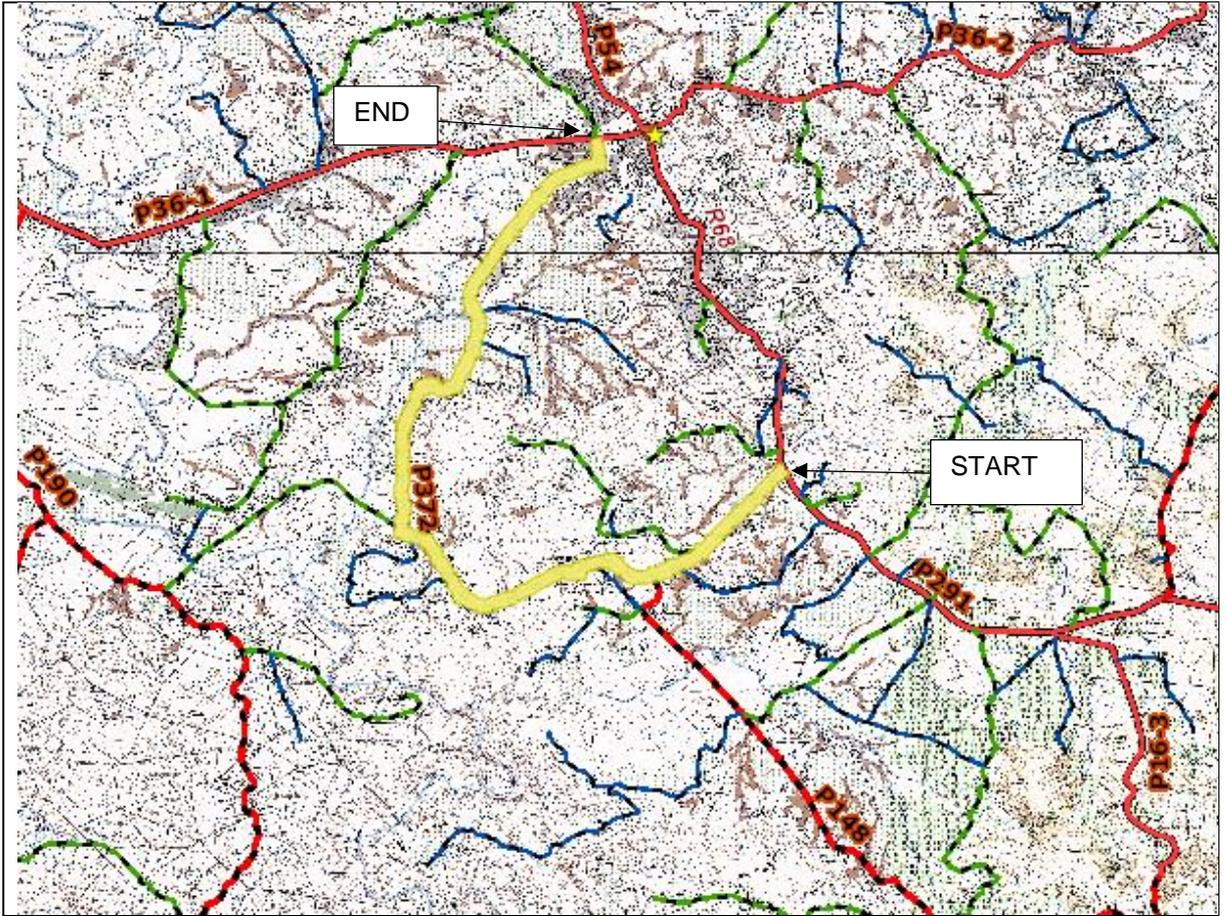


Figure C4.1.1.1 – Layout Map

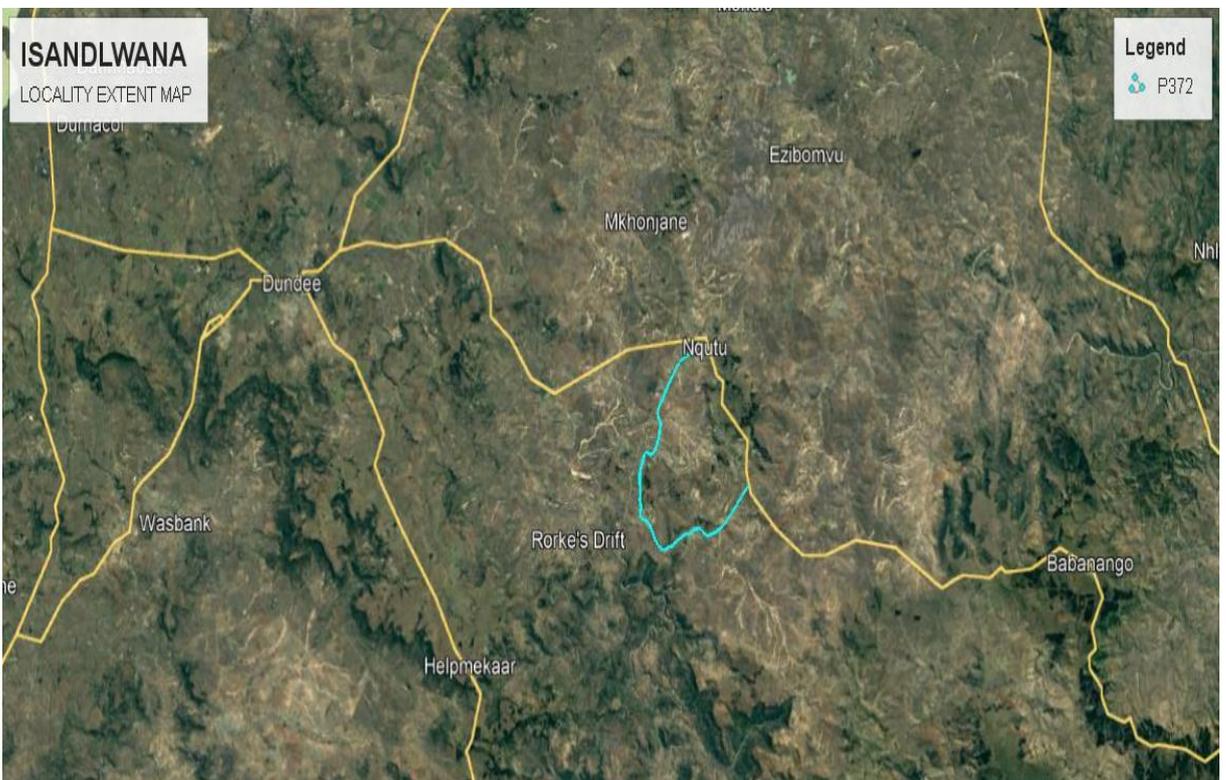


Figure C4.1.1.2 – Locality Extent Map

APPENDIX 2: WEATHER DATA

LEGEND

Maximum temperature of the day (in °C)

--- indicates that data is not yet available or was not requested

*** indicates that data is missing or not yet available in the current month

= indicates that the average for the month is unreliable due to missing daily values

Daily Maximum Temperature (C) Data for station [0300454 3] - LADYSMITH -28.5750 29.7500 1069 m 2021 08:00 (Extracted 2022/04/01 08:06)



Day	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP	OCT	NOV	DEC
1	23.2	27.6	28.1	31.7	19.3	15.3	22.7	27.5	22.2	21.4	33.2	***
2	17	18.3	29.3	32.5	21.9	16.8	22.6	21.9	30.8	27.2	27	***
3	23	25.1	32.2	22.9	23.8	16.5	27.2	25	32.1	15.8	28.9	***
4	26.8	27.7	32.7	28.7	26.3	17.3	20.9	24.7	22.9	19.3	33.7	***
5	27.7	31	29.8	27.4	25.9	18.1	19.6	26.3	28.4	25.9	34.7	27.3
6	24.8	31.3	33.6	25.2	25.5	20.1	21.4	26.7	20.3	24.3	35.4	29.8
7	27.6	31.4	34.3	28.1	25.7	22.1	22.6	22.2	10.7	25.7	36.8	28.1
8	33.8	32.5	34.5	30.7	26.3	21.7	22.5	27	20.7	28.3	23.2	31
9	32.2	30.8	34.5	28.5	25	20.2	23.2	28.1	22.4	31.7	23.8	31
10	28.6	31.4	34	30.9	25.8	19.7	24.5	18.1	27.8	22.2	31.4	33.2
11	29	30.6	36	33	26.3	21.2	25.3	23.4	31.5	27.4	30.4	32.4
12	28.9	29.8	31.9	31.8	26.9	23.9	23.3	25.6	33.8	32.3	34.5	30.9
13	28.8	31.2	34.7	33.7	27.1	26.2	19.5	10.1	30.9	35.1	33.2	24.6
14	28.7	31.8	34.7	33.3	29.5	25.9	14.8	8	31.6	36.4	27.6	28.1
15	31.6	29.9	33.3	31.2	27.4	22.8	19.1	18	32.7	35.8	35.3	32.2
16	34	21.7	31.1	20.6	27	24.7	17.7	22.1	13.8	33.9	38.4	25.9
17	29	26.3	21.9	21.5	22.4	25.3	19.9	26.3	18.5	15.3	36.3	16.2

18	29.4	33.5	27.9	28.3	23.3	19.6	17.8	26.7	18.2	20	34.9	16.1
19	33.7	31.7	32.3	29.6	26.6	21.5	23.4	23.6	29.5	21.1	21	21.3
20	26	33.7	30.2	22.9	27.7	21.8	21.9	18.9	27.3	28.7	***	25.4
21	33	34.2	27.8	28.2	23.5	22.8	20.8	25.2	22.1	31.6	***	27.1
22	35.9	19.1	26.8	25.6	20.4	23.5	17.3	13	21.2	26.7	***	30.7
23	36.7	27.1	27.6	21.1	22.3	22.8	14.5	24.3	29.5	32.7	***	25.8
24	31.3	27.5	23	25	24.1	24.4	14.5	27	31	15.5	***	24.1
25	19.2	27.1	17.8	26.7	25.8	24.4	17.6	24.6	32.9	17.2	***	27.7
26	32.5	23.7	25.7	30.8	25.5	25.2	21.5	22	33.6	23.9	***	32.3
27	32	27	28.3	30.9	27.4	20.7	22.1	30.9	34.3	22.5	***	27.1
28	20	27	22.9	27.3	27.1	26.3	22	15.5	28.1	23.6	***	29.8
29	28	***	27.4	29.3	21.9	27.9	24.4	14.9	18.8	29.2	***	31.8
30	28.7	***	25.8	19.9	19.3	26.2	20.9	26	19.3	28.2	***	29.6
31	31.2	***	32.4	***	19.3	***	24.4	28.7	***	27.6	***	20.9
Avg	28.8	28.6	29.8	27.9	24.7	22.2	21	22.7	25.9	26	31.6=	27.4=

LEGEND

Minimum temperature of the day (in °C)

--- indicates that data is not yet available or was not requested

*** indicates that data is missing or not yet available in the current month

= indicates that the average for the month is unreliable due to missing daily values

Daily Minimum Temperature (C) Data for station [0300454 3] - LADYSMITH -28.5750 29.7500 1069 m 2021 08:00 (Extracted 2022/04/01 08:06)

Day	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP	OCT	NOV	DEC
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

1	14.3	14.9	13.6	12.3	7.5	3.1	4.8	0.7	9.1	12.4	9.4	***
2	12.1	12.1	11.9	15.4	6.7	2.1	-0.4	0.8	5.4	13.2	13.8	***
3	15	14.8	12.9	15.2	5.6	5.8	-1.1	3.5	11	7.9	11.8	***
4	17.5	18.8	13.8	14.5	6.3	-0.8	3.8	5.5	10.6	7.4	10.6	***
5	18.9	19.1	14.8	11.7	6.6	-1.3	9.2	2.6	9.8	10.6	13.3	16.5
6	17.5	19	17.6	12.5	7.1	-0.8	7.9	2.6	9.5	13.5	16.8	16.6
7	16.3	17	17.6	13.8	10.8	0.5	2.7	5.2	7.7	14	15.1	14
8	15.7	17.3	17.3	11.1	9.9	3.1	0.8	0	7.5	11.6	15.6	15
9	18.8	17.9	19.4	11.8	6.4	5.1	8.5	8.8	6.4	7.9	13.7	14.6
10	18.7	19.2	16.2	12.2	5.4	6.4	2.7	6.1	5.4	9.5	10.4	15.6
11	17.9	18.6	12.3	12.4	5.4	1.9	-0.9	-0.3	7.8	5.3	12.2	18.8
12	19.2	16.6	14.5	12.2	3.9	0.7	0.8	10.2	8.5	7.3	15.8	17.9
13	19.1	18.3	15.2	12.3	5.8	2.2	5.9	5.1	5.9	9.8	15.4	17.4
14	19	18.6	14.1	12.9	3.4	2.3	-1	4.8	7.1	14.5	16	14.6
15	19.3	17.7	11.4	11.5	7.5	2.7	-4.7	6	12.4	9.5	15	15.8
16	17.9	14.6	14.8	10.8	10	5.3	-2.4	5	9.4	11.9	15.5	11.4
17	16.9	13.7	16.7	9.5	11.6	3.1	-3.6	5.1	5.3	9.3	14.9	10.8
18	16.4	13.4	14.5	6.6	6.6	7.6	-3.6	7.2	6.7	7.9	11.4	9.8
19	17.6	15.4	13.2	7.2	2.4	5.2	-3.6	7	3.6	8.3	11	11.1
20	18.4	16.4	15.8	11	5.6	1.7	-2.4	7.9	13.4	6.7	***	14.1
21	18.1	15.9	14.3	9.9	12.5	0	1.5	8.7	8.5	9.2	***	14.9
22	17.4	15.4	15.5	10.6	9.8	0.3	-0.9	9.4	7.4	14.1	***	13.9
23	15.9	16.7	15.1	8.5	6.7	0.6	-4.4	9.5	5.1	8.8	***	14.6
24	16	18.1	14.8	5.7	3	1.1	-5.6	9.1	7.9	9.4	***	14.1
25	14.6	15	13.1	7.2	2.1	1.6	-4.2	4.7	9.9	9.3	***	15.1
26	15.8	16.1	12.4	7.4	3.6	4.8	-4.6	7.9	11.7	8.5	***	14.7
27	18.6	15.6	12.1	6.8	3	-1.8	1.1	11	10.7	14.3	***	15.9
28	14.9	15.7	12	9.4	7.1	5.3	0	1.3	14.1	14.4	***	13.1
29	17.2	***	12.1	9.6	7.1	12.8	-0.5	-3.1	12.4	14.9	***	15.8
30	19.3	***	13.1	10.7	2.6	12.3	3.7	-2	10.8	8.1	***	17
31	18.8	***	12.8	***	8.6	***	1.3	3	***	5.6	***	15.4

South African Weather Service
Rainfall return periods

Contact person: Dhirusha Raghunandan
Tel Number: 032 4363820
E-Mail: 032 4363820

Issued by Durban Weather Office
ATNS Building
King Shaka International Airport 4339



RAINFALL ANALYSIS FOR: LADYSMITH : PERIOD 2019 to 2021
Date: 2022/04/01

Data for the Average Calculation is not used if:
There are more than five consecutive days of accumulation
The data for certain days in the month is not available
The accumulation period occurred at the end of the month

Data for the Frequency calculation is not used if:
The data for certain days in the month is not available
The accumulation period occurred at the end of the month

Month	Average Monthly Rainfall (mm)	Standard Deviation	Average Number of Rain Days per Month	Number of Months	Average number of days of Rain						Maximum 24-hour Rainfall (mm)	Date of Maximum 24-hour Rainfall
					1 - 5 mm	5.1 - 10mm	10.1 - 20mm	20.1 - 50mm	50.1 - 100 mm	> 100 mm		
JAN	97.9	28.3	15.3	3.0	5.3	1.3	2.7	1.3	0.0	0.0	33.0	2019/01/15
FEB	180.1	45.2	15.3	3.0	2.7	1.7	2.7	3.3	0.3	0.0	87.6	2021/02/08
MAR	96.1	49.6	12.0	3.0	3.3	1.7	2.0	1.3	0.0	0.0	42.2	2019/03/08
APR	60.1	10.2	10.0	3.0	2.7	1.7	1.0	0.7	0.0	0.0	39.2	2020/04/14
MAY	3.0	2.2	0.7	3.0	0.3	0.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	5.4	2019/05/28
JUN	3.9	3.1	1.3	3.0	1.0	0.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	6.4	2020/06/17
JUL	0.0	0.0	0.0	3.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0000/00/00
AUG	6.9	6.6	3.3	3.0	2.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	5.0	2021/08/14
SEP	29.8	25.8	4.5	2.0	1.5	0.5	1.0	0.5	0.0	0.0	24.0	2021/09/30
OCT	33.6	35.0	6.0	3.0	2.0	1.0	0.0	0.7	0.0	0.0	29.8	2020/10/26
NOV	90.0	15.0	11.0	2.0	3.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	0.0	0.0	49.8	2020/11/09
DEC	128.6	0.0	21.0	1.0	4.0	4.0	4.0	1.0	0.0	0.0	27.4	2020/12/12
YR	730.0		8.4	32	29	14	15	10	0	0		

Limitation
The User shall not at any time, disclose or divulge the Specified Data to any person whomsoever except on a need to know basis to those of its employees and officers who require knowledge thereof. The User will treat the Information as private and confidential to SAWS and will take all reasonable precautions to protect the Information from unauthorised use, reproduction or distribution. The South African Weather Service (SAWS) does not give any representation or warranty that the Specified Data contains no errors, is complete or up to date or will not infringe any third party intellectual property rights. The User assumes the sole risk of

RE: Rainfall "Down Time" report

Date: 2022/04/01

RAINFALL ANALYSIS FOR: LADYSMITH : PERIOD 2019 to 2021

Table A is a summary of the year under review compared to the average rainfall.

Days to Claim (last column) is calculated using the industry formula, as contained in Annexure A, using the recorded data and averages contained in this document.

Table B and the accompanying graphs indicate the actual rainfall for the requested station.

Table A : Recorded rainfall compared to historical averages.

	2021					Ave data 2019 to 2021					Difference					Days to Claim	
	Total	NO. OF DAYS WITH R (mm) >=				Total	NO. OF DAYS WITH R (mm) >=				Total	NO. OF DAYS WITH R (mm) >=					Formula Annex A
		1	5	10	20		1	5	10	20		1	5	10	20		
Jan	89.0	11	6	3	1	97.9	10.6	5.3	4.0	1.3	-9	0.4	0.7	-1.0	-0.3	0	
Feb	136.8	10	6	2	1	180.1	10.7	8.0	6.3	3.6	-43	-0.7	-2.0	-4.3	-2.6	0	
Mar	119.8	8	5	4	3	96.1	8.3	5.0	3.3	1.3	24	-0.3	0.0	0.7	1.7	2	
Apr	47.8	6	5	1	0	60.1	6.1	3.4	1.7	0.7	-12	-0.1	1.6	-0.7	-0.7	0	
May	3.6	1	0	0	0	3.0	0.6	0.3	0.0	0.0	1	0.4	-0.3	0.0	0.0	0	
Jun	4.2	2	0	0	0	3.9	1.3	0.3	0.0	0.0	0	0.7	-0.3	0.0	0.0	0	
Jul	0.0	0	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	
Aug	16.2	4	1	0	0	6.9	2.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	9	1.7	1.0	0.0	0.0	0	
Sep	55.6	6	4	3	1	29.8	3.5	2.0	1.5	0.5	26	2.5	2.0	1.5	0.5	3	
Oct	12.4	2	1	0	0	33.6	3.7	1.7	0.7	0.7	-21	-1.7	-0.7	-0.7	-0.7	0	
Nov	8.6	4	0	0	0	90.0	8.0	4.5	3.0	1.5	-81	-4.0	-4.5	-3.0	-1.5	0	
Dec	125.6	15	10	5	2	128.6	13.0	9.0	5.0	1.0	-3	2.0	1.0	0.0	1.0	0	
Total	620	69	38	18	8	730	68	40	26	11	-110	1	-2	-8	-3	5	

Table B : Actual recorded rainfall.

* Data not required, missing or removed

LADYSMITH -28.5750 29.7500 1069 m 2021 08:00 (Extracted 2022/04/01 07:48)

Day	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP	OCT	NOV	DEC
1	17.4	2.6				1.0						***
2	7.4	10.8				3.2						***
3		7.0	2.2									***
4		2.8										***
5	1.4										0.4	
6	4.6			1.8					10.2			
7				11.0					1.4		1.2	
8	0.6	87.6							0.2		1.2	11.8
9	0.2	0.2									0.2	5.4
10												
11											4.0	
12	14.6										0.2	6.2
13	0.2							4.0				7.0
14	6.2	6.6		6.0				5.0				4.8
15	0.2	0.6		0.4					0.4			1.8
16	1.0		23.2							0.6		23.6
17	1.2		1.8							0.6	1.2	
18			8.8								0.2	
19			0.2	0.4					6.8		***	6.8
20			34.2	0.2					1.0		***	11.2
21		1.4									***	1.0
22		3.8		9.8				0.8			***	7.8
23		7.0						3.6			***	0.2
24	5.8	5.2	15.2					0.2		0.2	***	12.2
25	0.8	0.4	31.2							9.8	***	1.2
26		0.8	0.4					0.6			***	0.8
27	26.2		2.6								***	20.4
28	1.0							2.0		1.0	***	
29	0.2	***		9.8					11.6	0.2	***	
30		***		8.4					24.0		***	0.8
31		***		***	3.6	***			***		***	2.6
Tot	89.0	136.8	119.8	47.8	3.6	4.2	0.0	16.2	55.6	12.4	8.6	125.6

APPENDIX 3: TRAFFIC DATA

V10661		REPORT		P372 Station 10
TRAFFIC HIGHLIGHTS OF SITE V10661				
1.1	Site Identifier			V10661
1.2	Site Name			P372 Station 10
1.3	Site Description			Segment 10
1.4	Road Description	Route : Road : P372 Section : Distance : 0.0km		
1.5	GPS Position			
1.6	Number of Lanes			2
1.7	Station Type			Secondary
1.8	Requested Period	2021/06/03 - 2021/06/11		
1.9	Length of record requested (hours)	216		
1.10	Actual First & Last Dates	2021/06/03 - 2021/06/11		
1.11	Actual available good data (hours)	187		
1.12	Percentage good data available for requested period	86.7		
		To P291	To P36-1	Total
2.1a	Total number of vehicles (counted)	4023	4020	8043
2.1b	Total number of vehicles (projected for period)	4640	4636	9276
2.2	Average daily traffic (ADT)	516	515	1031
2.3	Average daily truck traffic (ADTT)	25	23	48
2.4	Percentage of trucks	4.8	4.6	4.7
2.5	Truck split % (short:medium:long)	79 : 17 : 4	83 : 14 : 3	82 : 15 : 3
2.6	Percentage of night traffic (20:00 - 06:00)	7.6	8.0	7.8
3.1	Speed limit (km/hr)			60
3.2	Average speed (km/hr)	30.9	26.2	28.6
3.3	Average speed - light vehicles (km/hr)	30.6	26.0	28.3
3.4	Average speed - heavy vehicles (km/hr)	36.2	30.0	33.2
3.5	Average night speed (km/hr)	30.6	25.6	28.1
3.6	15th centile speed (km/hr)	18.8	15.8	16.8
3.7	85th centile speed (km/hr)	44.0	37.0	41.0
3.8	Percentage vehicles in excess of speed limit	1.3	0.6	0.9
4.1	Percentage vehicles in flows over 600 vehicles/hr	0.0	0.0	0.0
4.2	Highest volume on the road (vehicles/hr)	2021/06/07 16:00:00		111
4.3	Highest volume in the East (vehs/hr)	2021/06/04 14:00:00		67
4.4	Highest volume in the West (vehs/hr)	2021/06/04 18:00:00		66
4.5	Highest volume in a lane (vehicles/hr)	2021/06/04 14:00:00		67
4.6	15th highest volume on the road (vehicles/hr)	2021/06/10 08:00:00		93
4.7	15th highest volume in the East direction (vehs/hr)	2021/06/05 18:00:00		47
4.8	15th highest volume in the West direction (vehs/hr)	2021/06/07 08:00:00		51
4.9	30th highest volume on the road (vehicles/hr)	2021/06/09 17:00:00		83
4.10	30th highest volume in the East direction (vehs/hr)	2021/06/11 10:00:00		40
4.11	30th highest volume in the West direction (vehs/hr)	2021/06/10 15:00:00		44
5.1	Percentage of vehicles less than 2s behind vehicle ahead			
6.1	Total number of heavy vehicles (projected for period)	221	211	432
6.2	Estimated average number of axles per truck	2.7	2.6	2.6
6.3	Estimated truck mass (Ton/truck)	15.5	14.6	15.1
6.4	Estimated average E80/truck	1.0	0.9	0.9
6.5	Estimated daily E80 on the road			45
6.6	Estimated daily E80 in the East direction			24
6.7	Estimated daily E80 in the West direction			21
6.8	Estimated daily E80 in the worst East lane			24
6.9	Estimated daily E80 in the worst West lane			21
6.10	ASSUMPTION on Axles/Truck (Short:Medium:Long)	(2.0 : 5.0 : 7.0)		
6.11	ASSUMPTION on Mass/Truck (Short:Medium:Long)	(10.9 : 31.5 : 39.8)		
6.12	ASSUMPTION on E80s/Truck (Short:Medium:Long)	(0.6 : 2.5 : 2.1)		

Figure C4.6.3 – Traffic Highlights

L/H/Volume Report

Date : 2021/06/03
Site : V10661 - P372 Station 10
Description : Segment 10

Date	Time	Dur.	Lane 1			Lane 2			To P291			To P36-1			P372		
			Light	Hvy	Total	Light	Hvy	Total	Light	Hvy	Total	Light	Hvy	Total	Light	Hvy	Total
210603	00:00	07:23	77	3	80	136	1	137	77	3	80	136	1	137	213	4	217
210604	00:00	24:00	532	32	564	538	28	566	532	32	564	538	28	566	1070	60	1130
210605	00:00	24:00	538	14	552	544	10	554	538	14	552	544	10	554	1082	24	1106
210606	00:00	24:00	453	14	467	413	14	427	453	14	467	413	14	427	866	28	894
210607	00:00	24:00	528	29	557	546	32	578	528	29	557	546	32	578	1074	61	1135
210608	00:00	24:00	497	31	528	508	26	534	497	31	528	508	26	534	1005	57	1062
210609	00:00	24:00	496	23	519	495	27	522	496	23	519	495	27	522	991	50	1041
210610	00:00	24:00	479	33	512	488	33	521	479	33	512	488	33	521	967	66	1033
210611	00:00	11:54	231	13	244	169	12	181	231	13	244	169	12	181	400	25	425
			3831	192	4023	3837	183	4020	3831	192	4023	3837	183	4020	7668	375	8043

Figure C4.6.4 Light/Heavy Vehicles Volume Report

APPENDIX 4: GEOTECHNICAL INFORMATION

SOILCO MATERIALS INVESTIGATIONS (PTY) LTD

CIVIL ENGINEERING MATERIALS TESTING LABORATORY

Reg. No. : 1965/09585/07
 25 WESTMEAD ROAD - WESTMEAD P.O.BOX 15318 WESTMEAD 3608 KWAZULU - NATAL
 TELEPHONE : 031 7004325 TELEFAX : 031 7001909 email : soilslab@mweb.co.za

Client	Madan Singh & Associates	
Project	P372 Isandlwana Road Upgrade	
Job Card No.	228881	
Date of Test	2021-05-31	
Field Technician	S.M.	
Position	RHS	
Test Pit Number	TP 1	
Chainage	CH 0+130	
Co - Ordinates	S 28°19'00.41" E 30°43'02.61"	

FIELD SOIL SURVEY TEST REPORT

Water Table	Soil Legend	Depth (mm)	DESCRIPTION
			Moisture ; Colour ; Consistency ; Structure ; Soil Type ; Origin; Sampling ; Laboratory Testing : - (I = Indicator ; M = MOD AASHTO ; C = CBR)
		400	Slightly moist, dark greyish brown, dense, uniform, silty CLAY and ferricrete pebbles. 8xLarge
		1000	Moist, dark reddish brown, medium dense, intact, silty CLAY and ferricrete pebbles, residual. 2xLarge

The above test report is pertinent only to the area tested. This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the prior consent of Soilco Materials Investigations (Pty) Ltd

Remarks : Type of Excavation Hand TLB Excavator
 Excavation Stopped Refusal
 Struggling to Excavate
 Photo No : 0041 - 0047

For Soilco : _____ (Technical Signatory).

Figure 4.1.1 – Test Pit No. 1 – Field Survey and Profile

SOILCO MATERIALS INVESTIGATIONS (PTY) LTD

CIVIL ENGINEERING MATERIALS TESTING LABORATORY

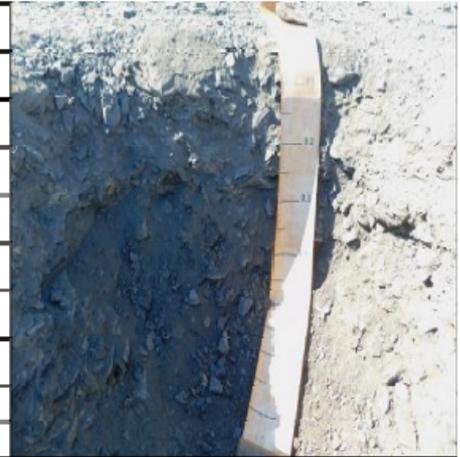


Reg. No. : 1965/09585/07

25 WESTMEAD ROAD - WESTMEAD P.O.BOX 15318 WESTMEAD 3608 KWAZULU - NATAL

TELEPHONE : 031 7004325 TELEFAX : 031 7001909 email : soilslab@mweb.co.za

Client	Madan Singh & Associates
Project	P372 Isandlwana Road Upgrade
Job Card No.	228881
Date of Test	2021-05-31
Field Technician	S.M.
Position	LHS
Test Pit Number	TP 2
Chainage	CH 6+790
Co - Ordinates	S 28°20'43.27"
	E 30°40'03.03"



FIELD SOIL SURVEY TEST REPORT

Water Table	Soil Legend	Depth (mm)	DESCRIPTION
			Moisture ; Colour ; Consistency ; Structure ; Soil Type ; Origin; Sampling ; Laboratory Testing : - (I = Indicator ; M = MOD AASHTO ; C = CBR)
			Slightly moist, dark brown + dark grey, dense, uniform, crushed rock SHALE.
		500	

10xLarge

The above test report is pertinent only to the area tested. This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the prior consent of Soilco Materials Investigations (Pty) Ltd

Remarks :

Type of Excavation	Hand <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	TLB <input type="checkbox"/>	Excavator <input type="checkbox"/>
Excavation Stopped	<input type="checkbox"/>	Refusal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Struggling to Excavate	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

Photo No : 003-0040

Test Pit refused due to Bed Rock Shale present.

For Soilco : _____ (Technical Signatory).

Figure 4.1.2 – Test Pit No. 2 – Field Survey and Profile

SOILCO MATERIALS INVESTIGATIONS (PTY) LTD

CIVIL ENGINEERING MATERIALS TESTING LABORATORY



Reg. No. : 1965/09585/07

25 WESTMEAD ROAD - WESTMEAD P.O.BOX 15318 WESTMEAD 3608 KWAZULU - NATAL

TELEPHONE : 031 7004325 TELEFAX : 031 7001909 email : soilslab@mweb.co.za

Client	Madan Singh & Associates	
Project	P372 Isandlwana Road Upgrade	
Job Card No.	228881	
Date of Test	2021-05-31	
Field Technician	S.M.	
Position	RHS	
Test Pit Number	TP 3	
Chainage	CH 8+910	
Co - Ordinates	S 28°20'53.59"	
	E 30°38'57.38"	

FIELD SOIL SURVEY TEST REPORT

Water Table	Soil Legend	Depth (mm)	DESCRIPTION
			Moisture ; Colour ; Consistency ; Structure ; Soil Type ; Origin; Sampling ; Laboratory Testing : - (I = Indicator ; M = MOD AASHTO ; C = CBR)
		1000	Slightly moist, dark yellowish orange brown, dense , uniform, clayey weathered SANDSTONE + weathered TILLITE, residual.

The above test report is pertinent only to the area tested. This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the prior consent of Soilco Materials Investigations (Pty) Ltd

Remarks :

Type of Excavation

Hand

TLB

Excavator

Excavation Stopped

Refusal

Struggling to Excavate

Photo No : 0048 - 0054

For Soilco : _____ (Technical Signatory).

Figure 4.1.3 – Test Pit No. 3 – Field Survey and Profile

SOILCO MATERIALS INVESTIGATIONS (PTY) LTD

CIVIL ENGINEERING MATERIALS TESTING LABORATORY



Reg. No. : 1965/09585/07

25 WESTMEAD ROAD - WESTMEAD P.O.BOX 15318 WESTMEAD 3608 KWAZULU - NATAL

TELEPHONE : 031 7004325 TELEFAX : 031 7001909 email : soilslab@mweb.co.za

Client	Madan Singh & Associates	
Project	P372 Isandlwana Road Upgrade	
Job Card No.	228881	
Date of Test	2021-05-31	
Field Technician	S.M.	
Position	LHS	
Test Pit Number	TP 4	
Chainage	CH 14+250	
Co - Ordinates	S 28°20'19.47" E 30°36'41.21"	

FIELD SOIL SURVEY TEST REPORT

Water Table	Soil Legend	Depth (mm)	DESCRIPTION
			Moisture ; Colour ; Consistency ; Structure ; Soil Type ; Origin; Sampling ; Laboratory Testing : - (I = Indicator ; M = MOD AASHTO ; C = CBR)
		150	Slightly moist, light yellowish brown, dense, uniform, silty SAND with shale. 7xLarge
		400	Slightly moist, light yellowish brown, dense, uniform, slightly clayey, silty SAND. 2xLarge
		1000	Slightly moist, dark brown, medium dense, intact, silty CLAY, residual. 2xLarge

The above test report is pertinent only to the area tested. This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the prior consent of Soilco Materials Investigations (Pty) Ltd

Remarks :	Type of Excavation	Hand <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	TLB <input type="checkbox"/>	Excavator <input type="checkbox"/>
	Excavation Stopped	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Refusal <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Struggling to Excavate	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
	Photo No : 0055-0060			

For Soilco : _____ (Technical Signatory).

Figure 4.1.4 – Test Pit No. 4 – Field Survey and Profile

SOILCO MATERIALS INVESTIGATIONS (PTY) LTD

CIVIL ENGINEERING MATERIALS TESTING LABORATORY



Reg. No. : 1965/09585/07

25 WESTMEAD ROAD - WESTMEAD P.O.BOX 15318 WESTMEAD 3608 KWAZULU - NATAL

TELEPHONE : 031 7004325 TELEFAX : 031 7001909 email : soilslab@mweb.co.za

Client	Madan Singh & Associates	
Project	P372 Isandlwana Road Upgrade	
Job Card No.	228881	
Date of Test	2021-05-31	
Field Technician	S.M.	
Position	RHS	
Test Pit Number	TP 5	
Chainage	CH 27+200	
Co - Ordinates	S 28°14'43.45"	
	E 30°38'02.92"	

FIELD SOIL SURVEY TEST REPORT

Water Table	Soil Legend	Depth (mm)	DESCRIPTION
			Moisture ; Colour ; Consistency ; Structure ; Soil Type ; Origin; Sampling ; Laboratory Testing : - (I = Indicator ; M = MOD AASHTO ; C = CBR)
.....	Slightly moist, dark red, medium dense, uniform, berea red SAND, residual.
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
		1000	

The above test report is pertinent only to the area tested. This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the prior consent of Soilco Materials Investigations (Pty) Ltd

Remarks :

Type of Excavation	Hand <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	TLB <input type="checkbox"/>	Excavator <input type="checkbox"/>
Excavation Stopped	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Refusal <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Struggling to Excavate	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

Photo No : 0061-0067

For Soilco : _____ (Technical Signatory).

Figure 4.1.5 – Test Pit No. 5 – Field Survey and Profile

SOILCO MATERIALS INVESTIGATIONS (PTY) LTD



CIVIL ENGINEERING MATERIALS TESTING LABORATORY

Reg. No. : 1965 / 009585 / 07

25 WESTMEAD ROAD - WESTMEAD P.O.BOX 15318 WESTMEAD 3608 KWAZULU - NATAL

TELEPHONE : 031 7004325 TELEFAX : 031 7001909 email : soilslab@mweb.co.za



a SANAS Accredited Testing Laboratory, No. T0213

T0213

Customer : Madan Singh & Associates

Job Card No. : 228881

Project : P372 - Isandlwana Road Upgrade

Date Received : 2021-05-31

Date Tested : 2021-06-04 to 2021-06-09

Sampling Process : Sampled By - Siyabonga Masinga - TMH 5

Date Reported : 2021-06-09

MATERIALS TEST REPORT

Laboratory Number	1777	1778	1779	1780
Field Number	TP1	TP1	TP2	TP3
Position in field	CH 0 + 130 RHS	CH 0 + 130 RHS	CH 6 + 790 LHS	CH 8 + 910 RHS
Depth (mm)	0 - 400	400 - 1000	0 - 500	0 - 1000
Sample Description	Dk.Gr.Br.Silty Clay + Ferricrete Pebbles	Dk.R.Br.Silty Clay + Ferricrete Pebbles	Dk.Br.Dk.Gr.Shale. C/Rock	Dk.Y.O.Br.Clayey Wth Sandstone + Wth Tillite
Stabilising Agent	Natural	Natural	Natural	Natural

Sieve Analysis (Wet Preparation) SANS 3001 - GR 1

Sieve Size (mm)	Percentage Passing	1777	1778	1779	1780
100.0					
75.0					
63.0					
50.0					
37.5					
28.0				100	
20.0				95	100
14.0		100	100	78	88
5.0		91	86	51	62
2.0		62	64	33	41
0.425		37	50	18	26
0.075		25	38	11	15
Grading Modulus	SANS 3001 - PR 5	1.76	1.49	2.38	2.19

Mechanical Analysis - SANS 3001 - GR 1

Coarse Sand (%)	40	22	45	37
Coarse - Fine Sand (%)	4	4	8	6
Medium - Fine Sand (%)	6	5	8	9
Fine - Fine Sand (%)	9	9	8	12
Silt and Clay (%)	41	59	32	36

Atterberg Limits - SANS 3001 - GR 10 - GR 12

Liquid Limit (%)	27	30	25	24
Plasticity Index (%)	13	13	11	12
Linear Shrinkage (%)	6.3	6.5	5.6	5.5
Classification Group Index	A-2-6(0)	A-6(1)	A-2-6(0)	A-2-6(0)
COLTO Classification #	Less than G9	Less than G9	G9	G9
TRH 14 Classification (1985) #	Less than G10	Less than G10	G9	G9

Maximum Dry Density and Optimum Moisture Content - SANS 3001 - GR 30

Optimum Moisture Content (%)	13.1	14.0	9.9	10.3
Maximum Dry Density (kg/m ³)	1964	1913	2071	1980

California Bearing Ratio - SANS 3001 - GR 40

CBR @ 100 % Compaction	17	27	8	9
CBR @ 98 % Compaction	8	16	8	9
CBR @ 95 % Compaction	3	7	7	9
CBR @ 93 % Compaction	2	4	7	9
CBR @ 90 % Compaction	1	2	6	9
Swell @ 100 % Compaction	0.09	0.12	0.19	0.19

The Colto / TRH 14 Classifications are only based on the above results. Further testing may be required.

Remarks : -

For Soilco :-

2002-10-04

(Technical Signatory)

Revision 1

Table SP 33

Figure 4.1.6 – Test 1 – 3 – Test Results

SOILCO MATERIALS INVESTIGATIONS (PTY) LTD



CIVIL ENGINEERING MATERIALS TESTING LABORATORY

Reg. No. : 1965 / 009585 / 07

26 WESTMEAD ROAD WESTMEAD P.O.BOX 16318 WESTMEAD 3608 KWAZULU - NATAL

TELEPHONE : 031 7004325 TELEFAX : 031 7001909 email : soilslab@mweb.co.za



a SANAS Accredited Testing Laboratory, No. T0213

T0213

Customer : Madan Singh & Associates

Job Card No. : 228881

Project : P372 - Isandlwana Road Upgrade

Date Received : 2021-05-31

Date Tested : 2021-06-04 to 2021-06-09

Sampling Process : Sampled By - Siyabonga Masinga - TMH 5

Date Reported : 2021-06-09

MATERIALS TEST REPORT

Laboratory Number	1781	1782	1783	1784
Field Number	TP4	TP4	TP4	TP5
Position in field	CH 14 + 250 LHS	CH 14 + 250 LHS	CH 14 + 250 LHS	CH 27 + 200 RHS
Depth (mm)	0 - 150	150 - 400	400 - 1000	0 - 1000
Sample Description	Lt.Y.Br.Silty Sand With Shale	Lt.Y.Br.Slightly Clayey Silty Sand	Dk.Br.Silty Clay	Dk.R.Berea Red Sand
Stabilising Agent	Natural	Natural	Natural	Natural

Sieve Analysis (Wet Preparation) SANS 3001 - GR 1

100.0 mm	Percentage Passing				
75.0 mm					
63.0 mm					
50.0 mm					
37.5 mm					
28.0 mm					
20.0 mm		100	100		
14.0 mm		86	88	100	100
5.0 mm		65	69	99	80
2.0 mm		46	41	82	68
0.425 mm	23	25	34	56	
0.075 mm	9	12	17	38	
Grading Modulus	SANS 3001 - PR 5	2.22	2.22	1.67	1.37

Mechanical Analysis - SANS 3001 - GR 1

Coarse Sand (%)	49	38	59	17
Coarse - Fine Sand (%)	10	9	6	9
Medium - Fine Sand (%)	12	12	6	9
Fine - Fine Sand (%)	11	12	8	9
Silt and Clay (%)	19	29	21	56

Atterberg Limits - SANS 3001 - GR 10 - GR 12

Liquid Limit (%)	CBD	19	23	32
Plasticity Index (%)	NP	4	11	14
Linear Shrinkage (%)	0.0	2.5	5.1	6.7
Classification Group Index	A-1-a(0)	A-1-9(0)	A-2-6(0)	A-6(1)
COLTO Classification #	Less than G9	G9	Less than G9	G9
TRH 14 Classification (1985) #	G10	G9	Less than G10	G9

Maximum Dry Density and Optimum Moisture Content - SANS 3001 - GR 30

Optimum Moisture Content (%)	6.0	9.6	9.6	17.9
Maximum Dry Density (kg/m ³)	2035	2062	1896	1743

California Bearing Ratio - SANS 3001 - GR 40

CBR @ 100 % Compaction	28	16	6	22
CBR @ 98 % Compaction	17	13	5	17
CBR @ 95 % Compaction	9	10	4	11
CBR @ 93 % Compaction	5	9	3	8
CBR @ 90 % Compaction	3	7	2	5
Swell @ 100 % Compaction	0.09	0.13	0.63	0.08

The Colto / TRH 14 Classifications are only based on the above results. Further testing may be required.

Remarks : -

For Soilco : -

(Technical Signatory)

2021-10-04

Revision 1

Soilco SF 33

Figure 4.1.6 – Test 4 - 5 – Test Results

APPENDIX 5: AGREEMENT TO OCCUPY SANRAL'S PROPERTY

1. Definitions

For the purpose of this clause, the following words, phrases and expressions shall have the respective meanings assigned to each of them as set out hereunder:

- 1.1 "Commencement Date" shall mean ***.
- 1.2 "Designated Person" shall mean an employee, director, agent, independent contractor and/or representative of SANRAL, as the case may be;
- 1.3 "the Property" shall mean the property delineated on the plan annexed hereto marked "Appendix A";
- 1.4 "Termination Date" shall mean ***.

2. Option to occupy the Property

- 2.1 SANRAL hereby grants the Contractor an option to occupy the Property for the purpose of:
 - 2.1.1 ***;
 - 2.1.2 ***.
- 2.2 The Contractor may exercise the option referred to above by notifying SANRAL, within 30 (thirty) days of the Tender Award that it intends to use the Property, failing which this option will lapse and be of no further force or effect.

3. Use of the Property

- 3.1 In the event that the Contractor exercises the option to occupy the Property, it may do so with effect from the Commencement Date,
- 3.2 The Property may not be used for any purpose other than that prescribed above without the prior written approval of SANRAL.
- 3.3 If SANRAL is unable to give the Contractor occupation of the Property on the Commencement Date for any reason whatsoever, whether or not occasioned by the negligence of SANRAL and/or the Designated Person, the Contractor shall have no claim of whatsoever nature against SANRAL or the Designated Person.
- 3.4 SANRAL does not warrant that the Property is or will be suitable for any of the purposes for which the Contractor requires the Property.
- 3.5 SANRAL does not warrant that the Contractor will be granted or provided with any licences, consents, authorities, services or permits in respect of the Property for the proposed use thereof by the Contractor.
- 3.6 The Contractor shall comply with all laws, by-laws and regulations (including but not limited to the requirements of the Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993) relating to the Property and shall not contravene or permit contravention of any of the conditions of title under which the Property is held by SANRAL or any of the provisions of the town planning scheme applicable to the Property, nor do or cause or permit to be done in or about the Property anything which may be or cause a nuisance or disturbance to occupiers of neighbouring properties.
- 3.7 The Contractor's right to occupy the Property shall terminate on completion of Contract No. ***.

4. **Electricity, water and other services**

- 4.1 The Contractor may not install or arrange for any services such as water and electricity to be installed on the Property without the prior written consent of SANRAL.
- 4.2 In the event that SANRAL grants the consent referred to above, the Contractor shall be liable for the payment of all amounts due for the consumption of such services on the Property.
- 4.3 The Contractor hereby indemnifies and holds SANRAL harmless against any claim for payment for the consumption of services on the Property or any claim of whatsoever nature arising therefrom.

5. **Exclusion of claims**

- 5.1 The Contractor shall have no remedy against SANRAL and/or the Designated Person:
 - 5.1.1 by reason of the Property or any part thereof or any improvement thereto being in a defective condition or in a state of disrepair;
 - 5.1.2 in respect of any damage caused to furniture, equipment or any assets of any nature whatsoever kept on the Property by the Contractor, its employees, invitees, agents, directors or representatives;
 - 5.1.3 in respect of any claim of whatsoever nature for loss or damages allegedly suffered by the Contractor, its servants, invitees, agents, directors, clients or representatives arising from loss of life and/or injury to persons on the Property.
- 5.2 The Contractor hereby indemnifies and holds harmless SANRAL and/or the Designated Person against any claim arising from the Contractor's occupation of the Property.

6. **Sub-letting**

The Contractor shall not be entitled, except with the prior written consent of SANRAL:

- 6.1 to cede all or any of the rights of occupation of the Property; or
- 6.2 to sublet or give up possession of the Property, in whole or part, to any third party.

7. **SANRAL's Right of Entry**

SANRAL and/or the Designated Person shall be entitled to enter the Property at all reasonable times for the purpose of inspecting it in order to determine that the Contractor is complying with the rights and obligations granted to it with respect to the Property.

8. **Obligation to maintain the Property**

- 8.1 Prior to the Contractor taking occupation of the Property, SANRAL and the Contractor shall jointly inspect the Property.
- 8.2 During such inspection, the Contractor shall record the condition of the Property and any improvements thereto on the Inspection Form attached hereto marked "Appendix B". In the event that the Contractor does not arrange for the completion of such form, the Contractor shall be deemed to have accepted the Property as being without defect and in good order and repair.
- 8.3 At all times during the Contractor's occupation of the Property, the Contractor shall care for and maintain the Property in good order and repair, including any improvements thereto.

- 8.4 On the Termination Date or the date of termination of the Contractor's occupation of the Property, as the case may be, the Contractor shall return the Property and any improvements thereto in good order, condition and repair, fair wear and tear excepted, provided that SANRAL shall not be obliged to compensate the Contractor for any expenditure incurred by the Contractor in complying with the Contractor's obligations of maintenance, repair and replacement provided for herein.
- 8.5 Prior to the date of termination of occupation of the Property by the Contractor, SANRAL and the Contractor shall arrange a joint inspection of the Property and improvements thereto. Such inspection is to take place within a period of 3 (three) days prior to the date of termination with a view to ascertain if there was any damage caused to the Property or improvements thereto before the Contractor vacates the Property. SANRAL and the Contractor shall record the result of their inspection on the Inspection Form annexed hereto marked "Appendix C".
- 8.6 SANRAL and the Contractor shall make reference to the initial Inspection Form attached hereto marked Appendix "B" when undertaking the inspection prior to termination of the Contractor's occupation and shall record any damages or lost items which shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor before the Contractor vacates the Property.
- 8.7 Should the Contractor fail to repair such damages to the Property or improvements thereto or fail to replace any missing articles, SANRAL may attend thereto and recover the cost thereof from the Contractor.
- 8.8 Should the Contractor fail to respond to SANRAL's request for an inspection, SANRAL shall, on termination of the Contractor's occupation of the Property, inspect the Property within 7 (seven) days from such termination in order to assess any damages or loss which occurred during the Contractor's occupancy, and may recover such loss or damages from the Contractor.

9. **The Contractor's Employees**

- 9.1 The Contractor shall not allow any of its employees and/or their relatives to live on the Property.
- 9.2 The Contractor shall be held liable for all persons entering onto the Property and such persons shall be considered to be under the control of the Contractor.
- 9.3 On the termination of the Contractor's occupation of the Property, the Contractor shall ensure that the Property is returned to SANRAL vacant and free of any unlawful or lawful occupiers.
- 9.4 In the event that any person remains in occupation of the Property on termination of the Contractor's occupation of the Property, and SANRAL is obliged to obtain a Court Order to enable it to evict such person, the Contractor shall be liable for all and any costs in this respect, including but not limited to legal costs and costs for relocating such person.

10. **Remedies for Breach and Cancellation**

Should the Contractor:

- 10.1 fail to comply with any of the terms and conditions relating to its occupation of the Property, as provided for herein; or
- 10.2 abandon the Property,

then, after having received written notification to remedy such breach within 7 (seven) days and having failed to do so, SANRAL shall have the right, but not be obliged to either:

- immediately terminate the Contractor's right to occupy the Property further notice; and/or
- take possession of the Property and claim damages arising from such breaches.

11. Early Termination of the Right to Occupy

- 11.1 Notwithstanding the rights granted to the Contractor in terms hereof, the Contractor acknowledges that SANRAL may terminate such rights prematurely in the event that SANRAL requires the Property for anything related to the construction, maintenance or operation of a national road.
- 11.2 Should SANRAL be required to terminate the Contractor's right of use of the Property, SANRAL shall be required to give no more than 3 (three) months' written notice to the Contractor of the required premature termination, and the Contractor shall:
- 11.2.1 vacate the Property on the premature termination date required by SANRAL;
 - 11.2.2 have no remedy against SANRAL as a result of such premature termination or its relocation arising from such premature termination.

12. Alterations and Improvements

- 12.1 The Contractor shall not make any alterations or improvements to the Property without SANRAL'S prior written consent.
- 12.2 In the event that SANRAL grants approval for alternations or improvements, this shall not preclude the Contractor from having to obtain any consent or approval that may be necessary from any applicable authority.
- 12.3 SANRAL shall not be liable for compensating the Contractor for the value of any improvements or alterations to the Property.

13. Development of the Property and/or Underground Services

- 13.1 SANRAL shall be entitled at any and at all times during the currency of the Contractor's occupation of the Property to affect such alterations, improvements and/or additions to the Property as SANRAL may deem necessary.
- 13.2 The Contractor shall have no claim against SANRAL for compensation, damages or otherwise, by reason of any interference with its occupation of the Property occasioned by any such alterations, improvements and/or additions, or arising from any failure or interruption in the supply of water and/or electricity and/or other services to the Property.
- 13.3 Where relevant, the Contractor shall bear the onus of investigating, at its expense, the existence or otherwise of any live or defunct underground services on or adjacent to the Property by making appropriate enquiries from the local municipality or any other competent authority.
- 13.4 Save in circumstances where SANRAL has in writing agreed to assume specific obligations to deal with underground services, whether live or abandoned, existing on the Property, the Contractor agrees that it shall have no claim whatsoever against SANRAL for the removal and/or modification of any underground services or abandoned services that may exist on the Property, nor for any direct or consequential losses which may be suffered by the Contractor arising out of any removal and/or modification or failure to remove and/or modify any of the said underground services or abandoned services.
- 13.5 SANRAL shall have the right to lay and use or continue using underground services of any nature on or under the Property and may grant such right to any third party without being liable for any loss or damage suffered by the Contractor as a result thereof. The Contractor shall not in any way, directly or indirectly, interfere or obstruct the laying or using of such underground services. SANRAL and/or any third party shall at all reasonable times have free access of the Property for the purpose of construction, maintenance, repairs, replacement or removal of such services.

14. **General**

- 14.1 No amendment or consensual cancellation of any of the above terms and conditions shall be binding unless recorded in a written document signed by SANRAL and the Contractor.
- 14.2 No extension of time, waiver, indulgence or relaxation or suspension of any of the provisions or terms applicable to the Contractor's occupation of the Property shall be binding unless recorded in a written document signed by the parties. Any such extension, waiver or relaxation or suspension which is so given or made shall be strictly construed as relating strictly to the matter in respect whereof it was made or given.

APPENDIX 5.2: PRE-OCCUPATION INSPECTION FORM

Exterior of the Property:

EXTERIOR	Good	Fair	Poor	None Present
ROOF				
WALLS / FENCE				
GATE				
GUTTERS				
PAVING				
GARDEN (outside taps)				
Carport				
GARAGE				

List other exterior improvements or defects not indicated above:

Improvements on the Property:

EXTERIOR	Good	Fair	Poor	None Present
GUTTERS				
PAVING				
OUTSIDE TAPS				
Carport				
GARAGE				
ROOMS OR OFFICES				
PARTITIONING				
FLOOR COVERING				
WALL COVERING				
CEILING				
KITCHEN				
BATHROOM & TOILET				
SECURITY GATE				
BURGLAR PROOFING				
INTERIOR DOORS				
EXTERIOR DOORS				
LOCKS				
LIGHT FITTINGS				

Details of any other improvements:

Occupancy Status:

- Verified – No occupants found on the Property.
- Illegal occupants: *Full details of location and names (add page with details)*

SIGNED AT: ON THIS DAY OF 20

.....
SIGNATURE

.....
SIGNATURE

.....
FULL NAME OF SANRAL'S REPRESENTATIVE

.....
FULL NAME OF CONTRACTOR'S
REPRESENTATIVE

DISPUTE ADJUDICATION AGREEMENT

between

THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL ROADS AGENCY SOC LIMITED

(Reg No. 1998/009584/06)

(**“Employer”**)

and

(Reg No. _____)

(**“Contractor”**)

and

(**“Member”**)

1. DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS

- 1.1 In this Dispute Adjudication Agreement, unless the context otherwise indicates :
- 1.1.1 “**Contract**” means Contract SANRAL ... *(insert contract number)* for the *(insert contract description)* entered into between the Employer and the Contractor.
- 1.1.2 “**Contractor**” means ... *(insert contractor’s details)* appointed by the Employer under the Contract.
- 1.1.3 “**DAB**” means the three person Dispute Adjudication Board as contemplated in clause 20 of the Conditions of Contract for Construction for Building and Engineering Works designed by the Employer, published by the Fédération Internationale des Ingénieurs-Conseils (hereinafter referred to as “GCC”), in accordance with the terms and conditions as set out in this Dispute Adjudication Agreement.
- 1.1.4 “**Dispute Adjudication Agreement**” means the tripartite agreement between the Employer, Contractor and Member.
- 1.1.5 “**Effective Date**” means the date that this Dispute Adjudication Agreement shall take effect, and unless otherwise stated, it shall be the latest date when the Employer, the Contractor, Member and each of the Other Members have respectively signed a Dispute Adjudication Agreement.
- 1.1.6 “**Employer**” means the South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited, Registration No. 1998/009584/06
- 1.1.7 “**Engineer**” means ... *(insert engineer’s details)*.
- 1.1.8 “**Member**” means Mr _____, who *(Note to compiler: Delete the following for members other than for the Chairperson’s agreement)* will act as chairman of the DAB and who is one of the three persons who are jointly called the DAB.
- 1.1.9 “**Other Members**” means the persons other than the Member, forming part of the DAB
- 1.1.10 “**Parties**” means the Employer, Contractor and Member
- 1.2 In the Dispute Adjudication Agreement, words and expressions which are not otherwise defined shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Contract

2. GENERAL PROVISIONS

- 2.1 Following the Effective Date, the Employer and the Contractor shall each give notice to the Member accordingly. If the Member does not receive either notice within six months after entering into the Dispute Adjudication Agreement, it shall be void and ineffective.
- 2.2 This employment of the Member is a personal appointment. At any time, the Member may give not less than 70 days’ notice of resignation to the Employer and to the Contractor, and the Dispute Adjudication Agreement shall terminate upon the expiry of this period.
- 2.3 No assignment or subcontracting of the Dispute Adjudication Agreement is permitted without the prior written agreement of all the Parties to it and of the Other Members.
- 2.4 The Dispute Adjudication Agreement shall be governed by the law of the Republic of South Africa.
- 2.5 All disputes will be heard in _____, Republic of South Africa, unless otherwise agreed by the Parties.

3. WARRANTIES

- 3.1 The Member warrants and agrees that he/she is and shall be impartial and independent of the Employer, the Contractor and the Engineer. The Member shall promptly disclose, to each of them and to the Other Members, any fact or circumstance which might appear inconsistent with his/her warranty and agreement of impartiality and independence.
- 3.2 When appointing the Member, the Employer and the Contractor relies upon the Members' representations that he/she is:
- a) experienced in the work which the Contractor is to carry out under the Contract,
 - b) experienced in the interpretation of contract documentation, and
 - c) fluent in the language for communications defined in the Contract.

4. APPOINTMENT

- 4.1 The Employer and the Contractor hereby jointly appoint the Member as a Member of a three-person DAB on the terms and conditions as set out in the Dispute Adjudication Agreement, which appointment the Member by his/her signature hereto accepts;
- 4.2 The conditions of the Dispute Adjudication Agreement comprise the following:
- a) The Dispute Adjudication Agreement together with any addenda or schedules hereto; including the procedural rules;
 - b) The GCC, as amended by any particular conditions, to the extent that it is applicable to the DAB and the Member.

5. GENERAL OBLIGATIONS OF THE MEMBER

- 5.1 The Member shall act as chairman of the DAB and shall; ensure smooth administration; keep all records; ensure compliance to procedural rules; ensure the ethics of the DAB remain unchallenged; coordinate between the Parties and the DAB; chair meetings and site visits; ensure procedural correctness of all recommendations and decisions of the DAB.
- 5.2 The Member shall have no interest financial or otherwise in the Employer, the Contractor or the Engineer, nor any financial interest in the Contract except for payment under the Dispute Adjudication Agreement.
- 5.3 The Member shall not previously have been employed as a consultant or otherwise by the Employer, the Contractor or the Engineer, except in such circumstances as were disclosed in writing to the Employer and the Contractor before they signed the Dispute Adjudication Agreement.
- 5.4 The Member shall have disclosed in writing to the Employer, the Contractor and the Other Members, before entering into the Dispute Adjudication Agreement and to his/her best knowledge and re-collection, any professional or personal relationships with any director, officer or employee of the Employer, the Contractor or the Engineer, and any previous involvement in the overall project of which the Contract forms part.
- 5.5 The Member shall not, for the duration of the Dispute Adjudication Agreement, be employed as a consultant or otherwise by the Employer, the Contractor, any member/partner of the Contractor or the Engineer, except as may be agreed in writing by the Employer, the Contractor and the Other Members. Notwithstanding this restriction, the Member shall not be restricted to be employed as a consultant or otherwise by the Employer, the Contractor or the Engineer on another contract or matter, but shall disclose to the Employer, the Contractor, and the Other Members, before he/she consult, advises or accepts any instructions from either the Employer, the Contractor, any member/partner of the Contractor, or the Engineer and confirming that such advice, consultation or other instruction taken from such person shall not affect the Member's ability to be unbiased in relation to his/her duties under the Dispute Adjudication Agreement.
- 5.6 The Member shall comply with the annexed procedural rules and Sub-Clause 20.4 of the conditions of Contract.

- 5.7 The Member shall not give advice to the Employer, the Contractor, the Employer's personnel or the Contractor's personnel concerning the conduct of the Contract, other than in accordance with the annexed procedural rules.
- 5.8 The Member shall not while a Member enter into discussions or make any agreement with the Employer, the Contractor or the Engineer regarding employment by any of them, whether as a consultant or otherwise, after ceasing to act under this Dispute Adjudication Agreement.
- 5.9 The Member shall ensure his/her availability for all site visits and hearings as are necessary.
- 5.10 The Member shall become conversant with the Contract and with the progress of the Works (and of any parts of the project of which the Contract forms part) by studying all documents received which shall be maintained in a current working file.
- 5.11 The Member shall treat the details of the Contract and all the DAB's activities and hearings as private and confidential, and not publish or disclose them without the prior written consent of the Employer, the Contractor and the Other Members.
- 5.12 The Member shall be available to give advice and opinions, on any matter relevant to the Contract when requested by both the Employer and the Contractor, subject to the agreement of the Other Members.

6. GENERAL OBLIGATIONS OF THE EMPLOYER AND THE CONTRACTOR

- 6.1 The Employer, the Contractor, the Employer's personnel and the Contractor's personnel shall not request advice from or consultation with the Member regarding the Contract, otherwise than in the normal course of the DAB's activities under the Contract and the Dispute Adjudication Agreement, and except to the extent that prior agreement is given by the Employer, the Contractor and the Other Members. The Employer and the Contractor shall be responsible for compliance with this provision, by the Employer's personnel and the Contractor's personnel respectively.
- 6.2 The Employer and the Contractor undertake to each other and to the Member that the Member shall not, except as otherwise agreed in writing by the Employer, the Contractor, the Member and the Other Members:
- a) be appointed as an arbitrator in any arbitration under the Contract;
 - b) be called as a witness to give evidence concerning any dispute before arbitrator(s) appointed for any arbitration under the Contract;
 - c) be called as a witness or act on behalf of the Employer or Contractor, concerning any dispute that became the subject of litigation under the Contract; or
 - d) be liable for any claims for anything done or omitted in the discharge or purported discharge of the Members functions unless the act or omission is shown to have been in bad faith.
- 6.3 The Employer and the Contractor hereby jointly and severally indemnify and hold the Member harmless against and from claims from which he/she is relieved from liability under the preceding paragraph.

7. PAYMENT

- 7.1 The Member shall be paid a retainer fee of R... (excluding VAT) per calendar month, which shall be considered as payment in full for:
- i) being available on 28 days' notice for all site visits and hearings;
 - ii) becoming and remaining conversant with all project developments and maintaining relevant files;
 - iii) all office and overhead expenses including secretarial services, photocopying and office supplies incurred in connection with his/her duties; and
 - iv) all services performed hereunder except those referred to in sub-paragraphs 7.4, 7.5, 7.6 and 7.7 of this Clause.
- 7.2 The retainer fee shall be paid with effect from the last day of the calendar month in which the Dispute Adjudication Agreement becomes effective; until the last day of the calendar month in which the Taking-Over Certificate is issued for the whole of the Works.

- 7.3 With effect from the first day of the calendar month following the month in which the Taking-Over Certificate is issued for the whole of the Works, the retainer fee shall be reduced by 50%. This reduced fee shall be paid until the first day of the calendar month in which the Member resigns or the Dispute Adjudication Agreement is otherwise terminated.
- 7.4 The Member shall be paid a site visit daily fee of R... (excluding VAT), (reduced to an hourly fee of one eighth the daily fee, for part of a day), which shall be considered as payment in full for:
- i) each day or part of a day up to a maximum of one day's travel time in each direction for the journey between the Member's home and the site or another location of a meeting with the Other Members, as agreed by the Parties.
 - ii) each working day or part of a day on site visits.
- 7.5 The Member shall be paid a dispute analysis daily fee of R... (excluding VAT), (reduced to an hourly fee of one eighth the daily fee, for part of a day), which shall be considered as payment in full for:
- i) each day or part of a day spent on dispute analysis, hearings or preparing decisions; and
 - ii) each day or part of a day spent reading submissions in preparation for a hearing.
- 7.6 The Member shall be paid a pupillage daily fee of R... (excluding VAT), (reduced to an hourly fee of one eighth the daily fee, for part of a day), which shall be considered as payment in full for:
- i) each day or part of a day spent on preparation for pupillage.
 - ii) each day or part of a day spent on offering practical experience and mentoring to assigned pupil.
- 7.7 The Member shall be paid all reasonable expenses incurred in connection with the Member's duties, including the cost of the following:
- i) Travel expenses :-
 - Own car - motor vehicle travel expenses will be recovered at the relevant South African Automobile Association rates,
 - Car hire – group B or similar,
 - Flights – economy class.
 - ii) Accommodation – any type of accommodation up to R1,300.00 per day all inclusive,
 - iii) Subsistence costs.
- 7.8 The Member shall be paid all Value Added Taxes as per the law.
- 7.9 The retainer fee and daily fees shall remain fixed for the 1st 24 calendar months and shall thereafter be adjusted by the twelve-month year on year CPI index (as published in the monthly bulletin P0141 of Statistics South Africa under table B) at each anniversary of the Effective Date. The base month shall be the 12th month following the Effective Date.
- 7.10 The Member shall be paid in South African Rands.
- 7.11 The member shall submit invoices for payment of the monthly retainer and may include an estimate of the next month's airfares which will be incurred (and which will be reconciled and adjusted in the subsequent invoice). Invoices for other expenses and for daily fees shall be submitted following the conclusion of a site visit or hearing. All invoices shall be accompanied by a DAB fee claim containing records of previous fee claims and a breakdown of activities performed during the relevant period and shall be addressed to the Contractor.
- 7.12 Notwithstanding the fact that the appointment is of the Member in his/her personal capacity the Member may invoice and receive payment to a legal entity of which he/she is a member, shareholder or partner.
- 7.13 The Contractor shall pay the Member's invoices in full within 30 calendar days after receiving each valid invoice, half of which shall be recovered by the Contractor from the Employer.
- 7.14 If the Member does not receive payment of the amount due within 70 days after submitting a valid invoice, the Member may (i) suspend his/her services (without notice) until the payment is received and/or (ii) resign his/her appointment by giving notice under Clause 8.

8. TERMINATION

- 8.1 At any time: (i) the Employer and the Contractor may jointly terminate the Dispute Adjudication Agreement by giving 42 days' notice to the Member; or (ii) the Member may resign as provided for under Clause 2.
- 8.2 If the member fails to comply with the Dispute Adjudication Agreement, the Employer and the Contractor may, without prejudice to their other rights, terminate it by notice to the Member. The notice shall take effect when received by the Member.
- 8.3 If the Employer or the Contractor fails to comply with the Dispute Adjudication Agreement, the Member may, without prejudice to his/her other rights, terminate it by notice to the Employer and the Contractor. The notice shall take effect when received by them both.
- 8.4 Any such notice, resignation and termination shall be final and binding on the Employer, the Contractor and the Member. However, a notice by the Employer or the Contractor, but not by both, shall be of no effect.

9. DEFAULT OF THE MEMBER

- 9.1 If the Member fails to comply with any obligation under Clause 5, he/she shall not be entitled to any fees or expenses hereunder and shall, without prejudice to their other rights, reimburse each of the Employer and the Contractor for any fees and expenses received by the Member and the Other Members, for proceedings or decisions (if any) of the DAB which are rendered void or ineffective.

10. DISPUTES

- 10.1 Any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with the Dispute Adjudication Agreement, or the breach, termination or invalidity thereof, shall be finally settled by arbitration under the Rules of Arbitration of the Association of Arbitrators of Southern Africa by one Arbitrator appointed by agreement of the Member, the Employer and the Contractor or, failing such agreement, by the Chairman for the time being of the Association of Arbitrators.

11. DOMICILIA AND NOTICES

- 11.1 The Parties choose as their *domicilia citandi et executandi* for all purposes under the Dispute Adjudication Agreement, whether in respect of notices or other documents or communications of whatsoever nature (including the exercise of any option), the following addresses:

- 11.1.1 Employer (*domicilia citandi et executandi*):

Address: South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited
48 Tambotie Avenue, Val de Grace, Pretoria, 0184
Reference: ... CEO

Employer (*General Communication*)

Address: South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited
... Region, ..., ..., ...
Fax Number: ...
Tel. Number: ...
Reference: ... Regional Manager, ... Region

- 11.1.2 Contractor:

Address: ...
...
Fax Number: ...
Tel. Number: ...

Reference: ..., Contract Director

11.1.3 Member:

Address: ...

...

Fax Number: ...

Tel. Number: ...

Reference: ...,

11.2 Any notice or communication required or permitted to be given in terms of the Dispute Adjudication Agreement shall be valid and effective only if in writing, but it shall be competent to give notice by telefax or registered mail.

11.3 Any Party may by notice to the other Party change the physical address chosen as its *domicilium citandi et executandi* vis-à-vis that Party to another physical address in the Republic of South Africa or its telefax number, provided that the change shall become effective vis-à-vis that addressee on the 7th business day from the deemed receipt of the notice by the addressee.

11.4 Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein contained a written notice or communication actually received by a Party shall be an adequate written notice or communication to it notwithstanding that it was not sent to or delivered at its chosen *domicilium citandi et executandi*.

12. SIGNATORIES

12.1 Signed for and on behalf of the Employer by:

.....
Name Signature of duly authorised representative

.....
Date

In the presence of Witness:

.....
Name Signature

.....
Date

12.2 Signed for and on behalf of the Contractor by:

.....
Name Signature of duly authorised representative

.....
Date

In the presence of Witness:

.....
Name Signature

.....
Date

12.3 Signed by the Member:

.....
Name Signature

.....
Date

In the presence of Witness:

.....
Name Signature

.....
Date

ANNEXURE 1

PROCEDURAL RULES

1. Unless otherwise agreed by the Employer and the Contractor, the DAB shall visit the site at intervals of not more than 140 days, including times of critical construction events, at the request of either the Employer or the Contractor. Unless otherwise agreed by the Employer, the Contractor and the DAB, the period between consecutive visits shall not be less than 70 days, except as required to convene a hearing as described below.
2. The timing of and agenda for each site visit shall be as agreed jointly by the DAB, the Employer and the Contractor, or in the absence of agreement, shall be decided by the DAB. The purpose of site visits is to enable the DAB to become and remain acquainted with the progress of the Works and of any actual or potential problems or claims.
3. Site visits shall be attended by the Employer, the Contractor and the Engineer and shall be co-ordinated by the Employer in co-operation with the Contractor. The Employer shall ensure the provision of appropriate conference facilities and secretarial and copying services. At the conclusion of each site visit and before leaving the site, the DAB shall prepare a report on its activities during the visit and shall send copies to the Employer and the Contractor.
4. The Employer and the Contractor shall furnish to each member of the DAB one copy of all documents which the DAB may request, including Contract documents, progress reports, variation instructions, certificates and other documents pertinent to the performance of the Contract. All communications between the DAB and the Employer or the Contractor shall be copied to the other Party.
5. If any dispute is referred to the DAB in accordance with Sub-clause 20.4 of the GCC, the DAB shall proceed in accordance with Sub-clause 20.4 and these Rules. Subject to the time allowed to give notice of a decision and other relevant factors, the DAB shall:
 - a) act fairly and impartially as between the Employer and the Contractor, giving each of them a reasonable opportunity of putting his case and responding to the other's case, and
 - b) adopt procedures suitable to the dispute, avoiding unnecessary delay or expense.
6. The DAB may conduct a hearing on the dispute, in which event it will decide on the date and place for the hearing and may request that written documentation and arguments from the Employer and the Contractor be presented to it prior to or at the hearing.
7. Except as otherwise agreed in writing by the Employer and the Contractor, the DAB shall have power to adopt an inquisitorial procedure, to refuse admission to hearings or audience at hearings to any persons other than representatives of the Employer, the Contractor and the Engineer, and to proceed in the absence of any party whom the DAB is satisfied received notice of the hearing; but shall have discretion to decide whether and to what extent this power may be exercised.
8. The Employer and the Contractor empower the DAB, among other things, to:
 - a) establish the procedure to be applied in deciding a dispute,
 - b) decide upon the DABs' own jurisdiction, and as to the scope of any dispute referred to it,
 - c) conduct any hearing as it thinks fit, not being bound by any rules or procedures other than those contained in the Contract and these Rules,
 - d) take the initiative in ascertaining the facts and matters required for a decision,
 - e) make use of its own specialist knowledge, if any,
 - f) decide upon the payment of financing charges in accordance with the Contract,
 - g) decide upon any provisional relief such as interim or conservatory measures, and
 - h) open up, review and revise any certificate, decision, determination, instruction, opinion or valuation of the Engineer, relevant to the dispute.

9. The DAB shall not express any opinions during any hearing concerning the merits of any arguments advanced by the Parties, unless requested by both the Employer and Contractor. Prior to giving notice to its decision:
- a) it shall convene in private after a hearing, in order to have discussions and prepare its decision;
 - b) it shall endeavour to reach a unanimous decision: if this proves impossible the applicable decision shall be made by a majority of the Members' who may require the minority Member to prepare a written report for submission to the Employer and the Contractor; and
 - c) if a Member fails to attend a meeting or hearing, or to fulfil any required function, the other two Members may nevertheless proceed to make a decision, unless:
 - i) either the Employer or the Contractor does not agree that they do so, or
 - ii) the absent Member is the chairman and he/she instructs the other Members not to make a decision.

Thereafter, the DAB shall make and give notice to its decision in accordance with Sub-clause 20.4 or as otherwise agreed by the Employer and the Contractor in writing.

Section 6: Record in the service of the state:

Indicate by marking the relevant boxes with a cross, if any principal is currently or has been within the last 12 months in the service of any of the following:

- a member of any municipal council
- a member of any provincial legislature
- a member of the National Assembly or the National Council of Province
- a member of the board of directors of any municipal entity
- an official of any municipality or municipal entity
- an employee of any department, national or provincial public entity or constitutional institution within the meaning of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999)
- a member of an accounting authority of any national or provincial public entity
- an employee of Parliament or a provincial legislature

If any of the above boxes are marked, disclose the following:

Name of principal	Name of institution, public office, board or organ of state and position held	Status of service (tick appropriate column)	
		Current	Within last 12 months

Insert separate page if necessary.

Section 7: Record of family member in the service of the state:

Family member: a person's spouse, whether in a marriage or in a customary union according to indigenous law, domestic partner in a civil union, or child, parent, brother, sister, whether such relationship results from birth, marriage or adoption

Indicate by marking the relevant boxes with a cross, if any family member of a principal as defined in section 5 is currently or has within the last 12 months been in the service of any of the following:

- a member of any municipal council
- a member of any provincial legislature
- a member of the National Assembly or the National Council of Province
- a member of the board of directors of any municipal entity
- an official of any municipality or municipal entity
- an employee of any department, national or provincial public entity or constitutional institution within the meaning of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999)
- a member of an accounting authority of any national or provincial public entity
- an employee of Parliament or a provincial legislature

If any of the above boxes are marked, disclose the following:

Name of family member	Name of institution, public office, board or organ of state and position held	Status of service (tick appropriate column)	
		Current	Within last 12 months

Insert separate page if necessary

Section 8: Record of termination of previous contracts with an organ of state

Was any contract between the tendering entity, including any of its joint venture partners, terminated during the past five years for reasons other than the employer no longer requiring such works or the employer failing to make payment in terms of the contract?

- Yes No (tick appropriate box)

If yes, provide particulars:

Insert separate page if necessary

Section 9: Declaration

The undersigned, who warrants that he/she is duly authorised to do so on behalf of the tendering entity, confirms that the contents of this Declaration are within my personal knowledge, save where stated otherwise in an attachment hereto, and to the best of my belief is both true and correct, and that:

- i) neither the name of the tendering entity, nor any of its principals, appears on:
 - a) the Register of Tender Defaulters established in terms of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004 (Act No. 12 of 2004); or
 - b) National Treasury's Database of RestrictError! Hyperlink reference not valid.ww.treasury.gov.za);
- ii) the tendering entity or any of its principals has not been convicted of fraud or corruption by a court of law (including a court outside of the Republic of South Africa) within the last five years;
- iii) any principal who is presently employed by the state has the necessary permission to undertake remunerative work outside such employment (attach permission to this declaration);
- iv) the tendering entity is not associated, linked or involved with any other tendering entities submitting tender offers;
- v) the tendering entity has not engaged in any prohibited restrictive horizontal practices, including consultation, communication, agreement, or arrangement with any competing or potential tendering entity regarding prices, geographical areas in which goods and services will be rendered, approaches to determining prices or pricing parameters, intentions to submit a tender or not, the content of the submission (specification, timing, conditions of contract, etc.) or intention to not win a tender;
- vi) the tendering entity has no other relationship with any of the tenderers or those responsible for compiling the scope of work that could cause or be interpreted as a conflict of interest;
- vii) neither the tenderer nor any of its principals owes municipal rates and taxes or municipal service charges to any municipality or a municipal entity, and are not in arrears for more than three months;
- viii) SARS may, on an on-going basis during the term of the contract, disclose the tenderer's tax compliance status to the Employer and, when called upon to do so, obtain the written consent of any subcontractors who are subcontracted to execute a portion of the contract that is entered into in excess of the threshold prescribed by National Treasury, for SARS to do likewise.

I, the undersigned
certify that the information furnished in this form above is correct. I accept that the Employer may cancel this agreement should this declaration prove to be false.

.....
Signature (duly authorised)

.....
Date

.....
PositionName of Enterprise

NOTE 1: Section 30(1) of the Public Service Act, 1994, prohibits an employee (person who is employed in posts on the establishment of departments) from performing or engaging remunerative work outside his or her employment in the relevant department, except with the written permission of the executive authority of the department. When in operation, Section 8(2) of the Public Administration Management Act, 2014, will prohibit an employee of the public administration (i.e. municipalities and all national departments, national government components listed in Part A of Schedule 3 to the Public Service Act, provincial departments including the office of the premier listed in Schedule 1 of the Public Service Act and provincial departments listed in schedule 2 of the Public Service Act, and provincial government components listed in Part B of schedule 3 of the Public Service Act) or persons contracted to executive authorities in accordance with the provisions of section 12A of the Public Service Act of 1994 or persons performing similar functions in municipalities, from conducting business with the State or to be a director of a public or private company conducting business with the State. The offence for doing so is a fine or imprisonment for a period not exceeding five years, or both. It is also a serious misconduct which may result in the termination of employment by the employer.

NOTE 2: Regulation 44 of Supply Chain Management regulations issued in terms of the Municipal Finance Management Act of 2003 requires that municipalities and municipal entities should not award a contract to a person who is in the service of the State, a director, manager or principal shareholder in the service of the State or who has been in the service of the State in the previous twelve months.

NOTE 3: Regulation 45 of Supply Chain Management regulations requires a municipality or municipal entity to disclose in the notes to the annual statements particulars of any award made to a close family member in the service of the State.

NOTE 4: Corrupt activities which give rise to an offence in terms of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004, include improperly influencing in any way the procurement of any contract, the fixing of the price, consideration or other moneys stipulated or otherwise provided for in any contract, and the manipulating by any means of the award of a tender.

NOTE 5: Section 4 of the Competition Act of 1998 prohibits restrictive horizontal practice, including agreements between parties in a horizontal relationship, which have the effect of substantially preventing or lessening competition, directly or indirectly fixing prices or dividing markets or constituting collusive tendering. Section 5 also prohibits restrictive vertical practices. Any restrictive practices that are suspicious will be reported to the Competition Commission for investigation and possible imposition of administrative penalties.

TAX COMPLIANCE PERMISSION DECLARATION

I, (name)
the undersigned in my capacity as (position)
on behalf of
..... (name of company)
herewith grant consent that SARS may disclose to the South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited (SANRAL) our tax compliance status on an ongoing basis for the contract term.

For this purpose, our unique security personal identification number (PIN) is,
our tax reference number is and our tax clearance certificate number is

SIGNATURE:

DATE:

APPENDIX 7: IMPORTED CONTENT DECLARATION

ANNEX D: IMPORTED CONTENT DECLARATION – SUPPORTING SCHEDULE TO ANNEX C

(D1)	Tender No.:										
(D2)	Tender Description:										
(D3)	Designated Product(s):										
(D4)	Tender Authority:										
(D5)	Tendering Entity Name:										
(D6)	Tender Exchange Rate:	Pula	P	EU	€	GBP	£				

Note: VAT to be excluded from all calculations

A. Exempted imported content				Calculation of imported content						Summary	
Tender item no's	Description of imported content	Local supplier	Overseas Supplier	Foreign currency value as per Commercial Invoice	Tender Exchange Rate	Local value of imports	Freight costs to port of entry	All locally incurred landing costs & duties	Total landed cost excl. VAT	Tender Qty	Exempted imported value
(D7)	(D8)	(D9)	(D10)	(D11)	(D12)	(D13)	(D14)	(D15)	(D16)	(D17)	(D18)
										(D19) Total exempt imported value	R0
This total must correspond with Annex C - C 21											

B. Imported directly by the Tenderer				Calculation of imported content						Summary	
Tender item no's	Description of imported content	Local supplier	Overseas Supplier	Foreign currency value as per Commercial Invoice	Tender Exchange Rate	Local value of imports	Freight costs to port of entry	All locally incurred landing costs & duties	Total landed cost excl. VAT	Tender Qty	Exempted imported value
(D33)	(D34)	(D35)	(D36)	(D37)	(D38)	(D39)	(D40)	(D41)	(D42)	(D43)	(D44)
										(D45) Total imported value by 3 rd party	R0

C. Imported by a 3 rd party and supplied to the Tenderer				Calculation of imported content						Summary	
Description of imported content	Unit of measure	Local supplier	Overseas Supplier	Foreign currency value as per Commercial Invoice	Tender Rate of Exchange	Local value of imports	Freight costs to port of entry	All locally incurred landing costs & duties	Total landed cost excl. VAT	Quantity imported	Total imported value
(D33)	(D34)	(D35)	(D36)	(D37)	(D38)	(D39)	(D40)	(D41)	(D42)	(D43)	(D44)
(D45) Total imported value by 3 rd party											R 0

D. Other foreign currency payments			Calculation of foreign currency payments		Summary of payments
Type of payment	Local supplier making the payment	Overseas beneficiary	Foreign currency value paid	Tender Rate of Exchange	Local value of payments
(D46)	(D47)	(D48)	(D49)	(D50)	(D51)
(D52) Total of foreign currency payments declared by tenderer and/or 3 rd party					R 0

Signature of tenderer from Annexure B:
(SATS 1286.2011)

(D53) Total of imported content & foreign currency payments -
(D32), (D45) & (D52) above

R 0

This total must correspond with Annex C - C 23

Date:

ANNEX E: IMPORTED CONTENT DECLARATION - SUPPORTING SCHEDULE TO ANNEX C

(E1)	Tender No.:		Note: VAT to be excluded from all calculations
(E2)	Tender Description:		
(E3)	Designated Product(s):		
(E4)	Tender Authority:		
(E5)	Tendering Entity Name:		

Local Products (Goods, Services and Works)	Description of items purchased	Local suppliers	Value
	(E6)	(E7)	(E8)
	(E9) Total local products (Goods, Services and Works)		R 0

(E10) **Manpower costs** (Tenderer's manpower cost) R 0

(E11) **Factory overheads** (Rental, depreciation & amortisation, utility costs, consumables etc.) R 0

(E12) **Administration overheads and mark-up** (Marketing, insurance, financing, interest etc.) R 0

(E13) Total local content R 0

This total must correspond with Annex C - C24

Signature of tenderer from Annexure B: (SATS 1286.2011) _____

Date: _____

Process when requesting exemption letters

For exemption requests on designated products and the minimum threshold for local content cannot be met for various reasons, bidders must apply for exemption per tender. After checking with the industry, **the dti** will decide whether to grant an exemption or not.

In the official request (signed letter), the following information should be included:

- Procuring entity/government department/state owned company.
- Tender/bid number.
- Closing date.
- Item(s) for which the exemption is being requested for.
- Description of the goods, services or works for which the requested exemption item will be used for and the local content that can be met.
- Reason(s) for the request.
- Supporting letters from local manufacturers and suppliers.

NB - Exemption letters are tender specific and applications are not transferrable.

The turnaround time in response to exemption letters for all designated products is five working days with the exception of rail and boats/vessels which is seven working days.

Request for exemption letters are to be directed to:

Dr Tebogo Makube

Chief Director: Industrial Procurement

Tel: 012 394 3927

E-mail: tmakube@thedti.gov.za.

The turnaround time in response to textile, clothing, leather and footwear exemption letters request is two working days and requests are to be directed to:

Patricia Khumalo

Tel: 012 394 1390

E-mail: khumaloP@thedti.gov.za.

Guidance Document for the Calculation of Local Content

1. DEFINITIONS

Unless explicitly provided in this guideline, the definitions given in SATS 1286:2011 apply.

2. GENERAL

2.1. Introduction

This guideline provides tenderers with a detailed description of how to calculate local content of products (goods, services and works) by components/material/services and enables them to keep an updated record for verification requirements as per the SATS 1286:2011 Annexure A and B.

The guideline consists of two parts, namely:

- a written guideline; and
- three declarations that must be completed:
 - Declaration C: “Local Content Declaration – Summary Schedule” (see Annexure C);
 - Declaration D: “Imported Content Declaration – Supporting Schedule to Annex C” (see Annexure D); and
 - Declaration E: “Local Content Declaration – Supporting Schedule to Annex C” (see Annexure E).

The guidelines and declarations should be used by tenderers when preparing a tender. A tenderer must complete Declarations D and E, and consolidate the information on Declaration C.

Annexure C must be submitted with the tender by the closing date and time as determined by the Tender Authority. The Tender Authority reserves the right to request that Declarations D and E also be submitted.

If the tender is successful, the tenderer must continuously update Declarations C, D and E with actual values for the duration of the contract.

NOTE:

Annexure A is a note to the purchaser in SATS 1286:2011; and
Annexure B is the Local Content Declaration IN SATS 1286:2011.

2.2. What is local content?

According to SATS 1286:2011, the local content of a product is the tender price less the value of imported content, expressed as a percentage. It is, therefore, necessary to first compute the imported value of a product to determine the local content of a product.

2.3. Categories: Imported and Local Content

The tenderer must differentiate between imported content and local content.

Imported content of a product by components/material/services is separated into two categories, namely:

- products imported directly by the tenderer; and
- products imported by a third party and supplied to the tenderer.

2.3.1. Imported Content

Identify the imported content, if any, by value for products by component/material/services. In the case of components/materials/services sourced from a South African manufacturer, agent, supplier or subcontractor (i.e. third party), obtain that information and Declaration D from the third party.

Calculate the imported content of components/materials/services to be used in the manufacture of the total quantity of the products for which the tender is to be submitted.

As stated in clause 3.2.4 of SATS 1286:2011: "If information on the origin of components, parts or materials is not available, it will be deemed to be imported content."

2.3.1.1. Imported directly by the tenderer:

When the tenderer import products directly, the onus is on the tenderer to provide evidence of any components/materials/services that were procured from a non-domestic source. The evidence should be verifiable and pertain to the tender as a whole. Typical evidence will include commercial invoices, bills of entry, etc.

When the tenderer procures imported services such as project management, design, testing, marketing, etc and makes royalty and lease payments, such payments relating to the tender must be included when calculating imported content.

2.3.1.2. Imported by a third party and supplied to the tenderer:

When the tenderer supplies components/material/services that are imported by any third party (for example, a domestic manufacturer, agent, supplier or subcontractor in the supply chain), the onus is on the tenderer to obtain verifiable evidence from the third party.

The tenderer must obtain Declaration D from all third parties for the related tender. The third party must be requested by the tenderer to continuously update Declaration D. Typical evidence of imported content will include commercial invoices, bills of entry etc.

When a third party procures imported services such as project management, design, testing, marketing etc. and makes royalty and lease payments, such payments relating to the tender must be included when calculating imported content.

2.3.1.3. Exempt Imported Content:

Exemptions, if any, are granted by the Department of Trade and Industry (**the dti**). Evidence of the exemptions must be provided and included in Annexure D.

2.3.2. Local Content

Identify and calculate the local content, by value for products by components/materials/services to be used in the manufacture of the total quantity of the products.

3. ANNEXURE C

3.1. Guidelines for completing Annexure C: Local Content Declaration – Summary Schedule

Note: The paragraph numbers correspond to the numbers in Annexure C.

C1. Tender Number

Supply the tender number that is specified on the specific tender documentation.

C2. Tender description

Supply the tender description that is specified on the specific tender documentation.

C3. Designated products

Supply the details of the products that are designated in terms of this tender (i.e. buses).

C4. Tender Authority

Supply the name of the tender authority.

C5. Tendering Entity name

Provide the tendering entity name (for example, Unibody Bus Builders (Pty) Ltd).

C6. Tender Exchange Rate

Provide the exchange rate used for this tender, as per the Standard Bidding Document (SBD) and Municipal Bidding Document (MBD) 6.2.

C7. Specified local content %

Provide the specified minimum local content requirement for the tender (i.e. 80%), as per the Standard Bidding Document (SBD) and Municipal Bidding Document (MDB) 6.2.

C8. Tender item number

Provide the tender item number(s) of the products that have a local content requirement as per the tender specification.

C9. List of items

Provide a list of the item(s) corresponding with the tender item number.
This may be a short description or a brand name.

Calculation of local content

C10. Tender price

Provide the unit tender price of each item excluding VAT.

C11. Exempted imported content

Provide the ZAR value of the exempted imported content for each item, if applicable. These value(s) must correspond with the value(s) of column D16 on Annexure D.

C12. Tender value net of exempted imported content

Provide the net tender value of the item, if applicable, by deducting the exempted imported content (C11) from the tender price (C10).

C13. Imported value

Provide the ZAR value of the items' imported content.

C14. Local value

Provide the local value of the item by deducting the Imported value (C13) from the net tender value (C12).

C15. Local content percentage (per item)

Provide the local content percentage of the item(s) by dividing the local value (C14) by the net tender value (C12) as per the local content formula in SATS 1286.

Tender Summary

C16. Tender quantity

Provide the tender quantity for each item number as per the tender specification.

C17. Total tender value

Provide the total tender value by multiplying the tender quantity (C16) by the tender price (C10).

C18. Total exempted imported content

Provide the total exempted imported content by multiplying the tender quantity (C16) by the exempted imported content (C11). These values must correspond with the values of column D18 on Annexure D.

C19. Total imported content

Provide the total imported content of each item by multiplying the tender quantity (C16) by the imported value (C13).

C20. Total tender value

Total tender value is the sum of the values in column C17.

C21. Total exempted imported content

Total exempted imported content is the sum of the values in column C18. This value must correspond with the value of D19 on Annexure D.

C22. Total tender value net of exempted imported content

The total tender value net of exempt imported content is the total tender value (C20) less the total exempted imported content (C21).

C23. Total imported content

Total imported content is the sum of the values in column C19. This value must correspond with the value of D53 on Annexure D.

C24. Total local content

Total local content is the total tender value net of exempted imported content (C22) less the total imported content (C23). This value must correspond with the value of E13 on Annexure E.

C25. Average local content percentage of tender

The average local content percentage of tender is calculated by dividing total local content (C24) by the total tender value net of exempted imported content (C22).

4. ANNEXURE D

4.1. Guidelines for completing Annexure D: “Imported Content Declaration – Supporting Schedule to Annexure C”

Note: The paragraph numbers correspond to the numbers in Annexure D.

D1. Tender number

Supply the tender number that is specified on the specific tender documentation.

D2. Tender description

Supply the tender description that is specified on the specific tender documentation.

D3. Designated products

Supply the details of the products that are designated in terms of this tender (i.e. buses).

D4. Tender authority

Supply the name of the tender authority.

D5. Tendering entity name

Provide the tendering entity name (i.e. Unibody Bus Builders (Pty) Ltd).

D6. Tender exchange rate

Provide the exchange rate used for this tender, as per the Standard Bidding Document (SBD) and Municipal Bidding Document (MBD) 6.2.

Table A. Exempted Imported Content

D7. Tender item number

Provide the tender item number(s) of the product(s) that have imported content.

D8. Description of imported content

Provide a list of the exempted imported product(s), if any, as specified in the tender.

D9. Local supplier

Provide the name of the local supplier(s) supplying the imported product(s).

D10. Overseas supplier

Provide the name(s) of the overseas supplier(s) supplying the exempted imported product(s).

D11. Imported value as per commercial invoice

Provide the foreign currency value of the exempted imported product(s) disclosed in the commercial invoice accepted by the South African Revenue Service (SARS).

D12. Tender exchange rate

Provide the exchange rate used for this tender as per the Standard Bidding Document (SBD) and Municipal Bidding Document (MBD) 6.2.

D13. Local value of imports

Convert the value of the exempted imported content as per commercial invoice (D11) into the ZAR value by using the tender exchange rate (D12) disclosed in the tender documentation.

D14. Freight costs to port of entry

Provide the freight costs to the South African Port of the exempted imported item.

D15. All locally incurred landing costs and duties

Provide all landing costs including customs and excise duty for the exempted imported product(s) as stipulated in the SATS 1286:2011.

D16. Total landed costs excl VAT

Provide the total landed costs (excluding VAT) for each item imported by adding the corresponding item values in columns D13, D14 and D15. These values must be transferred to column C11 on Annexure C.

D17. Tender quantity

Provide the tender quantity of the exempted imported products as per the tender specification.

D18. Exempted imported value

Provide the imported value for each of the exempted imported product(s) by multiplying the total landed cost (excl. VAT) (D16) by the

tender quantity (D17). The values in column D18 must correspond with the values of column C18 of Annexure C.

D19. Total exempted imported value

The total exempted imported value is the sum of the values in column D18. This total must correspond with the value of C21 on Annexure C.

Table B. Imported Directly By Tenderer

D20. Tender item numbers

Provide the tender item number(s) of the product(s) that have imported content.

D21. Description of imported content:

Provide a list of the product(s) imported directly by tender as specified in the tender documentation.

D22. Unit of measure

Provide the unit of measure for the product(s) imported directly by the tenderer.

D23. Overseas supplier

Provide the name(s) of the overseas supplier(s) supplying the imported product(s).

D24. Imported value as per commercial Invoice

Provide the foreign currency value of the product(s) imported directly by tenderer disclosed in the commercial invoice accepted by the South African Revenue Service (SARS).

D25. Tender rate of exchange

Provide the exchange rate used for this tender as per the Standard Bidding Document (SBD) and Municipal Bidding Document (MBD) 6.2.

D26. Local value of imports

Convert the value of the product(s) imported directly by the tenderer as per commercial invoice (D24) into the ZAR value by using the tender exchange rate (D25) disclosed in the tender documentation.

D27. Freight costs to port of entry

Provide the freight costs to the South African Port of the product(s) imported directly by the tenderer.

D28. All locally incurred landing costs and duties

Provide all landing costs including customs and excise duty for the product(s) imported directly by the tenderer as stipulated in the SATS 1286:2011.

D29. Total landed costs excl VAT

Provide the total landed costs (excluding VAT) for each item imported directly by the tenderer by adding the corresponding item values in columns D26, D27 and D28.

D30. Tender quantity

Provide the tender quantity of the product(s) imported directly by the tenderer as per the tender specification.

D31. Total imported value

Provide the total imported value for each of the product(s) imported directly by the tenderer by multiplying the total landed cost (excl. VAT) (D29) by the tender quantity (D30).

D32. Total imported value by tenderer

The total value of imports by the tenderer is the sum of the values in column D31.

Table C. Imported by Third Party and Supplied to the Tenderer

D33. Description of imported content

Provide a list of the product(s) imported by the third party and supplied to the tenderer as specified in the tender documentation.

D34. Unit of measure

Provide the unit of measure for the product(s) imported by the third party and supplied to tenderer as disclosed in the commercial invoice.

D35. Local supplier

Provide the name of the local supplier(s) supplying the imported product(s).

D36. Overseas supplier

Provide the name(s) of the overseas supplier(s) supplying the imported products.

D37. Imported value as per commercial invoice

Provide the foreign currency value of the product(s) imported by the third party and supplied to the tenderer disclosed in the commercial invoice accepted by SARS.

D38. Tender rate of exchange

Provide the exchange rate used for this tender as per the Standard Bidding Document (SBD) and Municipal Bidding Document (MBD) 6.2.

D39. Local value of imports

Convert the value of the product(s) imported by the third party as per commercial invoice (D37) into the ZAR value by using the tender exchange rate (D38) disclosed in the tender documentation.

D40. Freight costs to port of entry

Provide the freight costs to the South African Port of the product(s) imported by third party and supplied to the tenderer.

D41. All locally incurred landing costs and duties

Provide all landing costs including customs and excise duty for the product(s) imported by third party and supplied to the tenderer as stipulated in the SATS 1286:2011.

D42. Total landed costs excluding VAT

Provide the total landed costs (excluding VAT) for each product imported by third party and supplied to the tenderer by adding the corresponding item values in columns D39, D40 and D41.

D43. Quantity imported

Provide the quantity of each product(s) imported by third party and supplied to the tenderer for the tender.

D44. Total imported value

Provide the total imported value of the product(s) imported by third party and supplied to the tenderer by multiplying the total landed cost (D42) by the quantity imported (D43).

D45. Total imported value by third party

The total imported value from the third party is the sum of the values in column D44.

Table D. Other Foreign Currency Payments

D46. Type of payment

Provide the type of foreign currency payment. (i.e. royalty payment for use of patent, annual licence fee, etc).

D47. Local supplier making the payment

Provide the name of the local supplier making the payment.

D48. Overseas beneficiary

Provide the name of the overseas beneficiary.

D49. Foreign currency value paid

Provide the value of the listed payment(s) in their foreign currency.

D50. Tender rate of exchange

Provide the exchange rate used for this tender as per the Standard Bidding Document (SBD) and Municipal Bidding Document (MBD) 6.2.

D51. Local value of payments

Provide the local value of each payment by multiplying the foreign currency value paid (D49) by the tender rate of exchange (D50).

D52. Total of foreign currency payments declared by tenderer and/or third party

The total of foreign currency payments declared by tenderer and/or a third party is the sum of the values in column D51.

D53. Total of imported content and foreign currency payment

The total imported content and foreign currency payment is the sum of the values in column D32, D45 and D52. This value must correspond with the value of C23 on Annexure C.

5. ANNEXURE E

5.1. Guidelines to completing Annexure E: “Local Content Declaration-Supporting Schedule to Annexure C”

The paragraph numbers correspond to the numbers in Annexure E

E1. Tender number

Supply the tender number that is specified on the specific tender documentation.

E2. Tender description

Supply the tender description that is specified on the specific tender documentation.

E3. Designated products

Supply the details of the products that are designated in terms of this tender (for example, buses/canned vegetables).

E4. Tender authority

Supply the name of the tender authority.

E5. Tendering entity name

Provide the tendering entity name (for example, Unibody Bus Builders (Pty) Ltd) Ltd).

Local Goods, Services and Works

E6. Description of items purchased

Provide a description of the items purchased locally in the space provided.

E7. Local supplier

Provide the name of the local supplier that corresponds to the item listed in column E6.

E8. Value

Provide the total value of the item purchased in column E6.

E9. Total local products (Goods, Services and Works)

Total local products (goods, services and works) is the sum of the values in E8.

E10. Manpower costs:

Provide the total of all the labour costs accruing only to the tenderer (i.e. not the suppliers to tenderer).

E11. Factory overheads:

Provide the total of all the factory overheads including rental, depreciation and amortisation for local and imported capital goods, utility costs and consumables. (Consumables are goods used by individuals and businesses that must be replaced regularly because they wear out or are used up. Consumables can also be defined as the components of an end product that are used up or permanently altered in the process of manufacturing, such as basic chemicals.)

E12. Administration overheads and mark-up:

Provide the total of all the administration overheads, including marketing, insurance, financing, interest and mark-up costs.

E13. Total local content:

The total local content is the sum of the values of E9, E10, E11 and E12. This total must correspond with C24 of Annexure C.

APPENDIX 8 – CONTRACT PARTICIPATION GOAL (CPG) PLAN FORMAT

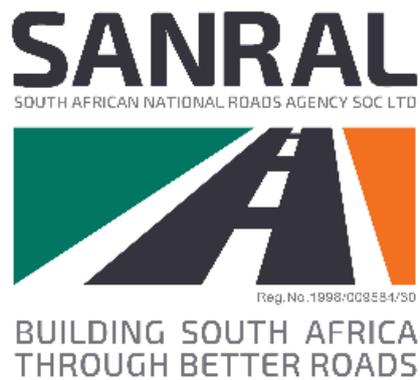
Contractor Logo and details

Contract Participation Goal Plan

SANRAL Contract Number: XXXX

Contract Name: XXXX

(SANRAL Logo)



Author:

Date:

Version

1. INTRODUCTION

2. OBJECTIVE

3. TARGETED ENTERPRISES

3.1 List of Work packages for Targeted Enterprises

3.2 List of Work packages for Main Contractor

Table 2: CPG Expenditure breakdown (Annexure A)

Project Number and Name					
DESIGNATED GROUPS	CONTRACT PRICE			R	
	MIN (TE) CPG TARGET				%
	MIN (TE) CPG TARGET AMOUNT			R	
DESCRIPTION OF CPG CATERGORY	CPG TARGET AS PER THE CONTRACT		CONTRACT PARTICIPATION PERFORMANCE (CPP)PLANNED ACHIEVEMENT)		
	MINIMUM TARGET PERCENTAGE AS PER THE CONTRACT	TARGET AMOUNT	MINIMUM ALLOCATED PERCENTAGE AS PER MARKET ANALYSIS	EXPECTED AMOUNT	
TARGETED LABOUR (TL)	Minimun ...% of the Final Contrat Value	R	%	R	
YOUTH					
WOMEN					
DISABLED					
OTHER					
TARGETED ENTERPRISES (TE)	Minimun ...% of the Final Contract Value	R	%	R	
YOUTH					
WOMEN					
MILITARY VETERANS					
DISABLED					
CIDB 1 or 2					
CIDB 3 or 4					
OTHER					

3.3 Breakdown of work packages

The table below describes the work package breakdown with reference to Designated Groups and Functionality (Annexure B): Table 3: Breakdown of work packages

Project Number and Name															
CONTRACT PRICE															
CPG TARGET %															
CPG TARGET VALUE														R -	
No	TYPE OF WORK PACKAGE	EME or QSE	TARGETED ENTERPRISE AMOUNT (R)	% of CPG VALUE	PROPOSED CIDB GRADING	TENDER VALUE LIMIT	PROPOSED NUMBER OF WORK PACKAGES	PROPOSED TARGETED ENTERPRISE TARGET GROUP AMOUNT (R)					CIDB Expenditure		COMMENTS
								BLACK YOUTH	BLACK WOMAN	BLACK MILITARY VETERANS	BLACK DISABLED	OTHER	BLACK 1&2 CE	BLACK 3&4 CE	
SUBCONTRACTORS															
1															
2															
3															
SUPPLIERS & SERVICE PROVIDERS															
4															
5															
6															
SUBCONTRACTORS															
SUPPLIER & SERVICE PROVIDER															
SUBTOTAL															
PROVISIONAL TOTAL															
PROVISIONAL %															
TARGET AMOUNT															
TARGET %															

3.4 Schedule of works and CPG Expenditure Plan

3.4.1. Schedule of work (Insert Programme)

3.4.2 CPG Expenditure Plan

Table 3: CPG Expenditure Plan

Planned CPG expenditure					
Contract Value	R100,000,000.00				
CPG (TE) Value	R30,000,000.00				
Timeline	2021-22	2022-23	2023-24	2024-25	Total
Project Expenditure	R 20,000,000.00	R 30,000,000.00	R 30,000,000.00	R 20,000,000.00	R 100,000,000.00
Work Packages (CPG %) Expenditure	R 6,000,000.00	R 9,000,000.00	R 9,000,000.00	R 6,000,000.00	R 30,000,000.00
Cumulative % spend	20%	50%	80%	100%	
Cumulative Amount spend	R 6,000,000.00	R 6,000,000.00	R 6,000,000.00	R 6,000,000.00	R 6,000,000.00
Package 1	R 2,000,000.00				
Package 2	R 2,000,000.00				
Package 3	R 2,000,000.00				
Package 4					
Package 5					
Package 6					
Package 7					
Package 8					
Package 9					
Package 10					
Total	R 6,000,000.00	R -	R -	R -	R -

3.5 Targeted Enterprises procurement program

Table 4: Targeted Enterprise Procurement program

AN EXAMPLE OF TARGETTED ENTERPRISE PROCUREMENT PROGRAM				
ITEM	ACTIVITY NAME	Duration (days)	Start	Finish

3.6 Procedures for Targeted Enterprises Subcontracting (*As per Section D1000*)

3.6.1 Tender preparation

- 3.6.1.1 Compilation of TE work packages
- 3.6.1.2 Establishment of a help desk
- 3.6.1.3 Market analysis and resources and skills audit
- 3.6.1.4 Compilation of Tender documents

3.6.2 Tender process

- 3.6.2.1 Advertising of works packages
- 3.6.2.2 Tender briefing sessions
- 3.6.2.3 Minimum Tender Submission documents
- 3.6.2.4 Tender closure and opening of tenders

3.6.3 Tender Evaluation

Eligibility

Functionality

Price & Preference

Compliance Check

3.6.4 Appointment of successful Targeted Enterprise

- 3.6.4.1 Price and rates discussion
- 3.6.4.2 Sub-contract agreement

4. TARGETED LABOUR

Appointment of Targeted Labour

5. TRAINING DEVELOPMENT & IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

5.1 General overview

5.2 Purpose of the training interventions

5.3 Proposed Training for Targeted Enterprises and Targeted Labour

The table below depicts the proposed training for the Targeted Enterprises.

Table 5: Proposed Targeted Enterprise training

TRAINING SUMMARY							
No	Course Content	Facilitator/Mentor	No of Participants	Duration of the Course	Training Type	Commencement Date	Comments
1							
2							
3							
etc							

The table below depicts the proposed training for the Targeted Labour.

Table 6: Proposed training for the Targeted Labour

TRAINING SUMMARY							
No	Course Content	Facilitator/Mentor	No of Participants	Duration of the Course	Suggested Topics	Commencement Date	Comments
1							
2							
3							
etc							

- 5.4 Training methodology
- 5.5 Selection of participants
- 5.6 Targeted participants
- 5.7 Training materials
- 5.8 Training times
- 5.9 Training implementation plan
- 5.10 Supporting documents

APPENDIX 9 – SANRAL PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE GUIDELINES

Contents

2	PART I – DEFINITIONS	7
3	PART II: PRINCIPLES FOR PROJECT LIAISON, SUB-CONTRACTING AND LABOUR SOURCING IN ALL SANRAL PROJECTS.....	11
4	ESTABLISHMENT OF A PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE	12
4.1	Purpose.....	12
4.2	Creation	12
4.3	Legal Nature	12
4.4	Structure	12
4.5	Composition.....	13
4.5.1	Dedicated Seats	13
4.5.2	Co-opted members	14
4.6	Selection of members	14
4.6.1	General Principles of Membership.....	14
4.6.2	Nominations.....	14
5	DUTIES OF THE PLC.....	14
6	DUTIES OF THE PLO	17
7	MEETINGS	18
7.1	Principles and procedure:.....	18
7.1.1	Agenda.....	18
7.1.2	Apologies	18
7.1.3	Non Attendance	18
7.1.4	Language	18
7.2	The Chairperson shall:.....	18
7.3	Notice of meetings	19
7.4	Quorum	19
7.5	Venue.....	19
7.6	Frequency.....	19
7.7	Confidentiality	19
7.8	Conflict.....	19
8	TERM OF OFFICE.....	19
9	APPLICATION AND AMENDMENTS.....	19

PART I – DEFINITIONS

As used in this guideline unless otherwise stated, the following terms are defined:

- a) **Community¹⁰**
South African Citizens, as defined in terms of the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), who permanently reside within the Target Area(s).
- b) **Consultation**
The structured process by which the public is approached for comment on national roads policies.
- c) **Contract Participation**
A process by which the Employer implements Government's objectives by setting targets to enhance Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises' utilisation and development, which the Contractor shall achieve as a minimum.
- d) **Contract Participation Goal (CPG)**
The monetary value of the targets set by the Employer in the Contract Participation process and stated in the Contract Data.
- e) **Contract Participation Performance (CPP)**
The measure of the Contractor's progress in achieving the CPG.
- f) **Designated Group^{11, 12}**
Unless otherwise permissible in terms of procurement regulations or the PPPFA, it is the groups used to define Targeted Labour and the ownership and/or control of Targeted Enterprises and shall be restricted to:
 - a. black designated groups as defined in the codes of good practice issued in terms of section 9(1) of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003);
 - b. black people as defined in section 1 of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003);
 - c. black people who are women and who are South African citizens;
 - d. black people who are youth as defined in section 1 of the National Youth Development Agency Act, 2008 (Act No. 54 of 2008);
 - e. black people who are people with disabilities as defined in section 1 of the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act No. 55 of 1998);
 - f. black people who are military veterans as defined in section 1 of the Military Veterans Act, 2011 (Act No. 18 of 2011);
 - g. black people who are living in rural or underdeveloped areas or townships;
 - h. small enterprises as defined in section 1 of the National Small Enterprise Act, 1996 (Act No. 102 of 1996);
 - i. Exempted Micro Enterprises (EMEs) as defined in terms of the code of good practice on black economic empowerment issued in terms of section 9(1) of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act No. 53 of 2003), with an annual turnover of R10 million or less (Amended Codes of Good Practice); and

¹⁰ SANS 10845, Suite for Construction Procurement, 2015.

¹¹ Derived from Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2017. Government Gazette N. 40553, 20 January 2017.

¹² Derived from Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2017. Implementation Guide.

- j. Qualifying Small Enterprises (QSEs) as defined in terms of the code of good practice on black economic empowerment issued in terms of section 9(1) of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act No. 53 of 2003) with an annual total turnover of between R10 million and R50 million.

g) Guidance

Guidance is anticipating where one might go wrong, or where one is doing a task in a complicated, inefficient or ineffective way, and giving advice as to how to achieve a better result. Guidance is mostly given by a person in the direct reporting line, but can be given by anyone. Guidance is not imparting skills, but suggesting ways to improve performance.

h) Labour

Persons:

- a. who are employed by the Contractor or a Subcontractor in the performance of the Contract; and
- b. who permanently resides in the Target Area(s); and
- c. whose monthly earnings are derived from hours worked for a fixed hourly rate which is adjusted from time to time by legislation (as a statutory minimum) and the Contractor's or Subcontractor's employment policies; but
- d. who are not necessarily Targeted Labour.

Note:

The personnel employed by suppliers are not defined as "Labour" for the purposes of this Contract.

i) Local Enterprise

An enterprise:

- a. that has a permanent physical presence (office) in the project's Target Area(s); and
- b. that can prove its presence by means of a rates and taxes account or a lease agreement; but
- c. which is not necessarily a Targeted Enterprise.

j) Mentoring

Mentoring is assisting a person in developing a long-term career path. It is mostly about imparting skills that are often intangible and non-measurable. Mentoring is more about developing a relationship and taking a personal interest in a person.

k) Mobilisation Period

The period from the Commencement Date until the commencement of the Works, as defined in the Conditions of Contract.

l) National Road

The declared national roads which fall within the Liaison Committee areas

m) Project Liaison Committee (PLC)¹³

The Committee who represents the project's Stakeholders and affected Communities. The PMT will also become a party to this Committee.

¹³ Derived from CIDB Standard for Minimum Requirements for Engaging Contractors and Sub-Contractors on construction Works Contracts, 31 October 2017.

n) Project Liaison Officer (PLO)¹⁴

The person who acts as the liaison officer for the PLC and the PMT. The PLO facilitates the employment of Targeted Labour and attends to the day to day project, Stakeholder, and Community matters that impact on the parties to the project.

o) Project Management Team (PMT)

The Team comprising the Employer's Project Manager, the Engineer and the Contractor, or their duly delegated representatives. Together with the PLC, the PMT is responsible for successful project Stakeholder and Community liaison, and successful implementation of the Employer's Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprise utilisation and development goals.'

p) SANRAL

The South African National Roads Agency SOC Limited, registration number 1998/009584/30.

q) Stakeholders¹⁵

Any Stakeholder listed in the Employer's Communication Policy, March 2018, who is affected by the Employer's operations in the Target Area(s) and/or who has an interest or concern in the project, either as a decision maker, participant or affected party and may include, amongst others, the following entities:

- i) Provincial departments;
- ii) Municipal departments;
- iii) Traditional authorities;
- iv) Community interest groups;
- v) Organised youth representation;
- vi) Organised women representation;
- vii) Organised disabled people representation;
- viii) Organised labour representation;
- ix) Other structured community groups such religion, education, farming, etc.
- x) Transport industry forums;
- xi) Business sector forums;
- xii) Road user forums;
- xiii) Environmental interest groups;
- xiv) Road safety interest groups;
- xv) Any other recognised relevant and representative structure.

r) Subcontractor

An entity subcontracted by the Contractor to execute a portion of the Works as defined in the Conditions of Contract.

s) Target Area

The geographic area defined in the Contract Data and which typically are:

- i) one or more Provinces;
- ii) one or more Metropolitan and District Municipalities;
- iii) one or more Local Municipalities; or
- iv) one or more Wards that are wholly located within an area within a predefined radius of the construction activity.

¹⁴ Derived from CIDB Standard for Minimum Requirements for Engaging Contractors and Sub-Contractors on construction Works Contracts, 31 October 2017; CLO definition.

¹⁵ Derived from SANRAL communication Policy, March 2018.

v) one or more of the areas listed in the definition of Designated Groups.

t) Targeted Enterprise¹⁶

A sole trader, partnership or legal entity which:

- a. is a business within the Target Area(s); and
- b. is engaged in the performance of the Contract; and
- c. is defined as a Target Group in the Contract Data; and
- d. is at least 51% owned by black people; and
- e. the Contractor or any of its subsidiaries has no equity holding in; and
- f. is registered in terms of the Company's Act, 2008 (Act No. 71 of 2008) or Close Corporation Act, 1984 (Act No. 69 of 1984) or Co-operative Act (Act No. 14 of 2015); and
- g. is registered on the National Treasury's Central Supplier Database (CSD); and
- h. is an EME or a QSE; and
- i. is a Subcontractor who undertakes work within its registered CIDB grade and category; or
- j. is a supplier of goods and/or services for work done exclusively by the Contractor which satisfies (a) to (h).

u) Targeted Enterprise Procurement Coordinator (TEPC)

The person or entity appointed by the Contractor to facilitate the procurement of Targeted Enterprises after award of the Contract.

v) Target Group

It is a collection of business entities and/or groups selected from the Designated Group as defined in the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act Regulations, 2017.

w) Target Group Development Coordinator (TGDC)

The person or entity appointed by the Contractor to facilitate the training and development of Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises.

x) Targeted Labour¹⁷

Persons:

- i) who are employed by the Contractor or a Subcontractor in the performance of the Contract; and
- ii) whose monthly earnings are derived from hours worked for a fixed hourly rate which is adjusted from time to time by legislation (as a statutory minimum) and the Contractor's or Subcontractor's employment policies; and
- iii) permanently reside in the Target Area(s) or who are recognized as being residents of the Target Area(s) based on identification and association with, and recognition by, the residents of the Target Area(s); and
- iv) who are defined as a Target Group in the Contract Data.

y) Training

Training refers to the process of teaching a Learner, usually in a classroom or simulated work environment situation where principles and theory are taught and demonstrations are given. Assignments are then set to ensure that the Learner can apply what has been taught. Training is done by a specialist in the subject, and who is qualified and accredited to train.

¹⁶ Partially derived from SANS 10845-5:2015, definition 2.15

¹⁷ SANS 10845-7:2015, definition 2.12

PART II: PRINCIPLES FOR PROJECT LIAISON, SUB-CONTRACTING AND LABOUR SOURCING IN ALL SANRAL PROJECTS

These principles are applied to facilitate better project level liaison with local communities and structures. They also serve to ensure communication and transparency in the execution of works and to ensure inclusivity in the allocation of projects to benefit black business and local communities.

1. **Point 1:** Establish project liaison committees (PLCs) in each project to create a platform for project liaison, works execution, sub-contracting and employment facilitation.
2. **Point 2:** SANRAL to chair PLCs and provide secretarial support. Representation to comprise: SANRAL; contractor; consultant; business representatives; traditional representatives; provincial and municipal government representatives; community representatives; and any other critical local stakeholder that may be deemed necessary by the PLC.
3. **Point 3:** Community liaison officer (CLO) or public liaison officer (PLO) selection to be done under the auspices of the PLC.
4. **Point 4:** Definition of a target area (sometimes referred to as a local area or traffic area) to be done under the auspices of the PLC.
5. **Point 5:** Setup a database of contractors and suppliers (and consultants where relevant) to be done under the auspices of the PLC. The final database to be signed off by the PLC.
6. **Point 6:** Setup of database of local labour for the targeted area to be done under the auspices of the PLC. The final list to be signed off by the PLC. An agreed system of labour selection from the database is to be agreed at the PLC.
7. **Point 7:** Handover of signed-off databases for sub-contracting and labour to contractor for open tender process and recruitment respectively done by the PLC.
8. **Point 8:** Tender to be conducted by contractor using government principles (e.g. public opening of received bids, announcement of bidders and prices). Tabling of winning bidders in the PLC.
9. **Point 9:** Appeals on the tender process to be escalated to SANRAL for an independent review.
10. **Point 10:** Capability assessments of contractors and suppliers to be done under auspices of PLC prior to tender stage, to identify any deficiencies in skills and experience. For labour, skills assessments are to be done at recruitment stage.
11. **Point 11:** Contractor development support and training to be coordinated and conducted, ahead under the auspices of the PLC, prior to project commencement.
12. **Point 12:** Identification of works areas that are deliverable by local service providers, and areas where capabilities are not available locally. All works areas where capabilities are not available locally shall be imported and locals will be given an opportunity to learn.
13. **Point 13:** Formal contracting arrangements to be ensured for all projects.
14. **Point 14:** Communication to be streamlined through the PLC and used to manage expectations of local business and communities.

ESTABLISHMENT OF A PROJECT LIAISON COMMITTEE

Point 1: Establish Project Liaison Committees (PLCs) in each project to create a platform for project liaison, works execution, sub-contracting and employment facilitation.

Purpose

The PLC is intended to give effect to the need for transparency and inclusion in the process of delivering services, through ensuring that the Contractor liaises with the project Stakeholders and affected Communities for the duration of the Contract's life cycle. This shall be achieved through structured engagement with the PLC which is established by the SANRAL for this purpose.

The aims and objectives of the creation of the Public Liaison Committee shall be to:

- Facilitate constructive community participation in the formalization and implementation of the policies of SANRAL;
- Facilitate transparency in SANRAL allocation of resources;
- Facilitate involvement of local communities in the projects of SANRAL at a local level.

Creation

A PLC shall be established through the Routine Road Maintenance (RRM) contract. The PLC shall be established by SANRAL in partnership with the Engineer and the Contractor appointed under the RRM contract. The PLC shall consist of representatives of project Stakeholders and affected Communities, as well as the PMT and their representatives. This PLC, also termed the RRM PLC, shall form the building block of all other PLCs to be established in the area.

For any other contract, a project specific PLC shall be established. The Project specific PLC, which can be of a shorter duration, must comprise members of the RRM PLC(s) and seconded members representing the specific Local Municipality(ies). The project specific PLC shall co-opt one or more members from the RRM PLC(s) for the project area(s). In addition to normal PLC duties, the co-opted members will be responsible for facilitating communication between the RRM PLC and the project specific PLC or any other PLC established for the purposes of executing any other project being implemented in the area.

Once the project has been completed or the project specific PLC disbanded, the co-opted members shall return to the RRM PLC provided that their term of office has not expired.

Legal Nature

The Public Liaison Committee shall be a voluntary association established in terms of this guideline within a defined period set by SANRAL. The members will not be remunerated for their time. However, SANRAL shall consider paying an allowance to assist in covering some of the costs of the members.

Point 2: SANRAL to chair PLCs and provide secretarial support. Representation to comprise: SANRAL; contractor; consultant; business representatives; traditional representatives; provincial and municipal government representatives; community representatives; and any other critical local stakeholder that may be deemed necessary by the PLC.

Structure

PLC meetings shall be chaired by SANRAL while the Engineer's representative shall provide a secretarial service to take minutes of these meetings.

Secretarial support other than taking minutes at PLC meetings shall be provided by the PLO.

The Contractor shall make use of the PLC as the official communication channel, and utilise it to facilitate harmonious relationships, with project Stakeholders and affected Communities.

The Contractor shall delegate from among its site personnel a responsible person to serve on, and participate in, the PLC and its business.

Composition

SANRAL shall be represented by the Project Management Team (Project Manager/ Engineer's Representative and Construction Manager). In addition, the Public Liaison Committee (PLC) shall consist of "elected" and nominated members representing various community organizations as set out below to include the following sectors:

Sector	Representatives
Traditional leaders	1
Members of ward committees	2
People with disabilities forums	1
Women Organisations	1
Youth Organisations	1
Business (incl. Contractor associations)	1
Transport Forums	1
Road Safety/Environmental Councils	1
Organized Agriculture	2

The composition and numbers of representatives above are provided as a guidance. Consultation between the PMT and municipal representatives, including the Mayor's office, will provide final guidance on the number and organisations to be represented. Where required, additional organisations will be added and others removed.

However, notwithstanding the guidance provided above, SANRAL does not desire that councillors become members of PLCs. While Councillors may be invited to some PLC meetings, it is highly recommended that they are not to become PLC members as a PLC is not a political structure.

Dedicated Seats

Notwithstanding the provision above, the following seats shall be dedicated:

(i) Traditional leaders/LED officer

The number of seats allocated by the election meeting shall be taken as dedicated seats. In areas where there are no Tribal Authorities, structures representing the interest of landowners may fulfil this role.

(ii) Business Sector

Seats allocated to the business sector shall be dedicated to SMME representative associations who shall have been elected to represent the interests of all the SMME's based within the PLC area for which the particular PLC is responsible. The association shall be registered in line with Legislations.

(iii) Organized Agriculture

Seats allocated to Associations and shall be dedicated to the predominant type of organized agriculture in the area of the particular Public Liaison Committee, provided that Organized Agriculture complies with the provisions of in this guideline.

Co-opted members

Co-opted members are those members that the PLC chooses to add in addition to those incorporated into the PLC from the process above. Co-opted members shall have limited rights of participation at PLC meetings. They will not vote and shall not claim allowances from SANRAL. Co-opted members can include councillors and other political representatives who can be invited from time to time.

Selection of members

General Principles of Membership

Membership as defined above is open to any person residing within the boundaries of the Project Area but does not apply to co-opted members.

Nominations

Nominations shall be forwarded using the prescribed nomination form (annexed to this document). All nominations shall indicate:

- The name of the nominee
 - The name of the proposer, and 5 seconders
 - The name of the residential area of the nominee
 - The organization for which the nomination is being made
 - Acceptance of nomination by the nominee
- a. All candidates must comply with provisions of clause 4 of this constitution.
 - b. The duration of the Nominees participation in the PLC shall depend on the duration of the project or the duration of the PLC, whichever comes first.
 - c. The nomination process shall be conducted in consultation with the municipality(ies) in the project area.
 - d. The municipality shall be contacted through the Mayor's office and/the Local Economic Development (LED) office.

DUTIES OF THE PLC

The PLC is the official communication channel through which the PMT communicates with project Stakeholders and affected Communities on project matters, as well as to communicate the impact that the project has or might have on project Stakeholders and the affected Communities.

The PLC is also the official communication channel through which project Stakeholders and the affected Communities communicates with the PMT on the impact that the project has on them, or is anticipated to have on them, or on any other project matters.

The Standard Terms of Reference (TOR) for PLCs requires of the PLC to execute specific duties during each stage of the project, i.e. from project initiation to project completion. Some of these duties overlap project stages and hence, a full description is provided here.

The PLC shall execute the following duties:

Point 3: Community liaison officer (CLO) or public liaison officer (PLO) selection to be done under the auspices of the PLC.

- (i) Assist the Employer and Engineer to source suitable candidates where applicable, based on the Employer's prequalification criteria, for the position of PLO.
- (ii) Observe and verify that the prequalification criteria and procedures applied by the Employer and Engineer to select and employ the PLO were executed in a fair and transparent manner, and were within the prescripts of the relevant legislation and regulations.

Point 4: Definition of a target area (sometimes referred to as a local area or traffic area) to be done under the auspices of the PLC.

- (i) Make recommendations to the Employer and Engineer in identifying the project's Target Area(s), from which Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprises will be employed and subcontracted, for inclusion in the Tender Documents and endorse the identified Target Area(s).
- (ii) Make recommendations to the Employer and Engineer in identifying the project's Target Groups for inclusion in the Tender Documents and endorse the identified Target Groups.

Point 5: Setup a database of contractors and suppliers (and consultants where relevant) to be done under the auspices of the PLC. The final database to be signed off by the PLC.

- (i) Make recommendations to the PMT in establishing the eligibility criteria, prequalification criteria, and tendering processes and procedures to be followed to employ Targeted Labour and subcontract Targeted Enterprises; endorse the agreed criteria and employment and subcontracting methodology(ies).

Point 6: Setup of database of local labour for the targeted area to be done under the auspices of the PLC. The final list to be signed off by the PLC. An agreed system of labour selection from the database is to be agreed at the PLC.

- (i) Peruse and endorse the Project Database(s) compiled by the PMT from which Targeted Labour will be employed and Targeted Enterprises will be subcontracted.
- (ii) Verify that the criteria and methodology(ies) applied by the Contractor to employ Targeted Labour and subcontract Targeted Enterprises were executed in a fair and transparent manner, and within the Employer's and Government's Supply Chain Management Policies.

Point 7: Handover of signed-off databases for sub-contracting and labour to contractor for open tender process and recruitment respectively done by the PLC.

Point 8: Tender to be conducted by contractor using government principles (e.g. public opening of received bids, announcement of bidders and prices). Tabling of winning bidders in the PLC.

- (i) Receive reports and ensure transparency in the appointment of Targeted Enterprises in local projects of SANRAL notwithstanding that the authority to appoint such Targeted Enterprises shall remain with SANRAL. (Observer status)

Point 9: Appeals on the tender process to be escalated to SANRAL for an independent review.

- (i) Agree with the PMT on a dispute resolution mechanism to resolve any disputes that may arise between the PMT and the PLC, project Stakeholders and/or affected Communities.
- (ii) Assist the PMT to liaise with project Stakeholders and the affected Communities to resolve any disputes between the Employer, Engineer and/or Contractor and project Stakeholders and the affected Communities, which occurred due to the project.
- (iii) SANRAL's ruling on any dispute regarding the tender process shall be considered to be final.

Point 10: Capability assessments of contractors and suppliers to be done under auspices of PLC prior to tender stage, to identify any deficiencies in skills and experience. For labour, skills assessments are to be done at recruitment stage.

Point 11: Contractor development support and training to be coordinated and conducted, ahead under the auspices of the PLC, prior to project commencement.

- (i) Make recommendations to the PMT on the training needs, eligibility criteria and selection criteria, for the provision of training to Targeted Labour, Targeted Enterprises, Designated Groups, project Stakeholders and the affected Communities.
- (ii) Observe and verify that training programmes and support programmes, which the Contractor committed to, were implemented and executed as intended.

Point 12: Identification of works areas that are deliverable by local service providers, and areas where capabilities are not available locally. All works areas where capabilities are not available locally shall be imported and locals will be given an opportunity to learn.

Point 13: Formal contracting arrangements to be ensured for all projects.

- (i) Verify that the conditions of employment and the conditions of subcontracting, in the employment of Targeted Labour and subcontracting of Targeted Enterprises were applied in a fair and transparent manner and according to the Employer's employment and subcontracting requirements.

Point 14: Communication to be streamlined through the PLC and used to manage expectations of local business and communities.

- (i) Inform the entities whom they represent of any project matters which the PMT wishes to communicate with project Stakeholders and the affected Communities.
- (ii) Inform the entities whom they represent of any project matters that are impacting or may impact, either positively or negatively, on project Stakeholders and the affected Communities.
- (iii) Inform the PMT of Stakeholder and/or Community requests and/or needs which could possibly be addressed within the project's Scope of Work.
- (iv) Inform the PMT of any road safety concerns within the project's Target Area(s) and advise the PMT of possible mitigating measures and/or road safety programs that will be most feasible for acceptance by the affected Communities to promote road safety.
- (v) Inform the PMT of any project matters that are impacting, or anticipated to impact, negatively on project Stakeholders and the affected Communities.

Additional duties

- (i) Meet prior to the monthly site meeting, or as may be required, to discuss and resolve project matters, which are of interest or concern to project Stakeholders and the affected Communities, the Employer, the Engineer and/or the Contractor.
- (ii) Inform the Employer of any training that members of the PLC require to execute its duties.
- (i) The PLC shall have full powers to decide on any matter which they are empowered to decide on falling within the Project Area and outlined duties.
- (ii) The PLC may assign members to report back to specific sectors and/or constituencies within the PLC.
- (iii) The PLC may establish working groups and/or adhoc committees to fulfill its work subject to fulfill tasks as per contract. This must be recommended by the PLO and authorized by SANRAL.

DUTIES OF THE PLO

The PLO shall facilitate the employment of Targeted Labour and shall coordinate communication between the PMT and the PLC to address the day to day project, Stakeholder, and Community matters that impact on the parties to the project.

The Standard TOR for PLOs requires of the PLO to execute specific duties during each stage of the project, i.e. from project initiation to project completion. Some of these duties overlap project stages and hence, a full description is provided here.

The PLO shall execute the following duties:

- (i) Except for taking the minutes of PLC meetings, which is a duty of the Engineer or his representative, the PLO shall provide a secretariat function to the PLC which includes, amongst others, the following:
 - a. Schedule meetings;
 - b. Compile meeting agendas;
 - c. Compile document packages for meetings;
 - d. Distribute minutes of meetings;
 - e. Assist PLC to formulate their communication in writing;
 - f. Distribute written communication to and from the PMT and the PLC;
 - g. Keep records of all the above and any other PLC documentation; and
 - h. Provide any other reasonable secretariat function pertaining to the PLC.
- (ii) Attend all PLC meetings to report on the day to day project, Stakeholder and Community matters that impact on the parties to the project.
- (iii) Attend all monthly site meetings to report on the day to day project, Stakeholder and community matters that impact on the parties to the project.
- (iv) Attend any other meetings related to the project and in which any of the project Stakeholders, affected Communities, Local/Targeted Labour and Local/Targeted Enterprises are involved.
- (v) Maintain a full-time presence on site to monitor and address the day to day project, Stakeholder and Community matters that impact on the parties to the project.
- (vi) Maintain a full-time presence on site to assist the PMT in the day to day liaison with project Stakeholders and affected Communities. Typical information to be disseminated by the PLO includes:
 - a. basic Scope of the Works and how it will affect the Community;
 - b. project programme and regular progress updates;
 - c. anticipated employment and subcontracting opportunities;
 - d. project programme as it pertains to the employment of Targeted Labour and subcontracting of Targeted Enterprises;
 - e. Occupational Health and Safety precautions; and
 - f. any other information relevant to project Stakeholders and the affected Communities.
- (vii) Be well acquainted with the contractual requirements as it pertains to Targeted Labour employment and training requirements.
- (viii) Assist the PMT and PLC to establish and agree the eligibility and selection criteria to be followed when employing Targeted Labour.
- (ix) Assist the PMT in its resources and skills audits by providing a coordinating function between the PMT, project Stakeholders, and the affected Communities.
- (x) Ensure that Targeted Labour databases, compiled from the resources and skills audits, are based on the agreed eligibility and selection criteria and that it is updated as and when required.
- (xi) Coordinate the selection and employment of Targeted Labour based on the agreed eligibility and selection criteria and based on the Contractor's labour requirements.
- (xii) Ensure that each Labourer enters into an employment contract which adheres to current and relevant Labour legislation.

- (xiii) Ensure that each Labourer understands the conditions of his/her employment with an emphasis on the employment start date, end date and wages payable.
- (xiv) Identify and inform the PMT of any relevant training required by the Targeted Labour.
- (xv) Attend all disciplinary proceedings to ensure that hearings are fair and conducted in accordance to the current and relevant Labour legislation.
- (xvi) Be proactive in identifying PLC, project Stakeholder, affected Communities (including Targeted Labour and/or Targeted Enterprise Subcontractor), requirements, disputes, unrest, strikes, etc. and bring it to the attention of the PMT.
- (xvii) Assist the PMT to liaise with the PLC, project Stakeholders and the affected Communities to resolve any disputes, which occurs due to the project.
- (xviii) Other than the document records to be kept as mentioned in (i) above, keep record of all other documents and processes pertaining to the employment of Targeted Labour and any other records that may be of relevance to the functions of the PLC.
- (xix) Produce and submit a monthly report to the PMT and the PLC on PLC meetings, other meetings attended by the PLO, Targeted Labour employment, and project Stakeholder, affected Community and any other project matters that impact on the parties to the project.

MEETINGS

Principles and procedure:

The PLC shall meet as often as required with the Employer and the Engineer, to discuss and resolve the project's initiation and design stage matters, which are of interest or concern to project Stakeholders and the affected Communities, the Employer and the Engineer.

Agenda

- (i) An agenda shall be made available or displayed to all participants at the commencement of such meetings or the minutes of the previous meeting will serve as the agenda of such meetings.
- (ii) The agenda shall not be amended without prior approval from SANRAL.

Apologies

- (i) Apologies shall be in writing except in emergency where the member apologizing cannot communicate the apology in writing.

Non Attendance

- (i) The organization, represented by a member who fails to attend 3 consecutive meetings without an apology, will be informed in writing and asked to nominate a replacement member.

Language

- (i) The meetings will be conducted in ENGLISH to enable all participants at the meeting to understand the discussions of the meeting.

The Chairperson shall:

- (i) Chair all meetings of the PLC;
- (ii) Co-ordinate all the activities of PLC;

- (iii) Ensure that members are fulfilling their tasks as assigned by the PLC;
- (iv) See to the execution of decisions taken by the PLC;
- (v) Ensure the validity of members' claim for allowance;
- (vi) Ensure compliance of all activities of the PLC with current rules, law and general SANRAL policy; and
- (vii) Be a co-signatory to all official documents of the PLC.

Notice of meetings

- (i) The notice of the meeting for the PLC shall be given at least seven (7) days prior to the meeting date.
- (ii) Where meetings have been diarized over a period of time by the PLC, it shall be the duty of each PLC member to ensure his/her attendance on set dates.
- (iii) Where a PLC member has missed any meeting he/she bears the onus of establishing the date and venue of the next meeting.

Quorum

- (i) The quorum for PLC meetings shall be constituted by 50+1 ratio excluding co-opted members.

Venue

- (i) The venue for PLC meetings shall be the project site office or any other venue agreed to by the members of the PLC and approved by SANRAL.

Frequency

- (i) Meeting will be conducted monthly or as the need requires.

Confidentiality

- (ii) PLC members shall regard all information in their possession as confidential and shall treat it in line with the relevant legislation.

Conflict

- (i) Ensure that no conflict of interest arises from members' involvement in the PLC and potential involvement in targeted labour recruitment and/or targeted enterprises procurement and/or any other supplier/subcontractor/service provider procurement or involvement in the contract.

TERM OF OFFICE

- (i) The duration of the nominees participating in the PLC shall depend on the duration of the project but will be limited to 3 years.

APPLICATION AND AMENDMENTS

- (i) This guideline shall be in force after its initial adoption and signing by SANRAL.
- (ii) PLC members may peruse and make recommendations on the duties of, and procedures to be followed by, the PLC to fulfil its duties.

Note: The principles of the guidelines shall not be amended, but duties and procedures may be altered to be project specific and to improve the functionality of the PLC.

This guideline is adopted and will be in force with effect from this.....day of20....

Signed for and on behalf of SANRAL

Project Manager

Print Name

Date

Signed for and on behalf of the PLC

Chairperson

Print Name

Witnessed by

PLO

Print Name

PLC members:

	Sector representative	Representative name	Signature
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			

ANNEXURE 1

Nomination form

I Representing
.....Hereby accept to be a member of the PLC for project
.....

I hereby accept to be bound by the prescripts of the GUIDELINES FOR PUBLIC LIAISON COMMITTEE (PLC) & PUBLIC LIAISON OFFICERS and will act in good faith at all times.

Signed.....

Date

APPENDIX 10 – CHECKLIST FOR PLCS AND PLOS

APPENDIX 11 – PROFORMA SUBCONTRACT DOCUMENT FOR TARGETED ENTERPRISES

To be provide to the Appointed Contractor